

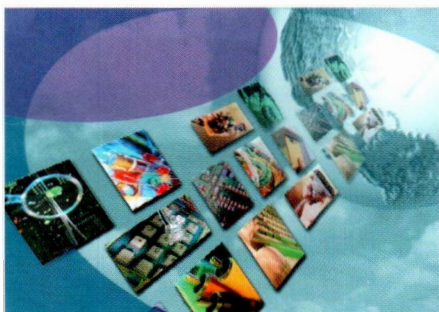
Meridian 1 and Succession Communication
Server for Enterprise 1000

Remote Office
Book 2 of 2



Meridian 1 and Succession Communication Server for Enterprise 1000

Remote Office **Book 2 of 2**



NORTEL
NETWORKS

Internet address

<http://www.nortelnetworks.com>

A0860307



NTLH02AF

Remote Office 911x Series

555-8421-220

Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter

555-8421-211

**Remote Office Network Engineering
Guidelines**

555-8421-103

555-8421-220

Remote Office 911x Series

Installation and Administration Guide

Product release 1.3

Standard 1.1

October 2001

NORTEL
NETWORKS

Remote Office 911x Series

Installation and Administration Guide

Product release:	1.3
Publication number:	555-8421-220
Document release:	Standard 1.1
Date:	October 2001

Copyright © 2001 Nortel Networks, All Rights Reserved.

Printed in Canada.

All information contained in this document is subject to change without notice. Nortel Networks reserves the right to make changes to equipment design or program components, as progress in engineering, manufacturing methods, or other circumstances may warrant.

*Nortel Networks, the Nortel Networks logo, the Globemark, and Unified Networks, Meridian 1, MSL-100, and Succession Communication Server for Enterprise 1000 are trademarks of Nortel Networks.

MICROSOFT, MS-DOS, WINDOWS, and WINDOWS NT are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Publication history

October 2001

This is the Standard 1.1 issue of the *Remote Office 911x Series Installation and Administration Guide* (NTP 555-8421-220). This document provides product descriptions, planning, installation, configuration, administration, and troubleshooting information for the Remote Office Product release 1.3 of the Remote Office 911x series unit.

Contents

About this document	xv
About this guide	xvi
<i>How to use this guide</i>	xvi
Product overview	xvii
Skills you need	xviii
<i>Nortel Networks product knowledge</i>	xviii
<i>Telecommunications knowledge</i>	xviii
<i>Data networking knowledge</i>	xix
Conventions used in this guide	xx
<i>Precautionary messages</i>	xx
<i>Instructions for selecting menu options</i>	xx
<i>Instructions for displaying property sheets</i>	xx
<i>PBX terminology</i>	xxi
Related information products	xxii
<i>Printed documents</i>	xxii
<i>CD-ROM</i>	xxiii

1 Remote Office 911x series description	1
Product Introduction	2
<i>Remote Office 9110 circuit card</i>	2
<i>Remote Office 9115 unit</i>	3
<i>Reach Line Card</i>	3
<i>Voice over IP technology</i>	3
<i>Configuration - Device and Software</i>	4
Hardware description	5
<i>Remote Office 911x series unit LEDs</i>	5
<i>Remote Office 911x series unit LED display diagrams</i>	6
<i>Remote Office 9110 circuit card</i>	7
<i>Remote Office 9115 unit</i>	7
<i>Universal power supply support - Remote Office 9110 circuit card</i>	8
<i>Universal power supply support - Remote Office 9115 unit</i>	9
<i>Internet Access Device description</i>	10

Connection options	11
10BaseT Ethernet interface	11
PSTN connection	11
Quality of Service Transitioning Technology	11
How Remote Office 911x series units work	12
Outgoing call process	13
Incoming call process	13
Host-controlled call mode	13
Locally controlled call mode	13
Quality of Service Transitioning Technology	14
Call scenario 1: host-controlled—corporate internal call	15
Call scenario 2: host-controlled—corporate external call	17
Call scenario 3: locally controlled mode—local call	19
System security	21
No security	21
Security identifier	21
Telephones	22
Supported digital telephones	22
Required footstand for Remote Office 9110 units	22
Supported telephone modules	22
Supported telephone features	23
Computer telephony integration applications	23
Automatic Call Distribution (ACD) applications	24
Voice over IP	25
How QoS transitioning technology works	25
Call timers (permanent and call on demand)	26
Minimum call duration timer	26
Idle timer	26
How the timers work to control PSTN costs	27
Local calling	28
Local calls through PSTN	28
Supported telephone features	28
Online/Offline Table	29
Emergency service number	30
Configuration Manager	31
Power requirements	32
Input specifications	32
Output specifications	32

2	Planning for installation	33
	Physical environment	34
	<i>Space</i>	34
	<i>Temperature</i>	34
	<i>Mounting options</i>	36
	<i>Cables included with the Remote Office 9110 circuit card</i>	36
	<i>Cables included with the Remote Office 9115 unit</i>	36
	<i>Cables you must supply yourself</i>	36
	Administration PC	37
	<i>Connection options</i>	37
	<i>Ethernet connection</i>	37
	<i>Administering multiple nodes in the network</i>	38
	<i>Windows PC requirements</i>	38
	Network considerations	40
	<i>IP addressing and routing</i>	40
	<i>Determining DHCP Assigned IP Addresses</i>	40
	<i>Quality of Service</i>	41
	Deployment	42
	<i>Transport media</i>	42
	<i>Network Address Translation</i>	42
	<i>IP deployment</i>	43
	<i>PSTN deployment</i>	44
	<i>QoS transition</i>	44
	<i>Local PSTN connection</i>	45
	<i>Sharing a PSTN line</i>	47
3	Installing the Remote Office 911x series unit	49
	Preparing for installation	50
	<i>General Safety</i>	50
	<i>Required hardware and software tools</i>	51
	<i>Unpacking and inspecting the equipment</i>	51
	Installing the Remote Office 9110 circuit card	52
	<i>Removing the footstand of the digital telephone</i>	52
	<i>Inserting the Remote Office 9110 circuit card</i>	53
	<i>Installing ferrite beads</i>	55
	<i>Connecting the Remote Office 9110 circuit card</i>	56
	<i>Powering up the Remote Office 9110 circuit card</i>	57

Installing the Remote Office 9115 unit.	58
<i>Installing the Remote Office 9115 unit on a desk.</i>	58
<i>Installing the Remote Office 9115 unit on the wall</i>	58
<i>Connecting the Remote Office 9115 unit</i>	60
<i>Connecting the Remote Office 9115 unit to the network</i>	61
<i>Powering up the Remote Office 9115 unit</i>	62
 4 Configuring the 911x unit using the telephone menu	65
Before you begin.	66
<i>Information you need to know before configuring.</i>	66
<i>Accessing the telephone menu</i>	67
<i>Telephone menu key function</i>	67
<i>Backing up while in the telephone menu</i>	68
<i>Exiting the system using the Release key.</i>	68
Running the telephone menu script	69
 5 Changing configuration settings using Configuration Manager	97
Before you begin.	98
Remote Office 911x series unit system configuration	99
<i>Configuring the system settings.</i>	100
<i>Remote Office 911x System Configuration field descriptions</i>	101
IP configuration	104
<i>Configuring IP information</i>	105
<i>IP Configuration field descriptions</i>	106
RLC connection configuration	107
<i>Configuring the RLC connection information</i>	108
<i>RLC Connection configuration field descriptions</i>	109
 6 Using the digital telephone	111
Modes of operation.	112
<i>Host-controlled mode.</i>	112
<i>Locally controlled mode.</i>	112
<i>Relationship between host-controlled and locally controlled modes.</i>	113
<i>Online mode.</i>	113
<i>Offline mode.</i>	113
<i>Why offline mode is important.</i>	114
<i>What controls the online and offline modes.</i>	114

Placing and receiving calls	115
<i>Receiving incoming calls</i>	<i>115</i>
<i>Methods for placing outgoing calls</i>	<i>115</i>
<i>Placing a host-controlled call</i>	<i>116</i>
<i>Placing an outgoing locally controlled call</i>	<i>117</i>
<i>To call another station at your site—locally controlled mode</i>	<i>117</i>
<i>To call another station at your site—host-controlled mode</i>	<i>117</i>
Indicator updates	118
<i>Host-controlled indicator updates</i>	<i>118</i>
<i>Locally controlled indicator updates</i>	<i>118</i>
<i>PSTN line usage and the local calling indicator</i>	<i>119</i>
Display messages	120
<i>Message descriptions</i>	<i>120</i>
Telephone features operation	122
<i>Emergency service calls</i>	<i>122</i>
<i>Hold</i>	<i>122</i>
<i>Call Waiting</i>	<i>123</i>
<i>Call Transfer</i>	<i>124</i>
<i>Conference</i>	<i>124</i>
<i>Call Forward</i>	<i>124</i>
Going online and offline	125
<i>Using the SPRE code to place your unit in online mode</i>	<i>125</i>
<i>Using the SPRE code to place your unit in offline mode</i>	<i>125</i>
<i>Overriding an automatic offline event from the host PBX</i>	<i>126</i>
<i>On-Demand and Permanent Allocation to Remote Office</i>	
<i>911x series units</i>	<i>126</i>

7 Administration 127

Changing the administration password	128
<i>Changing the Configuration Manager password</i>	<i>128</i>
<i>Changing the Remote Office 911x series unit's password</i>	<i>129</i>
Creating a backup configuration file	130
<i>Storing backup configuration files</i>	<i>130</i>
<i>Creating the backup file</i>	<i>131</i>
Restoring the configuration	133
<i>Before you begin</i>	<i>133</i>
<i>Uploading a configuration file over the IP network</i>	<i>134</i>

Display logs	138
<i>Viewing display logs</i>	138
<i>Printing the display logs to a file</i>	139
<i>Changing the number of display logs retained by the</i> <i>Remote Office 911x series unit</i>	140
<i>Clear logs</i>	141
Statistics screens	142
<i>Trunk Connection Statistics</i>	142
<i>Bandwidth Connection Statistics</i>	145
<i>Caller Information Statistics</i>	148
<i>Digital Signal Processor (DSP) Statistics</i>	151
<i>Ethernet Interface Statistics</i>	155
<i>Network Statistics</i>	159
Verifying the firmware and software version	162
<i>Verifying the software version</i>	162
<i>Verifying the firmware version</i>	163
<i>Determining the current firmware and software versions</i>	163
Obtaining the latest upgrade file	164
<i>Types of upgrades</i>	164
<i>Downloading the upgrade file</i>	164
Extracting upgrade files from the download file	165
<i>Performing the extraction using Windows</i>	165
Performing a firmware upgrade	167
<i>When to perform a firmware upgrade</i>	167
<i>About firmware upgrades and configuration files</i>	167
<i>Before you begin</i>	167
<i>Upgrading the Remote Office 911x series unit firmware</i>	168
Restarting the system	170
<i>To restart the unit</i>	170
Performing a software upgrade	171
<i>Upgrading the Configuration Manager software</i>	171

8 Troubleshooting 173

Before you begin	174
<i>Identifying why a problem occurred</i>	174
Remote Office 911x series unit LEDs	176
Digital telephone	177
<i>Symptom descriptions</i>	177
Network connectivity	184
<i>System descriptions</i>	184

Software problems	187
<i>Symptom descriptions</i>	187
<i>Display Logs definitions</i>	187
Using Configuration Manager's PING	188
<i>Performing a Configuration Manager PING</i>	188
<i>Unsuccessful PING options</i>	190
Recovering from a catastrophic failure	191
Repair and warranty information	192
<i>Canada</i>	192
<i>United States</i>	192
<i>Europe</i>	192
<i>Asia/Pacific</i>	193
<i>CALA</i>	193
 A Planning forms	 195
Remote Office 911x series Network Connections	196
Remote Office 911x series Configuration Information—Dialing Plans . . .	198
Remote Office 911x series telephone menu— Configuration Values	199
 B Connection pin-out tables	 201
RJ-45 ethernet connector	202
RJ-11 Analog telephone line connector	203
Admin (serial) connector pin-out table	204
Power connector pin-out table	205
 C Equipment attachment notices	 207
Industry Canada	208
Ringer Equivalence Number	209
 D Safety and regulatory information	 211
International safety compliance	212
<i>Underwriters Laboratory (UL)</i>	212
<i>Canadian Standards Association (CSA)</i>	212
<i>Europe</i>	212
<i>Australia</i>	212
<i>Other Countries Deviations Assessed</i>	212
Electromagnetic compatibility	213
Electromagnetic immunity	214
Electrostatic discharge	215

FCC requirements	216
<i>Part 68</i>	216
<i>Telephone network plug and jack</i>	217
<i>Ringer Equivalence Number</i>	217
<i>Equipment harmful to the telephone network</i>	217
<i>Party lines</i>	217
 Fields index	 249
 Index	 253

Preface

About this document

In this preface

About this guide	xvi
Product overview	xvii
Skills you need	xviii
Conventions used in this guide	xx
Related information products	xxii

About this guide

The *Remote Office 911x Series Installation and Administration Guide* (NTP 555-8421-220) is for telecom and data network managers and administrators who plan, install, and manage corporate telecommunications and data networks. This guide contains the following information:

- detailed descriptions of the Remote Office 911x series units
- procedures necessary to install, configure, and manage Remote Office 911x series units in a remote or branch office
- suggested troubleshooting procedures for addressing possible problems

This guide assumes that you are familiar with the following:

- basic telecommunications terminology
- basic networking terminology
- PC terminology and operation (specifically, Windows 95, Windows 98, or Windows NT 4.0)
- Nortel Networks PBX terminology, functionality, and administration

How to use this guide

This guide provides step by step procedures for installing, configuring, and managing the Remote Office 911x series unit as a part of your remote services network. Review this guide before beginning Remote Office 911x series unit installation and configuration.

When you are ready to begin, follow the steps for planning, installing, and configuring your hardware in the order that they are presented in this guide. This helps you to achieve a successful, trouble-free installation.

Product overview

Nortel Networks proudly presents the Remote Office 911x series of remote telecommunications and data networking equipment. The *Remote Office 911x Series Installation and Administration Guide* (NTP 555-8421-220) provides information on configuring and maintaining your Remote Office 911x series unit.

The Remote Office 911x series unit allows your remote site to access a Reach Line Card (RLC) installed in the host PBX. A properly completed installation supplies your remote location with the full functionality of your host PBX and a connection to the corporate data network.

To identify and locate documentation for the other elements of your Remote Office network, refer to “Related information products” on page xxii.

Skills you need

Knowledge of, or experience with, the following PC concepts as appropriate to your network is helpful when administering a Remote Office 911x series unit:

- Microsoft Windows
- software installation
- network configuration

Nortel Networks product knowledge

Knowledge of, or experience with, the following Nortel Networks products and concepts:

- basic administration of a Meridian 1, MSL-100, or Succession Communication Server for Enterprise 1000 PBX (telephone set and XDLC configuration)
- characteristics and principles of XDLC operation
- PBX data calls

Telecommunications knowledge

Knowledge of, or experience with, the following aspects of telecommunications:

- digital telephone set configuration
- ISDN PRI configuration
- trunk configuration
- PBX configuration
- PBX maintenance (SDI operation)
- knowledge of RS-232 signaling

Data networking knowledge

Knowledge of, or experience with, the following aspects of data networking:

- data link (Layer 2 of the OSI model)
 - IP protocol
 - routing
- network (Layer 3 of the OSI model)
 - addressing
 - traffic analysis and provisioning
 - configuration
- Voice over IP concepts

Conventions used in this guide

This section describes the symbols and text conventions used in this guide.

Precautionary messages

Note: A “Note” describes the secondary results of procedures or commands, or special conditions where you must use a procedure or command.

ATTENTION!

Provides information essential to the completion of a task.



CAUTION

Risk of data loss or equipment damage

Cautions you against unsafe practices or potential hazards, such as equipment damage, service interruption, or loss of data.

Instructions for selecting menu options

To simplify the instructions for selecting menu options, this guide abbreviates the selection path. For example, if you must choose Telnet from the Logon Unit menu, under the Connect menu, this guide uses the following style:

From the menu, choose Connect → Logon Unit → Telnet.

Instructions for displaying property sheets

To simplify the procedures for accessing property sheets throughout this guide, the instructions for displaying a particular property sheet are summarized in a “Getting there” statement.

The procedure for displaying the screen that you need depends on if you are:

- performing an online configuration (connected to a node by Telnet)
- performing an offline configuration (not connected to a node)

Example

Getting there 911x → Configuration Manager → IP Configuration

The long instruction for this example is shown below.

- 1 Do the following:

IF	THEN
you are performing an offline configuration	select the device type as described in "Selecting the device type for offline configuration" on page 125.
you are performing an online configuration	connect to, and then log on to the node as described in "Logging on to a unit" on page 126.

- 2 In the left pane, click on the plus sign (+) beside Configuration Manager to expand the node list.
- 3 Click on **IP Configuration**.

Result: The IP Configuration property sheet for the Remote Office 911x series unit displays in the right pane.

PBX terminology

Throughout this guide, the term "host PBX" refers to any of the following Nortel Networks PBX platforms:

- Meridian 1
- MSL-100
- Succession Communication Server for Enterprise 1000

Related information products

This section lists sources for additional information related to the Remote Office 911x series unit. You can order printed documentation and the CD-ROM from your Nortel Networks distributor.

You can also download the documentation in Portable Document Format (PDF) from the Nortel Networks website. To locate these documents, click on the Customer Support, Documentation, and North America links at the following website:

www.nortelnetworks.com

Note: The information available on the website may supersede the information provided on the CD-ROM.

For further details, refer to *Remote Office and RLC Release Notes* (NTP 555-8421-102).

Printed documents

The following documents provide additional information on Remote Office 911x series units and other elements of a Remote Office system:

***Remote Office Network Engineering Guidelines* (NTP 555-8421-103)**

The Engineering Guidelines, written for the installer/administrator, describe how a Remote Office system integrates with existing telecommunications and data networks. This document helps you to ensure that your networks are prepared for Remote Office.

***Remote Office and RLC Release Notes* (NTP 555-8421-102)**

The *Release Notes*, written for the installer/administrator, describe the features and known problems for the Reach Line Card (RLC), the Remote Office 9150 unit, Remote Office 911x series units, and Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units.

Reach Line Card Installation and Administration Guide
(NTP 555-8421-210)

The *Reach Line Card Installation and Administration Guide*, written for the installer/administrator, describes how to install, configure, and manage the Reach Line Card on the host PBX.

Remote Office 9150 Installation and Administration Guide
(NTP 555-8421-215)

The *Remote Office 9150 Installation and Administration Guide*, written for the installer/administrator, describes how to install, configure, and manage the Remote Office 9150 unit.

Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter Installation and Administration Guide (NTP 555-8421-211)

The *Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter Installation and Administration Guide*, written for the installer/administrator, describes how to install, configure, and manage Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units.

CD-ROM

A Remote Office Product CD-ROM is available containing the documentation in Portable Document Format (PDF), firmware, and Configuration Manager software.

Chapter 1

Remote Office 911x series description

In this chapter

Product Introduction	2
Hardware description	5
Connection options	11
How Remote Office 911x series units work	12
System security	21
Telephones	22
Voice over IP	25
Call timers (permanent and call on demand)	26
Local calling	28
Online/Offline Table	29
Emergency service number	30
Configuration Manager	31
Power requirements	32

Product Introduction

Remote Office 911x series units provide full-featured host Private Branch Exchange (PBX) services to single users in small remote offices or home offices.

Remote Office 911x series units require each of the following components:

- a Remote Office 911x series unit
- a Reach Line Card (RLC)
- a 10BaseT Ethernet interface to an Internet Access Device (IAD)
- an analog interface to an analog telephone line (if using QoS Transitioning Technology)

This section provides a brief description of each component used to provide Remote Office 911x series functionality.

Remote Office 9110 circuit card

The Remote Office 9110 circuit card fits in the base of a Meridian digital telephone set. The circuit card relays voice and signaling information between the digital telephone connected at your office and the RLC installed on the host PBX using one or both of the following options:

- Internet Protocol (IP) network
- Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN)

Refer to the following chapters for additional information:

- Chapter 3, “Installing the Remote Office 911x series unit”
- Chapter 4, “Configuring the 911x unit using the telephone menu”, or Chapter 5, “Changing configuration settings using Configuration Manager”

Remote Office 9115 unit

The Remote Office 9115 unit connects to the telephone set line cord of the digital telephone with a standard RJ-11 connector. The unit relays voice and signaling information between your digital telephone at a remote location and the RLC installed in the host PBX over the IP network. The voice and signaling information travels over one or both of the following transport media:

- IP network
- PSTN

Refer to the following chapters for additional information:

- Chapter 3, “Installing the Remote Office 911x series unit”
- Chapter 4, “Configuring the 911x unit using the telephone menu”, or Chapter 5, “Changing configuration settings using Configuration Manager”

Reach Line Card

The Reach Line Card (RLC), installed in the host PBX, provides service for up to 16 ports on a single-slot card or 32 ports on a double-slot card. The RLC emulates a standard digital line card (XDLC), providing PBX functionality for telephones at remote locations (including sites using the Remote Office 911x series unit).

The RLC relays voice and signaling information between the remote digital telephone and the host PBX. Like the Remote Office 911x series unit, the RLC can route calls over the IP network, the PSTN, or both when using the QoS Transitioning Technology feature.

For a more detailed description, refer to the *Reach Line Card Installation and Administration Guide* (NTP 555-8421-210).

Voice over IP technology

The Remote Office 911x series unit uses Nortel Networks proprietary Voice over IP technology to send voice and data signals between your office and the host PBX through the existing IP data network.

The Remote Office 911x series unit can also use the PSTN to route calls if:

- the voice QoS degrades below user-configured thresholds
You can configure Nortel Networks' patented QoS Transitioning Technology to automatically transition calls to the PSTN when the voice QoS degrades below a threshold you have chosen. Calls transition back to the IP network when the QoS returns to an acceptable level.
- you are not yet ready to use the IP network to send voice calls
You can configure the Remote Office 911x series unit to use only the PSTN connection, and implement IP network functionality when you are ready. If you choose to use only the PSTN connection, you must set up a permanent connection to the PSTN. Otherwise, be prepared to wait approximately 8 to 10 seconds for dial tone while modem training occurs. For more information on permanent and on-demand connections, refer to "RLC port configuration" in the *Reach Line Card Installation and Administration Guide* (NTP 555-8421-210).

Configuration - Device and Software

To make the Remote Office 911x series unit operational, some configuration is required. You can use the following tools to configure the Remote Office 911x series unit:

- telephone menu
You must use the telephone menu to configure the Remote Office 911x series unit initially.
For detailed instructions on using the telephone menu, refer to Chapter 4, "Configuring the 911x unit using the telephone menu".
- Configuration Manager
Configuration Manager is a Windows-based application for accessing the Remote Office 911x series unit configuration settings. Once you have configured the Remote Office 911x series unit, you can use Configuration Manager to make configuration changes and perform ongoing administration.
For more details, refer to Chapter 5, "Changing configuration settings using Configuration Manager", and Chapter 7, "Administration".

Hardware description

This section describes the LED displays, power supply, cables, connectors, and Internet Access Devices (IAD) for the Remote Office 911x series units.

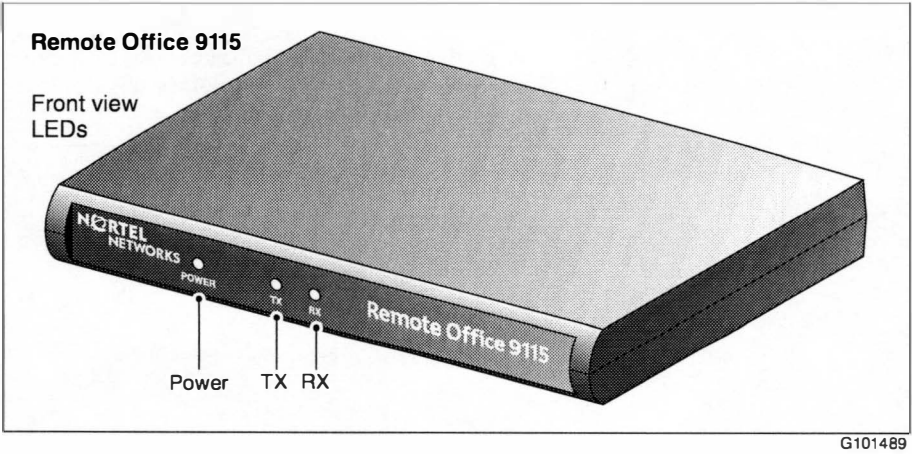
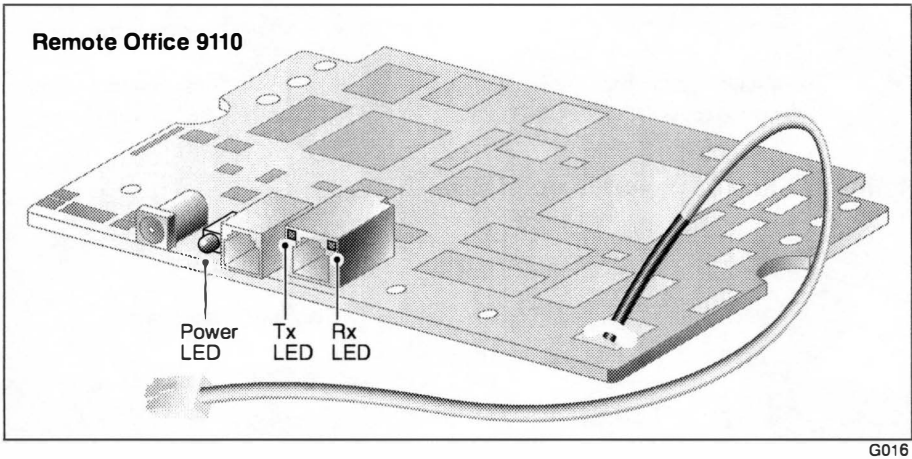
Remote Office 911x series unit LEDs

The operational status of the Remote Office 911x series unit is indicated by LEDs mounted on the following:

- telephone set footstand for the Remote Office 9110 circuit card
- front panel of the Remote Office 9115 unit

LED Type	LED Name	Description
Power	On	When lit, this LED indicates that power is present.
IP network	TX	When flashing, this LED indicates that data is being transmitted over the Ethernet network.
	RX	When flashing, this LED indicates that data is being presented to the Remote Office 911x series unit over the Ethernet network.

Remote Office 911x series unit LED display diagrams



Remote Office 9110 circuit card

The Remote Office 9110 circuit card provides the connections listed below:

- a female RJ-45 connector (labeled ETHERNET) for a 10BaseT Ethernet connection to an Internet Access Device
- a female RJ-11 connector (labeled LINE) for an analog connection to the PSTN
- a male RJ-11 connector on an approximately six-inch TCM cable for the connection between the circuit card and the digital telephone.

Remote Office 9115 unit

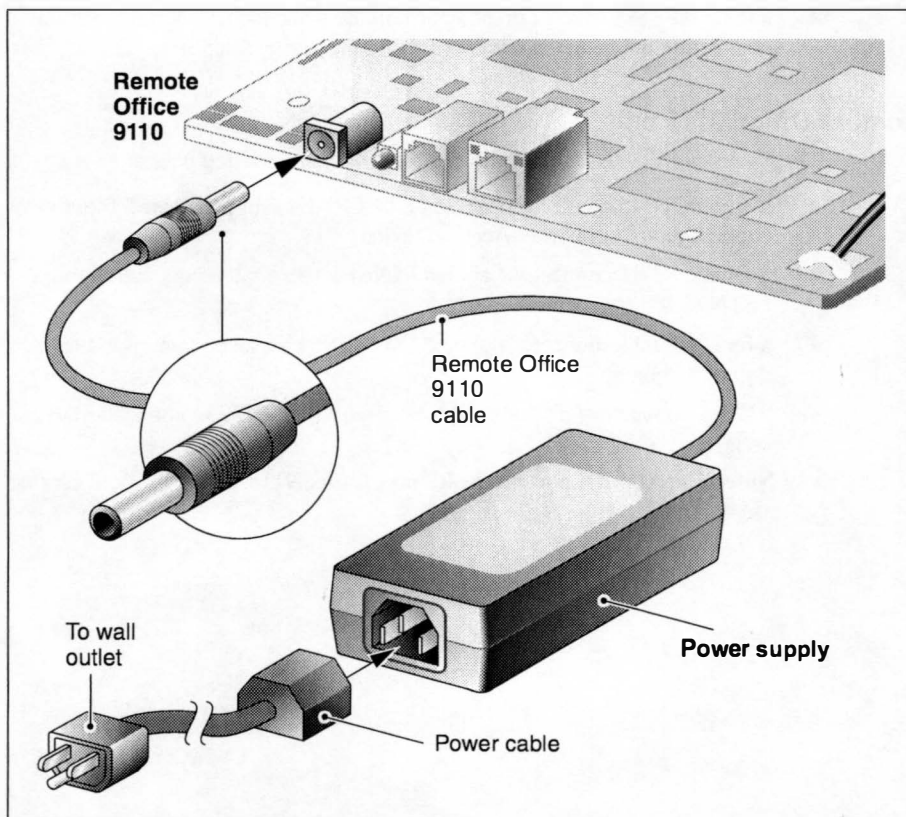
The Remote Office 9115 unit provides the connections listed below:

- a female RJ-45 connector (labeled ETHERNET) for a 10BaseT Ethernet connection to an Internet Access Device
- a female RJ-11 connector (labeled LINE) for an analog connection to the PSTN
- a female RJ-11 connector (labeled D PHONE) for a connection to the digital telephone
- a DB-9 connector (labeled ADMIN) provides an RS-232 connection to the serial port of a PC

Note: The ADMIN port on the Remote Office 9115 unit is for field service use only.

Universal power supply support - Remote Office 9110 circuit card

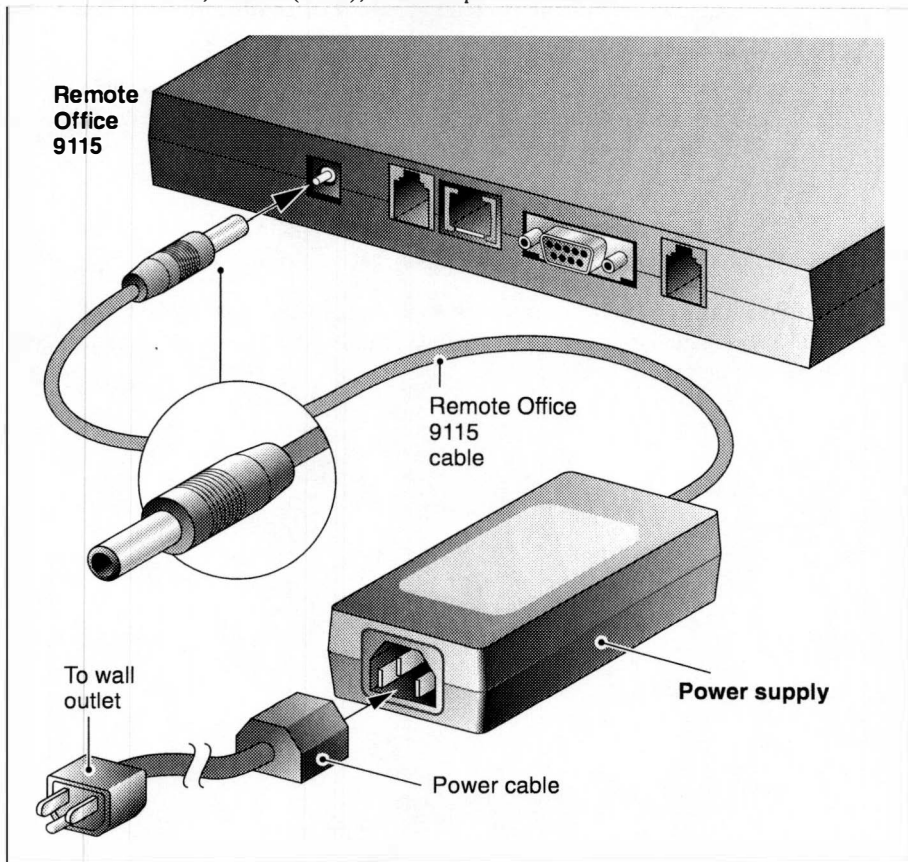
The Remote Office 9110 circuit card requires a .5A/24V power supply. To order the power supply from your Nortel Networks distributor, request part number NTDR91xx. (The "xx" represents the vintage and can vary.) The design of this power supply, shown in the following illustration, accommodates North American, British (U.K.), and European standards.



G017

Universal power supply support - Remote Office 9115 unit

The Remote Office 9115 unit requires a .5A/24V power supply. To order the power supply from your Nortel Networks distributor, request part number NTDR91 xx. (The "xx" represents the vintage and can vary.) The design of this power supply, shown in the following illustration, accommodates North American, British (U.K.), and European standards.



G101532

Internet Access Device description

If you are using a 10BaseT Ethernet LAN at the remote site, you can connect the Remote Office 911x series unit to any high-speed Internet Access device. The following are some commonly-used devices:

- ISDN Basic Rate Interface (BRI) router
A BRI router is designed to send voice and data traffic across an ISDN line.
- digital subscriber line (xDSL) modem
An xDSL modem transmits digital information at high bandwidth on existing phone lines. The xDSL modem can send and receive data at a rate of 512 Kbps to 6 Mbps. An example, is the 1-meg modem.
- cable modem
A cable modem is used on cable TV lines so that customers can dial up to their Internet service providers over a cable line, instead of a telephone line.

Refer to the *Remote Office Network Engineering Guidelines* (NTP 555-8421-103) for detailed information on the interaction of the Remote Office 911x series unit with the IP Network.

Connection options

Communications between the Remote Office 911x series unit in your office and the host PBX takes place using 10BaseT Ethernet interface to an Internet Access Device (IAD) on a corporate wide area network (WAN) or an analog connection, or both. This section provides a description of each of these connections.

10BaseT Ethernet interface

The Remote Office 911x series unit uses Nortel Networks proprietary Voice over IP (VoIP) technology over the IP network to the host PBX. Voice data is forwarded as UDP/IP packets and the signalling data as TCP/IP packets. You can connect the Ethernet interface to an Internet Access Device such as a BRI router, an xDSL modem, or cable modem. For more information, refer to the “Internet Access Device description” on page 10.

PSTN connection

The Remote Office 911x series unit includes a built-in V32.bis modem. If you do not have a data connection to the host site, you can connect the Remote Office 911x series unit to the PSTN. The Remote Office 911x series unit transmits both voice and signaling data to the host site over the PSTN.

Note: The Remote Office 911x series units do not support DSL analog lines.

Quality of Service Transitioning Technology

If you connect to both the PSTN and IP network, then you can use the QoS Transitioning Technology to reroute calls from the IP network to the PSTN connection if the QoS on the IP network degrades. When the QoS returns to normal, the QoS Transitioning Technology automatically moves the calls back to the IP network.

The Remote Office 911x series unit and the RLC monitor the QoS on the IP network. If the QoS falls below user-configured acceptable thresholds, calls are dynamically and transparently switched to the analog lines. Refer to “Quality of Service Transitioning Technology” on page 14 for additional details.

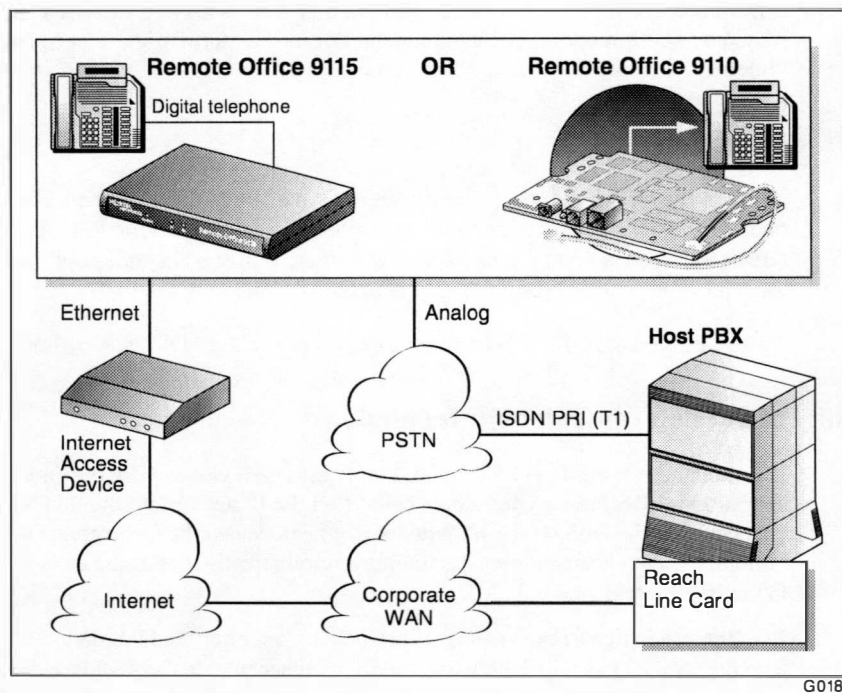
How Remote Office 911x series units work

There are two major components to the Remote Office 911x series units. They are:

1. the Remote Office 9110 circuit card or Remote Office 9115 unit located at the remote office
2. the RLC located on the host PBX

These two components, along with the connection options described on page 11, extend the host PBX services to a remote office user.

PSTN and IP network diagram



Outgoing call process

To place outgoing calls, users can either pick up the handset on the telephone or press a line key. There are two types of line keys:

- **host calling key**
Use this key to place a call through the host PBX.
- **local calling key**
Use this key to place calls through the local PSTN. You can define one local calling key on each digital telephone.

For a detailed description of the outgoing call process, refer to the sample illustrations beginning on page 15.

Incoming call process

When someone places a call through the host PBX to a Remote Office 911x series unit, the RLC connects to the remote unit. The host PBX then completes the call normally. If the RLC cannot establish a connection, the call rings until the host PBX forwards the call to voice mail. Refer to Chapter 6, "Using the digital telephone", for a more detailed description of the incoming call process.

When someone places a call through the PSTN to a Remote Office 911x series unit user, a connection is made from the central office to the Remote Office 911x series unit.

Host-controlled call mode

When you place a call to someone at the host site, or when someone from the host site calls you, the call is in host-controlled call mode. Calls in host-controlled mode are routed through the host PBX. Refer to the sample illustrations beginning on page 15.

Locally controlled call mode

When you place a call from a local calling key, the call is in locally controlled mode. Calls that are initiated from the local calling key are routed through the local PSTN. Refer to the sample illustrations beginning on page 15.

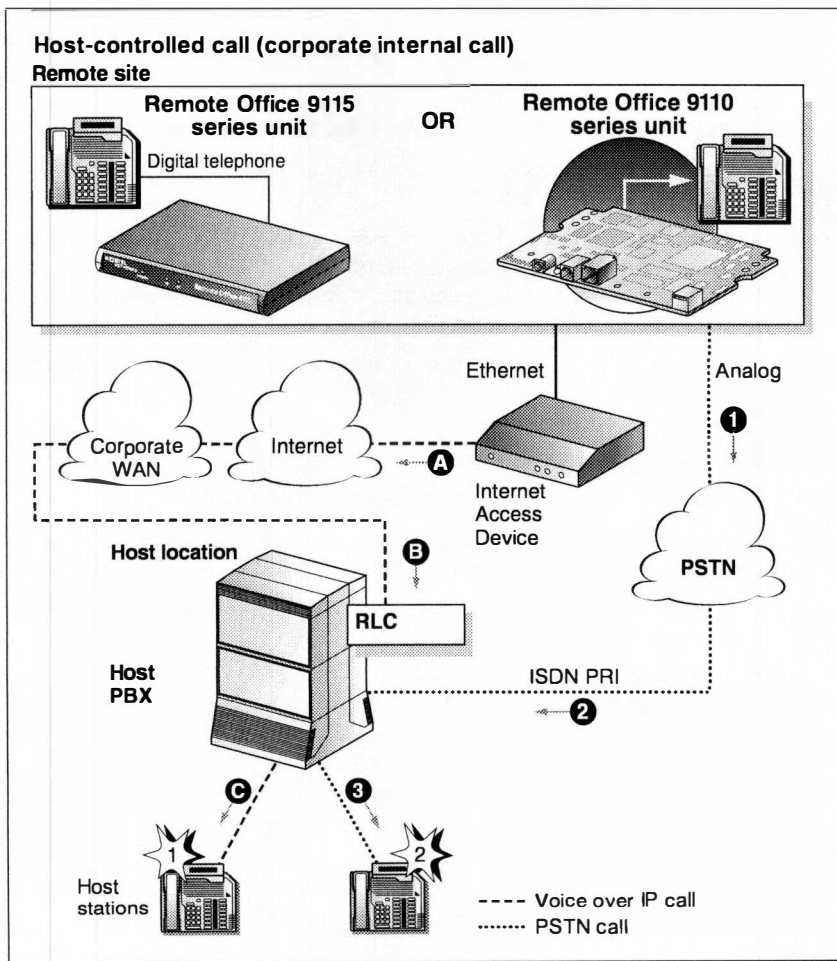
After you press the local calling key, dial tone can take 2–5 seconds to appear if signaling is over the PSTN. If dial tone does not appear, press the **Release** key and then press the local calling key again.

Quality of Service Transitioning Technology

You can configure the Remote Office 911 x series unit to automatically route voice traffic away from the IP network connection to the analog PSTN connection when the QoS on the IP network falls below a threshold. Refer to the Description chapter of the *Remote Office Network Engineering Guidelines* (NTP 555-8421-103) for a detailed discussion.

Call scenario 1: host-controlled—corporate internal call

The following diagram shows how a call is routed when placing a host-controlled call over the PSTN or IP network to the corporate office:



G019

The network that routes the host-controlled call is transparent to the user, and the dialing requirement is the same for both networks. Calls work the same in reverse, from the host PBX site to the Remote Office 911x series unit site.

Voice over IP network call

- 1 The Remote Office 911x series user lifts the handset (item A).

Result: The Remote Office 911x series user hears a dial tone. This indicates a successful connection to the RLC over the IP network (item B).

- 2 The Remote Office 911x series user dials a telephone number, such as the extension number of host station 1.

Result: The Remote Office 911x series unit sends the dialed digits as packets through the IP network to the Ethernet network or Corporate WAN to the RLC. The RLC converts the packets to the format required by the host PBX.

- 3 The host PBX then converts the data to voice and routes the call to host station 1 (item C).

PSTN call

- 1 The Remote Office 911x series user lifts the handset.

Result: The Remote Office 911x series user hears a dial tone. This indicates a successful connection to the RLC over the PSTN (item 1).

- 2 The Remote Office 911x series user dials a telephone number, such as the extension number of host station 2.

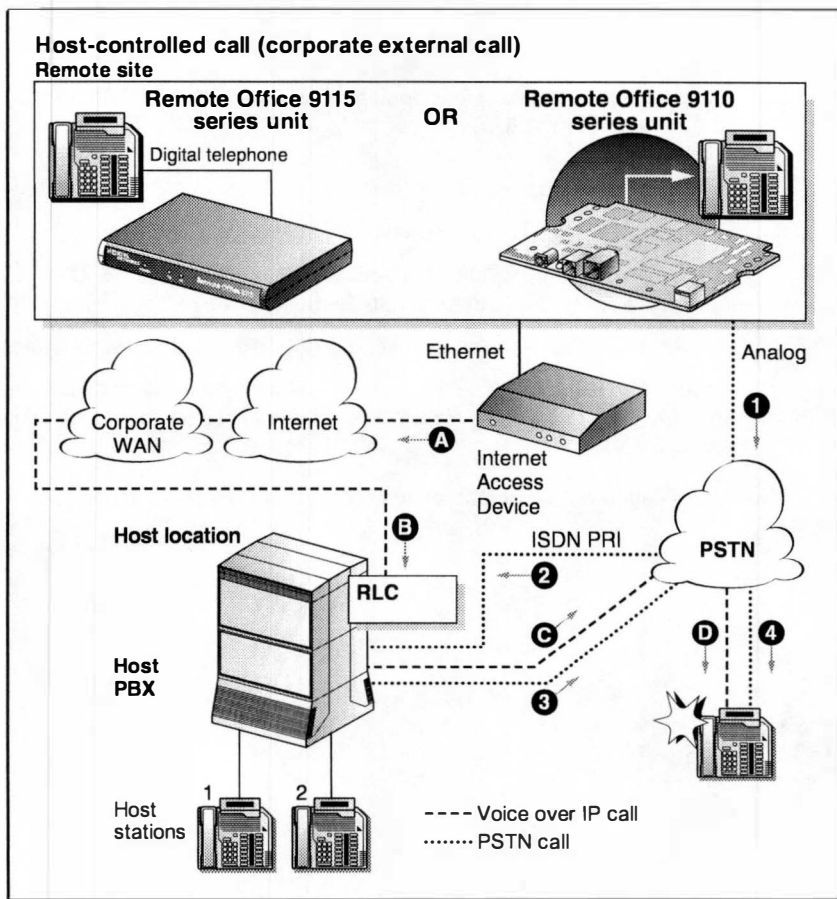
Result: The Remote Office 911x unit sends the dialed digits across the PSTN through the host PBX (item 2) to host station 2 (item 3).

Note: Item notations in parentheses refer to circled markers in the diagram on page 15.

Call scenario 2: host-controlled—corporate external call

The following diagram shows how a call is routed when placing a host-controlled call to a party outside the organization using a Remote Office 911x series unit. The call can be made over the PSTN or IP networks.

The network that is used to route the host-controlled call is transparent to the user, and the dialing requirement is the same for both. Calls work the same in reverse, from the host PBX site to the Remote Office 911x series unit site.



G020

Voice over IP network call

- 1 The Remote Office 911x series user lifts the handset (item A).

Result: The Remote Office 911x series user hears a dial tone. This indicates a successful connection to the RLC over the IP network and the corporate WAN (item B).

- 2 The Remote Office 911x series user dials the external telephone number.

Result: The Remote Office 911x series unit sends the dialed digits as packets across the Ethernet network. The packets go through the IP network and the corporate WAN, to the RLC. The RLC converts the packets to the format required by the host PBX. The host PBX then converts the data to voice and routes the call through the PSTN to the called party (items C & D).

PSTN call

- 1 The Remote Office 911x series user lifts the handset (item 1).

Result: The Remote Office 911x series user hears a dial tone. This indicates a successful connection to the host PBX over the PSTN (item 2).

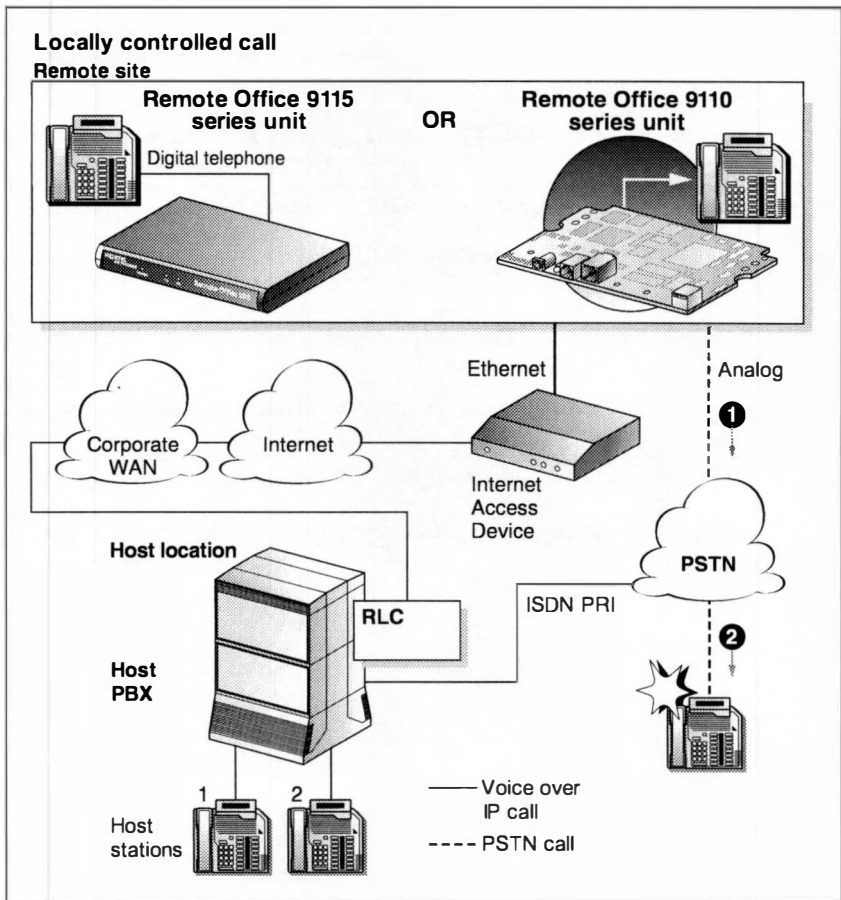
- 2 The Remote Office 911x series user dials the external telephone number.

Result: The Remote Office 911x series unit sends the dialed digits across an analog line through the PSTN, through the host PBX to the called party (items 3 & 4).

Note: Item notations in parentheses refer to circled markers in the diagram on page 17.

Call scenario 3: locally controlled mode—local call

The diagram below shows how a call is routed when placing a call within your local area using either the Remote Office 9110 circuit card or the Remote Office 9115 unit.



G021

The network that is used to route the host-controlled call is transparent to the user, and the dialing requirement is the same for both. Calls work the same in reverse, from the host PBX site to the Remote Office 911x series unit site.

Local call

- 1 Remote Office 911x series users initiate local calls differently, according to whether the Remote Office 911x series unit is online or offline. The following table describes the required actions:

IF the Remote Office 911x series unit is	THEN, to place a local call, the Remote Office 911x series user
---	--

online, or connected to the host PBX,	presses the local calling key
---------------------------------------	-------------------------------

offline, or not connected to the host PBX,	lifts the handset.
--	--------------------

Result: The Remote Office 911x series 911x user hears a PSTN dial tone from the Central Office (item 1).

- 2 The Remote Office 911x series 911x user dials the external telephone number.
- 3 The dialed digits travel across the PSTN to the called party (item 2).

Note: Item notations in parentheses refer to circled markers in the diagram on page 19.

System security

There are two levels of security that you can set to control access from Remote Office 911x series units to the RLC on the host PBX. This section describes these security levels and how you can manage them using Configuration Manager.

No security

When no security measures are used, the RLC accepts incoming calls from all Remote Office 911x series units.

Use this level with caution as it exposes the RLC to unauthorized use. For example, No security allows a user from an unauthorized remote site can accidentally, or intentionally, connect to the RLC. With this connection made, the unauthorized user can now place long distance phone calls through the RLC and the host PBX.

Security identifier

You can use security identifier authentication over the PSTN or IP network. When you choose the security identifier level of security, the Remote Office 911x series automatically sends its configured security identifier (password) for each connection request. The RLC compares the identifier configured to the RLC port with the identifier assigned to the Remote Office 911x series. If the identifiers match, then the RLC grants the requested connection.

If the identifiers do not match, then the RLC records an event in the Remote Office 911x series system log. You can view the system log in Configuration Manager. The telephone displays **HOSTLESS MODE**, indicating that communications with the host PBX are down.

Telephones

This section lists the telephones, features, and modules supported by the Remote Office 911x series unit.

Supported digital telephones

Remote Office 911x series units support the following digital telephone sets with display:

M2008D	M2616D	M3820	M3904
M2008HFD	M2616CT	M3902	M3905
M2216D	M3310	M3903	

Your digital telephone must have a one or two-line display in order to configure the Remote Office 911x series unit with the telephone display menu.

Required footstand for Remote Office 9110 units

The Remote Office 9110 unit installs in the footstand of the Meridian Digital Telephone. The required ATA/MCA footstand is standard on Meridian Modular Telephones (M2000 series) with a date code of May 6, 1998 or later. Contact your Nortel Networks distributor to obtain the required footstand if your telephone has an earlier date code.

Supported telephone modules

Remote Office 911x series units support the following telephone modules:

- add-on modules to add more keys to the digital telephone
- application modules to provide more functionality to the digital telephone

Note: Remote Office 9110 units do not support Meridian Communication Adapters (MCAs). Remote Office 9115 units support Meridian Communication Adapters (MCAs) to allow computer telephony integration (CTI) control of digital telephones operating in transparent mode. Remote Office 911x series units do not support Analog Telephone Adapters (ATAs).

Supported telephone features

The Remote Office 911x series units support all features provided by the host PBX for host-controlled calls. The following are some examples:

- ACD features
- call forward
- conference
- call waiting
- hold
- transfer (The analog port does not support transfer.)

Note: Dial tone for conference and transfer can be very rough. A stutter can be heard during a remote dial tone. This is a normal occurrence and is caused by the DSP activating a dial tone relay.

Refer to Chapter 6, “Using the digital telephone”, for a detailed description of the features listed above.

Computer telephony integration applications

You can use the following two types of computer telephony integration (CTI) applications:

1. first-party CTI applications that use the Symposium Desktop Telephone Application Programming Interface (TAPI) Service Provider
2. third-party CTI applications that use Symposium TAPI Service Provider for M1

You can use both types with the Remote Office 911x series unit.

Automatic Call Distribution (ACD) applications

The Remote Office 911x series supports all Nortel Networks Automatic Call Distribution (ACD) applications.

Voice over IP

You can configure the Remote Office 911x series unit to use the following Voice over IP (VoIP) features:

- converting analog voice into digital data for transmission as voice packets over your IP network
- automatically switching from the IP network to the analog connection when the voice Quality of Service (QoS) on the IP network deteriorates below an acceptable level

Configure the latter VoIP feature on the RLC. For detailed instructions on configuring the thresholds, refer to the *Reach Line Card Installation and Administration Guide* (NTP 555-8421-210).

How QoS transitioning technology works

The Remote Office 911x series unit and the RLC continually monitor activity on the data link between the two. When the QoS on the network falls below the user-configured level, the RLC transitions calls from the IP network to the PSTN. After the RLC transitions the calls, both ends continue monitoring data link activity. In this way, they determine the appropriate time to restore voice traffic to the IP network.

Note: Voice quality can degrade during transition from the IP network to the PSTN and during recovery to the IP network.

Call timers (permanent and call on demand)

The Remote Office 911x series supports both permanent and call on demand PSTN connections. A permanent connection means that the connection between the remote digital telephone and the host PBX remains connected at all times. A call on demand connection means that the RLC or Remote Office 911x series unit establishes a connection only when it requires a connection to the host PBX. Call on demand connections allow you to configure minimum call duration and idle timers. These timers help to reduce PSTN charges.

Minimum call duration timer

Many PSTN tariffs specify a minimum length of time that you incur a charge when you establish the connection, regardless of the call duration. This charge results in the minimum call charges listed on long-distance telephone bills.

The minimum call duration timer applies to PSTN mode only. This timer specifies the minimum length of time that each PSTN call to the host PBX remains connected, regardless of telephone activity or inactivity. Configure the timer on the RLC to drop the connection just before an additional charge period begins. For example, with the timer set to 59 seconds and a call lasting only 20 seconds, the PSTN connection drops 39 seconds after you hang up.

If someone places another call to the host PBX before the timer expires, the timer resets to track the last call established. When the timer drops the connection, reestablishing an analog, host-controlled connection takes approximately 8 to 10 seconds while modem training takes place.

Idle timer

The idle timer defines the maximum length of time that a PSTN connection remains idle before it closes. Idle means that a voice connection does not exist, and no telephone buttons are pressed.

For example, if you set the RLC idle timer to 60 seconds, the PSTN call remains connected for 60 seconds after you hang up. As with the minimum call duration timer, reestablishing an analog, host-controlled connection after the connection drops takes approximately 8 to 10 seconds while modem training takes place.

How the timers work to control PSTN costs

The minimum call duration and idle timers work together to control PSTN charges. The following examples describe what happens when the minimum call duration timer is set to 59 seconds and the idle timer is set to 60 seconds.

Example 1

If the call lasts for 20 seconds and no other calls are made, the PSTN connection drops when the minimum call duration timer reaches 59 seconds. The minimum call duration timer expires before the idle timer.

Example 2

If the call lasts for 65 seconds and no other calls are made, the PSTN connection drops after another 60 seconds has passed without activity. Since the PSTN call exceeded 59 seconds, the minimum call duration timer no longer applies. The idle timer is used, in this case, to prevent further PSTN charges.

Local calling

The Remote Office 911x series unit allow you to place local calls using a designated local calling key. Refer to Chapter 6, “Using the digital telephone”, for a detailed description of the local calling key.

Local calls through PSTN

The Remote Office 911x series unit allows you to place outgoing and receive incoming PSTN calls over the analog connection. When placing calls in the Hostless mode, you must press the DN key twice to get dial tone.

Refer to Chapter 6, “Using the digital telephone” for a detailed description of local calling.

Supported telephone features

The following telephone features are supported for locally controlled calls:

- call waiting
- hold for calls that appear on local calling keys
- release
- hands-free
- calling line identification (CLID) and calling party name display (CPND)

Note: The Conference and Call Forward features require a host PBX connection, and are therefore not supported in locally controlled mode. Remote Office 911x series units support call waiting, CLID, and CPND if you subscribe to these services offered by you service provider.

Online/Offline Table

The Online/Offline Table allows you to ensure that potentially costly PSTN calls through the host PBX are disabled after business hours.

Configure the Online/Offline table on the RLC to schedule the following:

- the time that you want to make the PSTN connection to the host PBX available to the Remote Office 911x series site

Note: When the Remote Office 911x series unit is in offline mode, you cannot use it to place or receive calls through the host PBX over the PSTN or IP network.

- the time that you want the Remote Office 911x series unit to revert to normal telephone service

You can define up to eight entries per day, every day of the week for each Remote Office 911x series unit site. You can define each entry as online, offline, or undefined for each time period entered.

You can override the settings of the Online/Offline table if the table attempts to suspend access to the analog connection in the middle of a business call. You are alerted by a tone and a display message 30, 20, and 10 seconds before the connection is terminated. To override connection termination, you must enter the online SPRE (Special Prefix) code on the telephone.

You can configure an online/offline table for each remote site on the RLC. Refer to the *Reach Line Card Installation and Administration Guide* (NTP 555-8421-210) for configuration information.

Emergency service number

This section describes the emergency service number feature supported by the Remote Office 911x series unit.

If your community has implemented an emergency service number (such as 911) to call the police, fire department, or ambulance, you can configure that number on the Remote Office 911x series unit. This allows you to dial the emergency number from any line key and be connected directly to the local emergency dispatch center.

When you configure the local emergency service number on the Remote Office 911x series unit, you prevent the call from being automatically routed through the host PBX. The host PBX could be in a different city than the remote unit. An emergency call that is routed through the host PBX can result in emergency support being dispatched to the wrong location.

ATTENTION!

If you are using only the IP network to route calls, you must place emergency service calls on a telephone that is directly connected to a PSTN line. If you place an emergency service call from a station that is connected to a Remote Office 911x series unit that is using only the IP network to route calls, the RLC routes the call through the host PBX. (The host PBX could be in a different city.)

Configuration Manager

After the initial configuration is complete, you can use Configuration Manager administration software to make configuration changes and administer the Remote Office 911x series unit. Refer to Chapter 5, “Changing configuration settings using Configuration Manager”. The software is a Windows-based application that is installed on your PC.

Administration tasks include the following:

- viewing the system status
- performing upgrades, backups, or restores
- making configuration changes
- changing the administration password

Note: You must use the telephone set menu to configure the Remote Office 911x series unit for the first time. Refer to “Before you begin” on page 66 for a detailed telephone menu description.

Power requirements

This section lists characteristics of the recommended power supplies for the Remote Office 911x series units.

Input specifications

Input specifications for the Remote Office 911x series units are as follows:

Characteristic	Rating
voltage	90 - 264 VAC
frequency	47 - 63 Hz
current	0.4A maximum

Output specifications

Output specifications for the Remote Office 911x series units are as follows:

Characteristic	Rating
voltage	24 VDC +/-5%
current	0.62A maximum
power	15W maximum

Chapter 2

Planning for installation

In this chapter

Physical environment	34
Administration PC	37
Network considerations	40
Deployment	42

Physical environment

This section provides the space, temperature, cabling, and mounting information you need to know before you install Remote Office 911x series units.

Space

Insert the Remote Office 9110 circuit card into the base of a digital telephone set. The dimensions for the circuit card are as follows:

- 16.5 cm (6.5 inches) wide
- 8.8 cm (3.5 inches) deep

Place the Remote Office 9115 unit on a desk, or mount it on the wall. The dimensions for the unit are as follows:

- 18.2 cm (7.2 inches) wide
- 9.9 cm (3.9 inches) deep

Temperature

The table on the following page describes the temperature and humidity conditions that the Remote Office 911x series unit can withstand without any performance degradation or damage.

Specification	Minimum	Maximum
Normal operation		
Recommended:		
■ Temperature	■ 0°C (32°F)	■ 65°C (149°F)
■ Relative humidity	■ 10%	■ 95% (non-condensing)
Absolute:		
■ Temperature	■ 0°C (32°F)	■ 70°C (158°F)
■ Relative humidity	■ 5%	■ 95% (non-condensing)
Short term (less than 72 hours):	0°C (32°F)	70°C (158°F)
Rate of change	0°C (32°F) to 60°C (140°F) per 3 minutes	
Storage		
Recommended temperature	-50°C (-58°F)	70°C (158°F)
Relative humidity	5%	95% RH (non-condensing)
Temperature shock		
In three minutes	-50°C (-58°F)	25°C (77°F)
In three minutes	70°C (158°F)	25°C (77°F)
Non-condensing	-40°C (-40°F)	70°C (158°F)
Power consumption		
Voltage	24VDC	
Current	0.62A	

Mounting options

Place the Remote Office 9115 unit on a desk, or mount the unit on the wall. If mounting on the wall, make sure that the chosen location allows you to easily view the LEDs on the front panel.

ATTENTION!

Installation on the wall must be completed using standard telephony installation practices.

Cables included with the Remote Office 9110 circuit card

The Remote Office 9110 package includes a power cord and power supply.

Cables included with the Remote Office 9115 unit

The Remote Office 9115 package includes the following cables:

- 1.83 meter (6-foot) RJ-11 telephone cord
- a power cord and power supply

Cables you must supply yourself

The following cables used to establish the network connections are industry-standard cables and are not provided in the Remote Office 9115 package.

- Ethernet cable (CAT 5)
- telephone cable
- serial cable for the Remote Office 9115 unit

You must obtain these cables from your local cable supplier.

Administration PC

This section describes the way that you can connect an administration terminal to the Remote Office 911x series unit. It also describes the hardware and software requirements for using the Configuration Manager administration software.

Connection options

The Remote Office 911x series system includes the Configuration Manager software that enables you to configure, administer, and upgrade the Remote Office 911x series unit. You can connect to Remote Office 911x series unit with Telnet to use Configuration Manager, or using the digital telephone set menu.

You can access Configuration Manager using a 10BaseT Ethernet connection for ongoing administration and upgrade of Remote Office 911x series units.

Note: Use the telephone set menu for first-time configuration of Remote Office 911x series units.

Ethernet connection

Once you configure the Remote Office 911x series unit with its IP interface information, the following can occur:

- You can establish communication between the Remote Office 911x series unit and the RLC (that is, calls can be routed over the data link between the two).
- You can administer the Remote Office 911x series unit over the data link between the unit and the RLC. For more information, refer to “Administering multiple nodes in the network,” on page 38.

Administering multiple nodes in the network

If you are responsible for administering one or more Remote Office 911x series units and the RLC on the host PBX, you can access them and the RLC from anywhere on the network.

Note: You do not have to install separate administration PCs for the RLC and the Remote Office 911x series unit(s). You can use one administration PC to administer all units in the Remote Office network.

Windows PC requirements

To use Configuration Manager, the administration PC must have the following characteristics:

- IBM-compatible
- Windows 95, Windows 98, or Windows Workstation NT 4.0 with the Microsoft Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) networking component installed
- CD-ROM drive
- a pointing device (mouse)
- 32 Mbytes of RAM for Windows 95 and 98, or 64 Mbytes of RAM for Windows Workstation NT
- 48 Mbytes of available storage for Windows 95 and 98, or 64 Mbytes of available storage for Windows Workstation NT

TFTP server

A Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP) server is required for performing firmware upgrades and configuration uploads. You can use any TFTP server application. TFTP server applications are available from the Internet.

Year 2000 compliance

The Remote Office 911x series unit and Configuration Manager software are Year 2000 compliant. However, you must ensure that the administration PC is Year 2000 compliant by verifying that the Windows operating system is shown in this table:

Operating system	Year 2000 compliance requirement
Windows Workstation NT 4.0	Service Pack 5 or higher
Windows 95	Version 95b
Windows 98	OK as is

Network considerations

Refer to the *Remote Office Network Engineering Guidelines* (NTP 555-8421-103) for detailed information on planning and preparing your network for the addition of Remote Office units. The Remote Office 911x series unit communicates with the host PBX using either the PSTN and/or IP networks. To use the Remote Office 911x series unit in these networks, you must consider the issues described in this section.

IP addressing and routing

To place and receive calls over the IP network, you must:

- physically connect the Remote Office 911x series unit to the IP network
- assign a unique IP address and a subnet mask to the Remote Office 911x series unit, unless using Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP)
Note: Similarly, you must assign a subnet mask, gateway, and unique IP address to the RLC on the host PBX.
- have the ability to send and receive traffic to and from the RLC on the host PBX

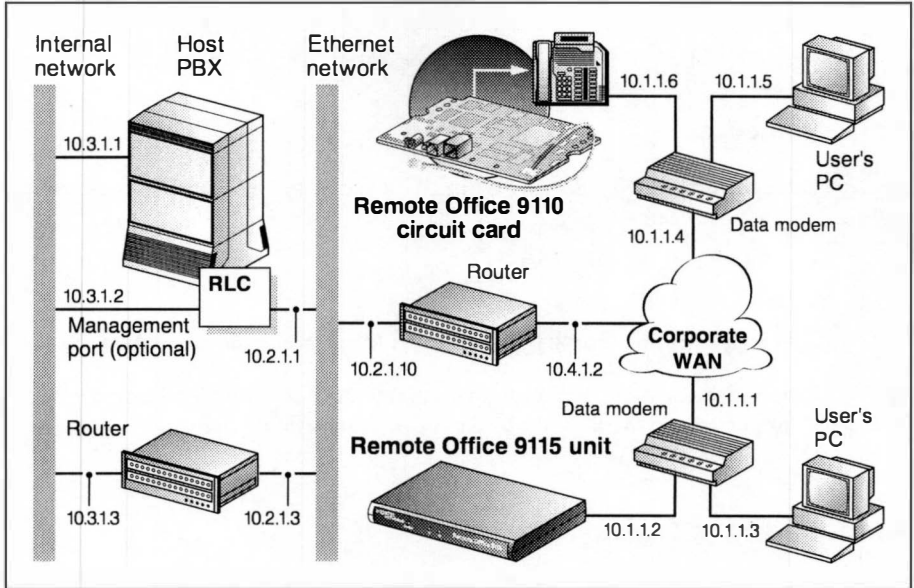
Determining DHCP Assigned IP Addresses

If you use DHCP at the remote location, determine the Remote Office Unit's IP address by checking the Network statistics for the RLC through Configuration Manager. Log onto Configuration Manager, choose the RLC as the Device Type, and then access Alarms/Stats/Logs → Network Statistics. Enter the Unit ID of the Remote Office unit that you want to review the statistics for. The DHCP assigned IP address displays at the top of the window.

Note: If you are using a Network Address Translation (NAT) router at the remote location, the IP address provided is a NAT address. To access the Remote Office unit using Telnet, ensure that the NAT router allows Telnet access to TCP port 23, and for upgrades, TCP port 69.

Network diagram

The following diagram shows the Remote Office 911x series unit's position in an IP network.



G101520rev

Quality of Service

The data path from the Remote Office 911x series unit to the RLC must be capable of handling voice traffic, with little or no congestion and few delays. If the network is congested or subjected to many delays, voice QoS deteriorates.

For more information regarding QoS Transitioning Technology, refer to the *Remote Office Network Engineering Guidelines (NTP 555-8421-103)*.

Deployment

This section presents the Remote Office 911x series unit deployment models (options) that are supported by Nortel Networks.

Transport media

You can configure the Remote Office 911x series unit on the RLC to use the following transport media:

- the IP network (IP only)
- the PSTN (PSTN only)
- both networks (enabling your system to perform QoS transitions)

For further details on this configuration, refer to Priority under Remote Port Configuration in the *Reach Line Card Installation and Administration Guide* (NTP 555-8421-210).

Network Address Translation

Some network routers run the Network Address Translation (NAT) protocol that allows multiple devices in the IP network to share the same broadband IP address. An alternative to running the NAT protocol is to have the network administrator provide each device with its own broadband IP address.

Remote Office 911x series units support NAT functionality, if this functionality is enabled on your network. You can only connect a single Remote Office 911x series unit behind a NAT router. You can connect multiple Remote Office 911x series units behind a PNAT router. A PNAT router is a port number and network address translation router. If you are not sure whether yours is a NAT router or a PNAT router, check with your vendor.

You must configure your Remote Office 911x series unit for IP permanent allocation if it is connected behind a NAT router. You can assign a static IP address to your Remote Office 911x series unit, or you can use DHCP to obtain its IP address.

IP deployment

Before deploying your Remote Office 911x series unit with IP capability, ensure that you engineer the IP network properly. You can configure a permanent (Model 1) or on-demand (Model 2) IP connection. The following guidelines describe requirements, conditions, and characteristics of each supported IP deployment option:

Model 1: IP permanent

If using DSL or a cable modem, configure an IP permanent connection.

- The Remote Office 911x series unit re-establishes its TCP/IP signaling session to the RLC once per minute.
- The Remote Office 911x series unit supports both static IP and, through DHCP, dynamic IP addressing
- Do not configure a remote IP address on the RLC.
- One virtual private network (VPN) supports multiple Remote Office 911x series units.
- One Network Address Translation (NAT) router supports only one Remote Office 911x series unit.
- One Port number and Network Address Translation (PNAT) router supports multiple Remote Office 911x series units.
- The RLC requires an IP address that the Remote Office 911x series unit can access.

Model 2: IP on-demand

If your BRI routers incur toll charges, configure an IP on-demand connection.

- TCP/IP signaling sessions between the RLC and the Remote Office 911x series unit close when calls end.
- Configure a static IP address for the Remote Office 911x series unit on the RLC for best service.
- IP on-demand configuration supports VPNs.
- IP on-demand configuration does not support NAT or PNAT routers.
- Both the RLC and Remote Office 911x series unit require IP addresses that are accessible from the other unit.

PSTN deployment

Deploy your Remote Office 911x series unit with PSTN only access if you are not ready to implement VoIP at the remote location. The following guidelines describe the requirements, conditions, and characteristics of each supported PSTN deployment option:

Model 3: PSTN permanent

If toll charges and B-channel usage at the host PBX are not an issue, configure a PSTN permanent connection. This deployment option provides the highest quality service.

- The PSTN link stays up after PBX calls are complete
- Configure PSTN # of remote on RLC
- Does not support call waiting even if cancel call waiting is entered on the Remote Office 911x series unit. Cancel call waiting only works for calls originated by the Remote Office 911x series unit, but calls can originate from the RLC after recovery from the PSTN network service outage

Model 4: PSTN on-demand

If either toll charges or B-channel usage at the host PBX is an issue, configure a PSTN on-demand connection. This deployment option provides the best economy.

- 12-20 second connect time for new calls if PSTN link is down
- PSTN link closes after PBX calls complete
- configure the PSTN # of the Remote Office 911x series unit on the RLC
- does not support call waiting even if cancel call waiting is entered on the Remote Office 911x series unit

QoS transition

Deploy your Remote Office 911x series unit with a QoS transition connection to take advantage of the best of both worlds. The IP network is the preferred medium. However, sometimes the voice QoS on the IP network can deteriorate. When this happens, the RLC maintains acceptable voice QoS for QoS transition connections. The RLC does this by transitioning calls to the more stable PSTN network until QoS on the IP network returns to acceptable levels.

For information on configuring QoS Transition Technology, refer to the *Reach Line Card Installation and Administration Guide* (NTP 555-8421-210).

The following are characteristics of QoS Transitioning Technology:

- QoS drops below 12-20 second transition time during which call stays on the IP with IP QoS
- voice traffic returns to IP when QoS returns to within acceptable limits
- voice call ends and QoS is still bad, the PSTN link remains up
- Remote Office units only test IP QoS during active voice calls
- does not support call waiting even if cancel call waiting is entered at the Remote Office 911x series unit

Model 5: IP Permanent, PSTN Permanent

Configure PSTN Permanent to keep PSTN link up while IP QoS is bad. (Best service)

- You must configure the PSTN number of the remote unit on the RLC.

Local PSTN connection

Outbound Local Calls

Be aware of the following characteristics of outbound local calls:

- when the PSTN line is not in use (Local Key Indicator is off), you can press the Local key to place a local call

Note: Placing a local call prevents QoS transitions by tying up the line.

- when the modem is in use for transport to the RLC, the Local key is lit
- You can override the PSTN link to make an outbound local call. When you press the Local calling key, the Remote Office 911x series unit disconnects the current call and presents a dial tone.

Emergency Service Calls

- The Remote Office 911x series unit can re-route emergency (911 in North America) calls made from the digital telephone keys to the analog port.
- This places the call to emergency personnel in the city of the remote location instead of the corporate office.

- You must configure the Emergency Code on the Remote Office 911x series unit (911 in North America).
- If the user presses a line key and dials the Emergency Code, the Remote Office 911x series unit opens a PSTN connection and dials the Emergency Code.

Inbound Local Calls and RLC Calls

- The Remote Office 911x series unit treats inbound RLC calls and local calls differently, as follows:
 - The Remote Office 911x series unit presents inbound local calls on the local calling key.
 - The Remote Office 911x series unit answers inbound RLC calls with the internal modem
- The Remote Office 911x series unit does not differentiate between inbound RLC calls and inbound local calls based upon CLASS or Distinctive Ring.

Models 1 and 2 - IP only

- All inbound calls to PSTN line appear on local keys.

Model 3 - PSTN permanent

- Inbound PSTN calls ring the local calling key when the Remote Office 911x series unit is offline.
- Inbound PSTN callers hear a busy signal when the Remote Office 911x series unit is online.

Model 4 - PSTN on-demand

- Inbound PSTN calls ring the local calling key when the Remote Office 911x series unit is offline.
- Inbound PSTN callers hear a busy signal when the Remote Office 911x series unit is online and the PSTN link is available.
- The modem answers inbound PSTN calls the when Remote Office 911x series unit is online and the PSTN link is unavailable.

Note: Nortel Networks does not recommend the Model 4 configuration due to the delays in establishing bandwidth. In addition, a PSTN caller can hear a burst of modem tones if calling the analog line when it is idle in the online mode.

Model 5 - IP permanent/PSTN permanent

- Inbound PSTN calls ring the local calling key when IP QoS is good.
- Inbound PSTN callers receive a busy signal when IP QoS is bad and the PSTN modem link is up
- The Remote Office 911x series unit always initiates QoS Transition. This allows the Remote Office 911x series unit to treat incoming PSTN calls as local calls when TCP/IP is available.
- If TCP/IP is unavailable, the Remote Office 911x series unit answers incoming PSTN calls with the modem.

Sharing a PSTN line

Note: Nortel Networks *strongly* recommends against sharing a PSTN line with other devices if you intend to take advantage of QoS Transitioning Technology.

If you chose to deploy the Remote Office 911x series unit on a shared PSTN connection, such as your home PSTN connection, the following conditions apply:

- inbound calls
 - The additional devices ring at the same time that the Remote Office 911x series unit presents calls on the local call key.
 - The Remote Office 911x series unit answers calls with its modem in the manner described in the previous “Inbound Local Calls and RLC Calls” section.
- RLC can call shared PSTN number
 - To prevent the RLC from calling the shared line, do not configure the remote PSTN number into the RLC.
This results in longer recovery from PSTN outages because the RLC cannot establish the PSTN link.

Chapter 3

Installing the Remote Office 911x series unit

In this chapter

Preparing for installation	50
Installing the Remote Office 9110 circuit card	52
Installing the Remote Office 9115 unit	58

Preparing for installation

This section shows you how to prepare for the installation of the Remote Office 911x series unit.

General Safety

The following is a list of general safety measures that should be considered when installing the Remote Office 911x series unit.

- Do not ignore the warnings, in the guide, about the risks related to installing and handling hardware. For a description of the types of warnings this guide provides, refer to “Conventions used in this guide” on page xx in the Preface.
- Follow these safety precautions at all times to avoid damage or injury:
 - Plug the Remote Office 911x series unit into a properly grounded power source to reduce the possibility of electric shock and damage to the unit or network.
 - Ensure that nothing rests on connection cables, and that cables cannot be tripped over or stepped on.
- Protect the equipment against Electrostatic discharge (ESD). ESD affects the performance and decreases the useful life of system components. ESD can seriously damage component parts such as circuit cards. Implement the following precautions that are recommended by computer and telephone equipment manufacturers:
 - Remove items that generate static charge from the installation site.
 - Use antistatic spray if the site is carpeted.
 - Ground yourself before handling any equipment.

Required hardware and software tools

The following is a list of required hardware and software installation tools:

- an antistatic ESD wrist strap (recommended)
- a Phillips-head screwdriver and two number eight wood screws (if you want to mount the Remote Office 9115 unit on the wall)
- the Configuration Manager software installed on the administration PC (to make configuration changes or administer the Remote Office 911x series unit). You can download the software by clicking on the Customer Support and Software Distribution links at the following website:
www.nortelnetworks.com
- a TFTP server application installed on the PC (required for performing firmware upgrades)

If you do not have a TFTP server currently installed on the administration PC, you can obtain one from the Internet.

Unpacking and inspecting the equipment

Before you install the Remote Office 911x series unit, ensure that the following package contents are all present and are not damaged:

- one Remote Office 9110 or Remote Office 9115
- one power cord and power supply for each Remote Office 911x series unit
- one six-foot RJ-11 telephone cable for each Remote Office 9115 unit
- one installation kit for each Remote Office 9110 circuit card. Each installation kit includes the following:
 - two ferrite beads
 - one overlay
 - two mounting screws (used to attach the circuit card to the foot stand)
- the *Remote Office and RLC Release Notes* (NTP 555-8421-102)
- the *Remote Office 911x Series Quick Start Guide*

Installing the Remote Office 9110 circuit card

Before you can install the Remote Office 9110 circuit card, you must first remove the footstand of the digital telephone. For more information about supported telephone footstands, refer to “Required footstand for Remote Office 9110 units” on page 22.

Note: You can only add the Remote Office 9110 circuit card to digital telephones that have an ATA/MCA footstand. To obtain an ATA/MCA footstand, contact your Nortel Networks distributor.

Removing the footstand of the digital telephone

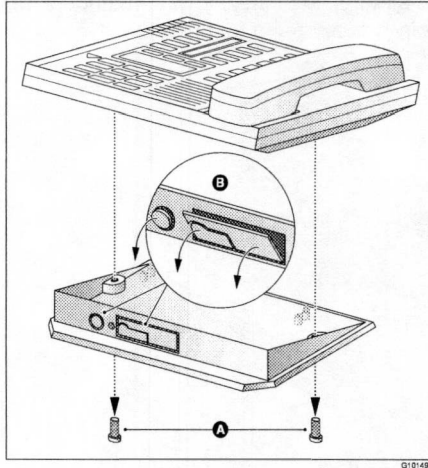
To remove the footstand of the digital telephone, complete the following procedure:

- 1 Disconnect the telephone-side connection of the RJ-11 TCM telephone cable. The other end of this cable connects to the wall jack.
- 2 Place the telephone on a flat surface with the keypad facing downward.

Note: Ensure that you are grounded with an approved ESD strap.

- 3 Unscrew and remove the footstand of the digital telephone.

Note: Refer to "A" in the following diagram.



- 4 Punch out the front panels in the footstand of the telephone to make the connections accessible when you install the Remote Office 9110 circuit card.

Note: Refer to "B" in the preceding diagram.

Inserting the Remote Office 9110 circuit card

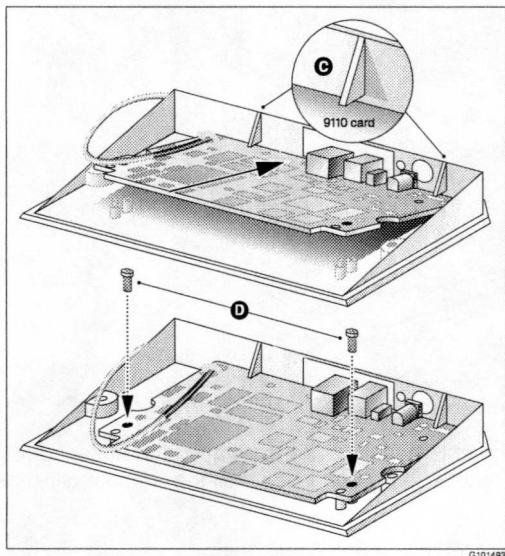
To insert the Remote Office 9110 circuit card into your digital telephone, complete the following procedure:

- 1 Remove the Remote Office 9110 circuit card from the antistatic bag.
- 2 Insert the leading edge of the Remote Office 9110 circuit card under the two brackets on the footstand.

Note: Refer to "C" in the following diagram for the location of the brackets.

- 3 Use both hands to push forward until the circuit card snaps into place under the brackets.

Note: Two holes on either side of the circuit card should now be aligned with the corresponding holes on the footstand.



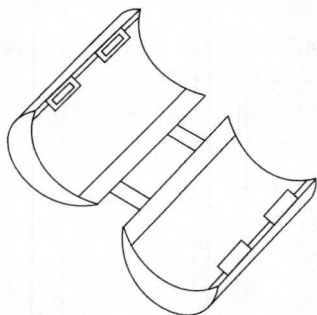
- 4 Attach the Remote Office 9110 circuit card to the footstand with the screws supplied in the Installation Kit.

Note: Refer to "D" in the diagram on page 54.

- 5 Plug the male RJ-11 connector on the loose end of the Meridian Line Cord attached to the Remote Office 9110 unit into the jack on the telephone.
- 6 Re-attach the footstand to the bottom of the telephone.
- 7 Apply the overlay identifying the power connection, the jack for an analog line connection for PSTN functionality, and the jack connecting your Ethernet for IP network connectivity.

Installing ferrite beads

The Remote Office 9110 circuit card installation kit contains two ferrite beads. Ferrite beads protect the Ethernet and power supply cable from electromagnetic interference (EMI). The two heavy pieces of ferrite come in a plastic-hinged cover that forms a block and has a hole in the middle for the cable to pass through. You must install the ferrite bead close to the plug that connects to the Remote Office 9110 circuit card.



To install the ferrite beads for both the Ethernet cable and the power supply cable:

- 1 Open the plastic latch at the side of the ferrite bead.
- 2 Lay a cable across the middle of the ferrite bead.

The ferrite bead must be close to the cable connector.

- 3 Loop the cable **tightly** around the ferrite bead.

There must be 2 loops of Ethernet cable around the ferrite bead (the Ethernet cable lays across the ferrite bead 3 times).

There must be 3 loops of power supply cable around the ferrite bead (the power supply cable lays across the ferrite bead 4 times).

- 4 Close and latch the ferrite bead.

Note: You may need to adjust the cable loops to make them as tight as possible.

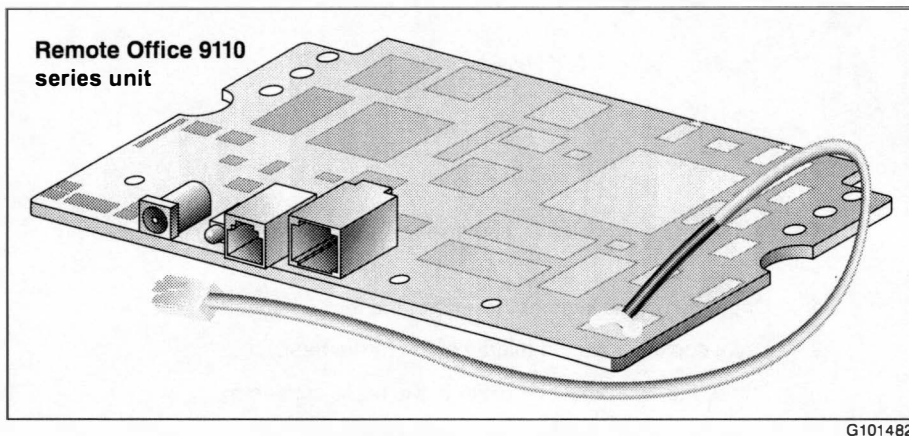
Connecting the Remote Office 9110 circuit card

Ensure that you have obtained the following telephone and Ethernet cables for your network:

- Telephone cable with standard connectors for the PSTN line
One end of the RJ-11 telephone cable connects to the Remote Office 9110 unit and the other end connects to the telephone line.

- Ethernet cable

If you are connecting the Remote Office 9110 circuit card to a hub, you need a standard CAT5 unshielded twisted-pair (UTP) straight-through Ethernet cable. The cable should be no longer than 100 meters (325 feet).



Note: These cables are not supplied in the Remote Office 9110 package.

Complete the following procedure:

- 1 If you want to route calls over the IP network or administer the Remote Office 9110 circuit card with Configuration Manager, connect the circuit card to the Ethernet network by making the following connections:
 - a. Connect one end of the RJ-45 Ethernet cable to the ETHERNET connector on the Remote Office 9110 circuit card.
 - b. Connect the other end to either an Ethernet hub or network router.
- 2 Connect the Remote Office 9110 circuit card to the power source as follows:
 - a. Connect the appropriate cord on the power transformer to the power connector on the Remote Office 9110 circuit card.
 - b. Plug the power connector into an uninterruptible power supply (UPS) or wall outlet.

Powering up the Remote Office 9110 circuit card

As soon as you connect the Remote Office 9110 circuit card to the power source, the circuit card begins to power up.

During power-up, the Remote Office 9110 circuit card performs a self-test. The power LED flashes three times to verify all critical functionality.

If the Remote Office 9110 circuit card completes a successful self-test, the telephone display shows one of the following messages:

- A time and date, if connected to a PBX.
- **HOSTLESS MODE**, if not connected to a PBX.

Note: The ETHERNET TX and RX LEDs flash only in response to transmit and receive activity.

Installing the Remote Office 9115 unit

You can install the Remote Office 9115 unit on a desk or on the wall. The unit has the following dimensions:

- 18.2 cm (7.2 inches) wide
- 9.9 cm (3.9 inches) deep
- 2.544 cm (1 inch) high

Note: If you want to mount the Remote Office 9115 unit on the wall, you must provide your own mounting hardware.

Installing the Remote Office 9115 unit on a desk

To install the Remote Office 9115 unit on a desk, complete the following procedure:

- 1 Turn the Remote Office 9115 unit upside down.
- 2 Affix the rubber feet to the bottom of the Remote Office 9115 unit.
Note: Ensure the rubber feet are securely fastened.
- 3 Place the Remote Office 9115 unit in the desired location.

Installing the Remote Office 9115 unit on the wall

You need the following tools:

- a tape measure
- a screwdriver
- two long screws (to ensure the unit is securely mounted)

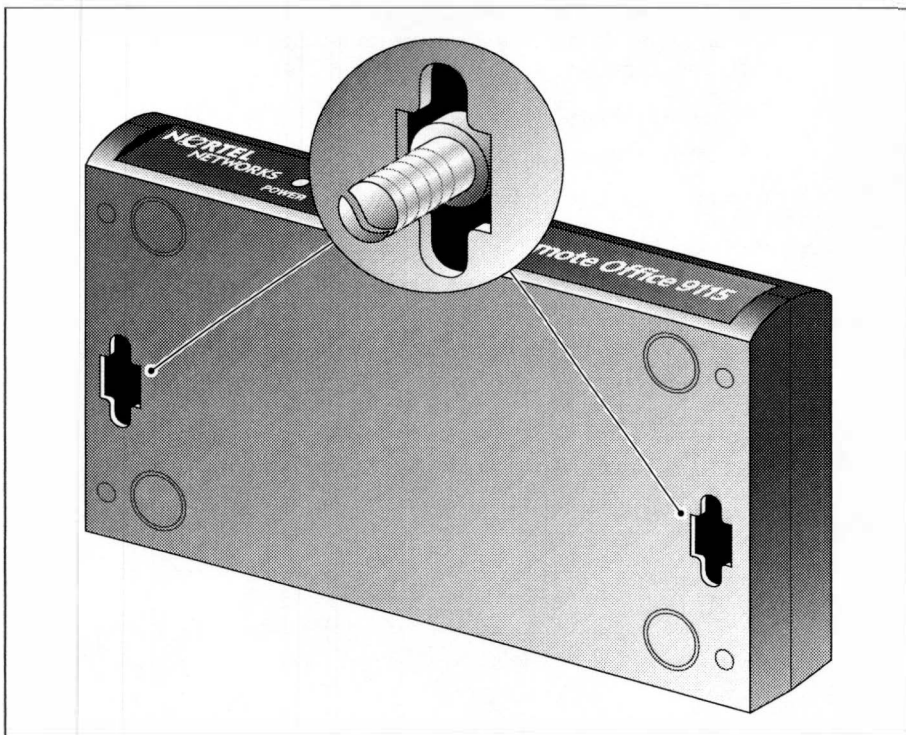
Note: Do not affix the rubber feet to the bottom of the Remote Office 9115 unit. Otherwise, the unit cannot be mounted flush against the wall.

Ensure that your chosen location meets the following criteria:

- The LEDs on the front panel must be easily viewed.

- There must be enough space to accommodate the cables when they are connected to the Remote Office 9115 unit.

Refer to the following diagram.



G023

Complete the following procedure:

- 1 Choose the location on the wall where you want to mount the Remote Office 9115 unit.
- 2 Use the pre-drilled screw slots on the bottom of the Remote Office 9115 unit as a guide to measure and mark the location on the wall for each mounting screw.

The measurements between the screw slots are as follows:

- from front to back panels: 2.54 cm (1 in.)
- from side to side: 15.8 cm (6.25 in.)

- 3 Mount the screws.

Note: Do not screw the screws all the way in. The heads should be screwed to about 5 mm (1/8 inch) from the wall.

- 4 Mount the Remote Office 9115 unit on the screws, then gently pull it down so the screws slide into the narrow portion of the screw slots.

Note: Do not let go yet.

- 5 Make sure that the Remote Office 9115 unit is securely mounted.



WARNING

Risk of equipment damage

Ensure that you fasten the Remote Office 9115 unit securely to the wall. Falls can damage the unit.

Connecting the Remote Office 9115 unit

Obtain the following cables for your network. These cables are not supplied.

- one standard telephone cable

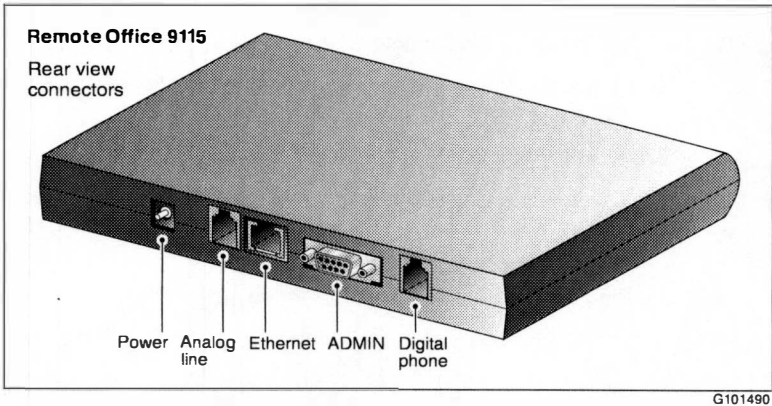
This cable, with RJ-11 plugs on each end, connects the Remote Office 9115 unit to the analog telephone outlet or data modem, if your data modem provides analog line functionality.

Note: Locate digital telephones no farther than 1230.7 meters (4000 feet) from the Remote Office 9115 unit. Locate the Remote Office 9115 unit no farther than 307.7 meters (1000 feet) from the telephone outlet.

- Ethernet cable

If you are connecting the Remote Office 9115 unit to a hub, you need a standard CAT5 unshielded twisted-pair (UTP), straight-through Ethernet cable. Ensure that this cable is no longer than 100 meters (325 feet) in length.

The following diagram shows the connections on the back panel of the Remote Office 9115 unit.



Connecting the Remote Office 9115 unit to the network

To connect the Remote Office 9115 unit to the network, complete the following procedure:



WARNING

Risk of equipment damage

To prevent damage to the Remote Office 9115 unit, ensure that the power source to the unit is turned off until you complete all connections.

- 1 If you want to route calls over the IP network, or administer the Remote Office 9115 unit using the IP network, add the unit to your Ethernet network by making the following connections:
 - a. Connect one end of the Ethernet cable to the ETHERNET connector on the Remote Office 9115 unit.
 - b. Connect the other end to either an Ethernet hub or a network router.
- 2 Connect the Remote Office 9115 unit to the power source as follows:
 - a. Connect the appropriate plug on the power transformer to the power connector on the Remote Office 9115 unit.
 - b. Plug the power connector into an uninterruptible power supply (UPS) or wall outlet.
- 3 Connect the Remote Office 9115 unit to the digital telephone as follows:
 - a. Connect one plug of the telephone cable supplied with the Remote Office 9115 unit to the jack marked DIGITAL PHONE on the rear panel of the Remote Office 9115 unit.
 - b. Plug the other end of this cable to the jack on the digital telephone.
- 4 Connect the Remote Office 9115 unit to the telephone line as follows:
 - a. Connect one end of the telephone cable that you supplied to the jack marked ANALOG LINE on the rear panel of the Remote Office 9115 unit.
 - b. Connect the other end of this cable to a telephone wall jack leading to the PSTN (if using an analog connection only), or the data modem if it provides analog line functionality and if using an IP network and analog connection.

Powering up the Remote Office 9115 unit

As soon as you connect the Remote Office 9115 unit to the power source, the unit begins to power up.

During power-up, the Remote Office 9115 unit performs a self-test. The power LED flashes three times to verify all critical functionality, including:

- RAM memory test
- flash checksum validation

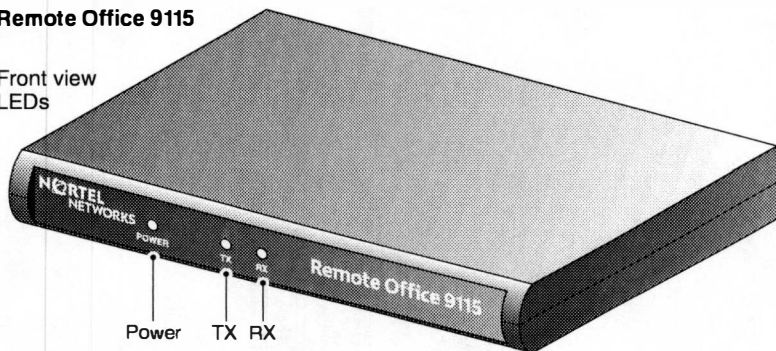
If the Remote Office 9115 unit completes a successful self-test, the telephone display shows one of the following messages:

- A time and date, if connected to a PBX.
- **HOSTLESS MODE**, if not connected to a PBX.

Note: The ETHERNET TX and RX LEDs flash only in response to transmit and receive activity.

Remote Office 9115

Front view
LEDs



G101489

Chapter 4

Configuring the 911x unit using the telephone menu

In this chapter

Before you begin	66
Running the telephone menu script	69

Before you begin

To complete initial configuration of the Remote Office 911x series unit, you must use the telephone menu. After initial configuration, you can use Configuration Manager for changes, administration, and firmware upgrades. For a more detailed description of Configuration Manager, refer to the *Reach Line Card Installation and Administration Guide* (NTP 555-8421-210).

Note: You cannot access the telephone menu and Configuration Manager at the same time. You must use one or the other. If you want to use Configuration Manager to configure the Remote Office 911x series unit, refer to Chapter 5, “Changing configuration settings using Configuration Manager”.

Information you need to know before configuring

Before you start configuring the Remote Office 911x series unit, you should have the following information available:

- the unit ID for the Remote Office 911x series unit
- a local emergency number, such as 911
- the online and offline SPRE codes
- the registration and deregistration SPRE codes
- an IP address, including subnet mask and the IP address of the IP Gateway, if applicable

The network administrator can provide the above information to the end-user by filling out and delivering the Telephone Menu - Configuration Values form in Appendix A, “Planning forms”.

Accessing the telephone menu

You can access the telephone menu by quickly pressing the **Release** key four times within a three second time span. Refer to “Running the telephone menu script” on page 69.

Telephone menu key function

Key name	Key label	911x telephone menu key function
DIGIT	1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 0	user name/password entry, numeric entry
ALPHA	2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9	user name/password entry
YES	1	request menu, enable feature
NO	2	skip menu, disable feature
RELEASE	Rls, R, Goodbye (depending on your telephone set)	enter configuration mode, return to previous menu, exit system
ENTER	Hold	accept selection, move to next menu prompt
PERIOD	*	period (.), delimiter for IP addresses
BACKSPACE	#	backspace with delete

Backing up while in the telephone menu

If, at any time while working with the telephone set menu, you make a mistake, you can return to the previous level in the menu system by pressing the **Release** (Rls, R, or Goodbye depending on your telephone set) key once.

Exiting the system using the Release key

To exit the system at any time using the release key, complete the following procedure:

- 1 Press the **Release** key to move up in the menu one level at a time until you reach the top level.

Note: The **Confirm Exit?** message indicates that you have reached the top level of the menu.

- 2 The telephone display asks you to confirm your request to exit the configuration menu, similar to the following:

Confirm Exit?
[1-Yes 2-No]

IF you wish to	THEN do the following:
----------------	------------------------

continue working,	a. Press 2.
-------------------	-------------

	b. Press the Hold key.
--	-------------------------------

Result: The telephone display continues, as though you had entered a "No" response to the most recent option you had on the menu.

stop working ¹ with the telephone menu,	a. Press 1.
--	-------------

	b. Press the Hold key.
--	-------------------------------

Result: The following screen confirms that you have left Remote Office configuration.

You are logged out.

Note: If you exit the system without saving any changes you have made, your changes will stay in active memory until the next system restart/reboot. After this, your changes are lost.

Running the telephone menu script

After installing and powering up the Remote Office 911x series unit, complete the following procedure:

- 1 Press the release key four times within three seconds to access the telephone menu.

Result: The telephone display prompts you for a user name, similar to the following:

Enter User Name

Press the Rls key to exit.

- 2 Enter the digits **48378 (GUEST)** and then press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display prompts you for a password, similar to the following:

Enter Password

Press the Rls key to exit.

- 3 Enter the digits **48378123 (GUEST123)**, the default password, or the current password if you have customized the password and then press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display asks if you want to display shows:

Display Local IP?

[1-Yes 2-No]

IF you want to THEN do the following:

display read-only
IP parameters,

- a. Press 1.
- b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display shows the remote site's current IP address, similar to the following:

IP Address
192.168.142.102

- c. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display shows the remote site's current IP subnet mask, similar to the following:

IP Subnet Mask
255.255.255.0

- d. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display shows the remote site's current IP gateway, similar to the following:

IP Gateway
192.168.142.254

- e. Press the **Hold** key.
- f. Proceed to step 4 on page 71.

not display IP
parameters,

- a. Press 2.
 - b. Press the **Hold** key.
-

- 4 The telephone display asks if you want to restore default values, similar to the following:

Restore Default Values?

[1-Yes 2-No]

IF you want to	THEN do the following:
----------------	------------------------

retain current configuration settings for this Remote Office 911x series unit,

- Press **2**.
- Press the **Hold** key.
- Proceed to step 5 on page 72.

revert Remote Office 911x series unit configuration settings to their factory-set default values,

- Press **1**.
- Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display asks you to confirm your decision, similar to the following:

Confirm?

[1-Yes 2- No]

- Press **1** to confirm your decision, or press **2** to retain current settings.
 - Press the **Hold** key.
-

- 5 The telephone display asks if you want to modify the unit ID of the Remote Office 911x series unit, similar to the following:

Modify Unit ID?

[1-Yes 2-No]

IF you want to	THEN do the following:
----------------	------------------------

modify the Unit ID of the Remote Office 911x series unit,	
---	--

- | | |
|--|--|
| | a. Press 1 .
b. Press the Hold key. |
|--|--|

Result: The telephone display prompts you for the new Unit ID and displays the current Unit ID, similar to the following:

Enter Unit ID of 911x

1

- | | |
|--|--|
| | c. Press the digit(s) of the new Unit ID.
d. Press the Hold key.
e. Proceed to step 6 on page 73. |
|--|--|

retain current Unit ID of the Remote Office 911x series unit,	
---	--

- | | |
|--|--|
| | a. Press 2 .
b. Press the Hold key. |
|--|--|

- 6 The telephone display asks if you want to modify the Remote Office 911x series unit's setting for the difference in the time at the local site and the remote site, similar to the following:

Modify Time Offset?

[1-Yes 2 - No]

Note: The Remote Office 911x series unit derives the time on its telephone display from the time maintained by the host PBX. The *time offset* is the number of minutes that the Remote Office 911x series unit must add to, or subtract from the host-site time (to account for different time zones, for example) to calculate the remote-site time.

IF you want to THEN do the following:

modify the
Remote Office
911x series unit's
current time offset
between the host
site and the remote
site,

- a. Press **1**.
- b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display prompts you to indicate if the time at the remote site is later or earlier than the time at the host site, similar to the following:

Enter Sign [1-Add 2-Sub]

- c. Press **1** if the time at the remote site is later than the time at the host site. This is the case when the remote site is located east of the host site.
- d. Press **2** if the time at the remote site is earlier than the time at the host site. This is the case when the remote site is located west of the host site.
- e. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display prompts you for the number of minutes in the time offset. The telephone display also shows the current time offset, similar to the following:

Enter Offset in Minutes

0

- f. Enter the number of minutes of the time offset. For example, if the time offset is 2 hours, press **1**, **2**, and **0** (for 120 minutes).
- g. Press the **Hold** key.
- h. Proceed to step 8 on page 75.

IF you want to THEN do the following:

retain the current time offset between the PBX at the host site and the Remote Office 911x series unit at the remote site,

- a. Press **2**.
- b. Press the **Hold** key.

-
- 7 The telephone display asks if you want to modify the emergency code, similar to the following:

Modify Emergency Code?
[1-Yes 2-No]

IF you want to THEN do the following:

modify the current setting for the number that you must dial to obtain a local trunk using Remote Office 911x series line keys not configured as local calling keys,

- a. Press **1**.
- b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display prompts you for a new emergency code. The telephone display also shows the current emergency code, similar to the following:

Enter Emergency Code
911

- c. Press the digit(s) of the new emergency code.
- d. Press the **Hold** key.
- e. Proceed to step 8 on page 75.

retain the current emergency code,

- a. Press **2**.
 - b. Press the **Hold** key.
-

- 8 The telephone display asks if you want to modify the SPRE code that you must dial to go online manually, similar to the following:

Modify Online SPRE?

[1-Yes 2-No]

IF you want to	THEN do the following:
----------------	------------------------

modify the number that you must dial to go online with the Remote Office 911x series unit in the absence of an online command in the Online/Offline Table,

- Press 1.
- Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display prompts you for a new online SPRE code. The telephone display also shows the current online SPRE code, similar to the following:

Enter Online SPRE
#99

- Press the digits of the new online SPRE code.

Note: All SPRE codes begin with a pound sign (#). It is not necessary to press the # key when modifying a SPRE code. However, when you actually use a SPRE code, you *must* press the # key for the host PBX to recognize the digits as a SPRE code.

- Press the **Hold** key.
- Proceed to step 9 on page 76.

retain the current online SPRE code,

- Press 2.
 - Press the **Hold** key.
-

- 9 The telephone display asks if you want to modify the SPRE code that you must dial to go offline manually, similar to the following:

Modify Offline SPRE?

[1-Yes 2-No]

IF you want to	THEN do the following:
-----------------------	-------------------------------

modify the number that you must dial to go offline with the Remote Office 911x series unit in the absence of an offline command in the Online/Offline Table,

a. Press **1**.

b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display prompts you for a new offline SPRE code. The telephone display also shows the current offline SPRE code, similar to the following:

Enter Offline SPRE
#98

c. Press the digits of the new offline SPRE code.

Note: Refer to the Note on page 75 for information on pound signs (#) in SPRE codes.

d. Press the **Hold** key.

e. Proceed to step 10 on page 77.

retain the current offline SPRE code,

a. Press **2**.

b. Press the **Hold** key.

- 10 The telephone display asks if you want to modify the SPRE code that you must dial to register for, or begin a work session, the registration SPRE code, similar to the following:

Modify Reg. SPRE?

[1-Yes 2-No]

IF you want to	THEN do the following:
----------------	------------------------

modify the number that you must dial to begin a work session (in an ACD environment, for example),

- a. Press **1**.
- b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display prompts you for a new registration SPRE code. The telephone display also shows the current registration SPRE code, similar to the following:

Enter Reg. SPRE Code
#97

- c. Press the digits of the new registration SPRE code.
Note: Refer to the Note on page 75 for information on pound signs (#) in SPRE codes.
- d. Press the **Hold** key.
- e. Proceed to step 11 on page 78.

retain the current registration SPRE code,

- a. Press **2**.
 - b. Press the **Hold** key.
-

- 11 The telephone display asks if you want to modify the SPRE code that you must dial to deregister from, or end a work session, the Deregistration SPRE code, similar to the following:

Modify Dereg. SPRE?

[1-Yes 2-No]

IF you want to	THEN do the following:
-----------------------	-------------------------------

modify the number that you must dial to end a work session (in an ACD environment, for example),

a. Press **1**.

b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display prompts you to enter a new deregistration SPRE code. The telephone display also shows the current deregistration SPRE code, similar to the following:

Enter Dereg. SPRE Code

#96

c. Press the digits of the new deregistration SPRE code.

Note: Refer to the Note on page 75 for information on pound signs (#) in SPRE codes.

d. Press the **Hold** key.

e. Proceed to step 12 on page 79.

retain the current deregistration SPRE code,

a. Press **2**.

b. Press the **Hold** key.

- 12 The telephone display asks if you want to modify the IP parameters, similar to the following:

Modify IP Parameters?

[1-Yes 2-No]

IF you want to THEN do the following:

retain the current
IP parameters
configured for this
Remote Office
911x series unit,

- a. Press 2.
- b. Press the **Hold** key.
- c. Proceed to step 13 on page 82.

modify the IP
parameters
configured for this
Remote Office
911x series unit,

- a. Press 1.
- b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display asks if you want to enable Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP), similar to the following:

Enable DHCP?

[1-Yes 2-No]

allow a DHCP
server to
dynamically
assign an IP
address to this
Remote Office
911x series unit
each time
someone logs on
with this unit,

- a. Press 1.
- b. Press the **Hold** key.
- c. Proceed to Enable DiffServ? [1-Yes 2-No] on page 81.

Note: Refer to the *Reach Line Card Installation and Administration Guide* (NTP 555-8421-210) for more information on DiffServ Codepoint and 802.1p mapping.

IF you want to	THEN do the following:
manually enter static IP information for this Remote Office 911x series unit,	a. Press 2. b. Press the Hold key. Result: The telephone display prompts you for the Remote Office 911x series unit's new, permanent IP address. The telephone display also shows the current setting, similar to the following: Enter IP Address 0.0.0.0 c. Press the digits of the Remote Office 911x series unit's permanent IP address. Use the * key for the address delimiter. (Refer to the table on page 67.) d. Press the Hold key. Result: The telephone display prompts you for the Remote Office 911x series unit's new, permanent IP subnet mask. The telephone display also shows the current setting, similar to the following: Enter IP Subnet Mask 255.0.0.0 e. Press the digits of the Remote Office 911x series unit's permanent IP subnet mask. f. Press the Hold key. Result: The telephone display asks if you want to modify the Remote Office 911x series unit's IP gateway, similar to the following: Modify IP Gateway? [1-Yes 2-No]

Note: Assigning static IP addressing to a Remote Office 911x series unit allows you to use the address information to identify the unit on the IP network. This makes the unit more accessible for online administration and maintenance.

IF you want to	THEN do the following:
manually enter static IP information for this Remote Office 911x series unit, (continued)	g. Press 2 and proceed to Enable DiffServ? [1-Yes 2-No], below, to leave the Remote Office 911x series unit's IP gateway as it is. Press 1 to modify the Remote Office 911x series unit's IP gateway. h. Press the Hold key. Result: The telephone display prompts you for the Remote Office 911x series unit's new, permanent IP gateway. The telephone display also shows the current setting, similar to the following: Enter IP Gateway 0.0.0.0 i. Press the digits of the Remote Office 911x series unit's permanent IP gateway. Use the * key for the IP address delimiter. (Refer to the table on page 67.) j. Press the Hold key. Result: The telephone display asks if you want to enable DiffServ, similar to the following: Enable DiffServ? [1-Yes 2-No]
enable prioritizing of voice packets in the IP header (DiffServ),	a. Press 1. b. Press the Hold key. c. Proceed to Enable 802.1p Mapping? [1-Yes 2-No] on page 81. Note: Refer to the <i>Reach Line Card Installation and Administration Guide</i> for information on DiffServ Codepoint and 802.1p mapping.
not enable prioritizing of voice packets in the IP header,	a. Press 2. b. Press the Hold key. Result: The telephone display asks if you want to enable 802.1p mapping, similar to the following: Enable 802.1p Mapping? [1-Yes 2-No]

IF you want to	THEN do the following:
----------------	------------------------

enable prioritizing of voice packets in the IEEE Media Access Control layer (802.1p),	a. Press 1. b. Press the Hold key. c. Proceed to step 13, below.
---	---

not enable prioritizing of voice packets in the IEEE Media Access Control layer,	a. Press 2. b. Press the Hold key.
--	--

- 13** The telephone display asks if you want to modify RLC Parameters, similar to the following:

Modify RLC Parameters?
[1-Yes 2-No]

IF you want to	THEN do the following:
----------------	------------------------

retain the current RLC settings,	a. Press 2. b. Press the Hold key. c. Proceed to step 18 on page 92.
----------------------------------	---

IF you want to THEN do the following:

modify the current a. Press **1**.

RLC settings,
(continued)

b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display prompts you to enter the RLC port number that you want to process this Remote Office 911x series unit's traffic. The telephone display also shows the RLC port number currently configured to handle this traffic, similar to the following:

Enter Port # of RLC

7

c. Press the digit(s) of the new port number.

d. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display prompts you to enter the security level that you want to assign to this Remote Office 911x series unit. The telephone display also shows the current security level, similar to the following:

Enter Security Level

1

allow unrestricted
access to the
Remote Office
911x series unit
and the RLC,

a. Press **1** to select No security.

b. Press the **Hold** key.

c. Proceed to Enable IP? [1-Yes 2-No] on page 84.

IF you want to THEN do the following:

restrict access to the Remote Office 911x series unit according to a ten digit security code maintained by the security ID of the qualified callers,

a. Press **2** to select Provisioned Security.

b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display prompts you for the RLC's Inbound Security ID, similar to the following:

Inbound Security ID

c. Enter the Remote Office 911x series unit's 10-digit inbound security ID.

d. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display prompts you for the RLC's outbound security ID, similar to the following:

Outbound Security ID

e. Enter the Remote Office 911x series unit's 10-digit outbound security ID.

f. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display asks if you want to enable the IP connection to the RLC from this Remote Office 911x series unit, similar to the following:

Enable IP?

[1-Yes 2-No]

IF you want to THEN do the following:

enable IP
connection to the
RLC from this
Remote Office
911x series unit,

a. Press **1**.

b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display prompts you to enter an IP address for the RLC and shows the current value it has for this address, similar to the following:

Enter RLC IP Address
192.68.243.254

c. Press the digits of the new RLC IP address.

d. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display prompts you for the IP Signaling setting for this Remote Office 911x series unit and displays the current setting, similar to the following:

IP Signaling
1-Permanent 2-OnDemand:2

e. Choose from the options presented.

f. Press the **Hold** key.

g. Proceed to step 14 **Enable PSTN to RLC?** [1-Yes 2-No], below.

disable IP
connection to the
RLC from this
Remote Office
911x series unit,

a. Press **2**.

b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display asks if you want to enable PSTN calling to this Remote Office 911x series unit, similar to the following:

Enable PSTN to RLC?
[1-Yes 2-No]

IF you want to THEN do the following:

enable PSTN
connection to the
RLC from this
Remote Office
911x series unit,

- a. Press 1.
- b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display asks you to enter a PSTN Number for the RLC and shows the current setting for this number (NC = not configured), similar to the following:

Enter RLC PSTN Number
NC

- c. Press the digits of the new PSTN number.
- d. Press the **Hold** key.
- e. Proceed to step 14 on page 86.

disable PSTN
connection to the
RLC from this
Remote Office
911x series unit,

- a. Press 2.
 - b. Press the **Hold** key.
-

- 14** The telephone display asks if you want to modify the local calling settings on this Remote Office 911x series unit, similar to the following:

Modify Local Calling?
[1-Yes 2-No]

IF you want to THEN do the following:

retain the current
settings that
dictate the way
this Remote
Office 911x series
unit places PSTN
calls that are not
controlled by the
host PBX,

- a. Press 2.
- b. Press the **Hold** key.
- c. Proceed to step on page 88.

IF you want to THEN do the following:

change settings that dictate the way this Remote Office 911x series unit places PSTN calls that are not controlled by the host PBX,

- a. Press 1.
- b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display asks if you want to enable this Remote Office 911x series unit to place calls without involving the host PBX, similar to the following:

Enable Local Calling?
[1-Yes 2-No]

not enable this Remote Office 911x series unit to place calls that are not controlled by the host PBX,

- a. Press 2.
- b. Press the **Hold** key.
- c. Proceed to step on page 88.

enable this Remote Office 911x series unit to place calls that are not controlled by the host PBX,

- a. Press 1.
- b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display asks if you want to enable Auto-hold, similar to the following:

Enable Auto-Hold?
[1-Yes 2-No]

enable users of this Remote Office 911x series unit to put an active call on hold without pressing the Hold key by pressing the Local calling key to answer a local call,

- a. Press 1.
- b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display prompts you for the key position of the Local calling key. The telephone display also shows the current key position for the Local calling key, similar to the following:

Enter Key Position
5

- c. Press the digit of the new Local calling key position.
- d. Press the **Hold** key.

IF you want to THEN do the following:

modify the DN of the Local calling key (to replace the value obtained through DN Discovery)

a. The telephone display prompts you for the DN of the Local calling key. The telephone display also shows the current Local DN on this Remote Office 911x series unit, similar to the following:

Enter Local DN
3000

b. Press the digits of the new Local DN.

c. Press the **Hold** key.

d. Proceed to step on page 88.

not enable users of this Remote Office 911x series unit to put an active call on hold without pressing the Hold key by pressing the Local calling key to answer a local call,

a. Press **2**.

b. Press the **Hold** key.

-
- 15** The telephone display asks if you want to modify the current analog localization setting for this Remote Office 911x series unit, similar to the following:

Modify Localization?
[1-Yes 2-No]

IF you want to THEN do the following:

modify the line
characteristics of
PSTN
connections in
your particular
location,

- a. Press **1**.
- b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display asks you to enter the analog localization setting. The telephone display also shows the current setting, similar to the following:

Analog Localization
0-FCC 1-CTR21 2-Custom1

- c. Choose from the options presented.
- d. Press the **Hold** key.
- e. Proceed to step on page 89.

retain the current
localization
settings for this
Remote Office
911x series unit,

- a. Press **2**.
 - b. Press the **Hold** key.
-

- 16** The telephone display asks if you want to modify the current modem tones setting for this Remote Office 911x series unit, similar to the following:

Modify Modem Tones?
[1-Yes 2-No]

IF you want to	THEN do the following:
hear audible modem tones produced when the modem makes its dial up connection,	- Press 1. - Press the Hold key. Result: The telephone display prompts you to enable or disable modem tones, similar to the following: Play Modem Tones 1-Enable 2-Disable - Choose from the options presented. - Press the Hold key. - Proceed to step 18 on page 92.
not hear the modem tones	- Press 2. - Press the Hold key.

- 17 The telephone display asks if you want to configure the type of telephone set attached to this Remote Office 911x series unit, similar to the following:

Configure Set Type?
[1-Yes 2-No]

IF you want to THEN do the following:

modify the
current telephone
set type
configuration for
this Remote
Office 911x series
unit,

- a. Press **1**.
b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display asks what type of telephone set is connected to the Remote Office 911x series unit, similar to the following:

Is this a M2006?
[1-Yes 2-No]

- c. If the telephone display does not show the model of your telephone set, press **2**.
d. Press the **Hold** key.

Note: The telephone display repeats this question until it receives an affirmative answer with the following set types: M2008, M2216, M2616, M2616CT, M3310, M3820, M3902, M3903, M3904, M3905, or OTHER. Choose OTHER if you are using a Nortel Networks digital telephone set with a display that is not included in the preceding list.

- e. When the telephone display shows the model of your telephone set, press **1** and the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display asks you to confirm your identification of your telephone set type, similar to the following:

Are you sure?
M2616?-[1-Yes 2-No]

IF you want to THEN do the following:

- | | |
|--|---|
| modify the
current telephone
set type
configuration for
this Remote
Office 911x series
unit, (continued) | f. If this is not the correct model number of your
telephone set, press 2 and return to step e, above.

g. If this is the correct model number of your telephone
set, press 1 .

h. Press the Hold key.

i. Proceed to step 18, below. |
| not modify the
current telephone
set type
configuration for
this Remote
Office 911x series
unit, | a. Press 1 .

b. Press the Hold key. |
-

- 18** The telephone display asks if you want to save the configuration you have just entered, similar to the following:

Save Configuration?
[1-Yes 2-No]

IF you want to THEN do the following:

- | | |
|--|--|
| discard your most
recent
configuration
changes, | a. Press 2 .

b. Press the Hold key.

Result: The telephone display asks if you want to
reboot the Remote Office 911x series unit, similar to
the following:

Reboot Unit?
[1-Yes 2-No]

c. Proceed to step 19 on page 93. |
|--|--|

IF you want to THEN do the following:

retain your most recent configuration changes,

- a. Press **1**.
- b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display asks you to confirm your instruction to overwrite current configuration settings with your latest configuration changes, similar to the following:

Confirm?
[1-Yes 2-No]

revert to the previous configuration settings,

- a. Press **2**.
- b. Proceed to step 19, below.

keep your most recent configuration changes as system settings,

- a. Press **1**.
 - b. Proceed to step 19, below.
-

Note: Do not interrupt the power to the Remote Office 911x series unit during the save process.

- 19** The telephone display asks if you want to reboot the Remote Office 911x series unit, similar to the following:

Reboot Unit?
[1-Yes 2-No]

IF you want to THEN do the following:

not reboot the Remote Office 911x series unit,

- a. Press **2**.
- b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: Return to Display Local IP? [1-Yes 2-No] on page 69.

IF you want to THEN do the following:

reboot the Remote a. Press 1.

Office 911x series
unit,

Result: Press the **Hold** key.

The telephone display asks if you want to shut the system down or restart the system, similar to the following:

0-Shut Down 1-Restart

restart the Remote a. Press 1.

Office 911x series
unit,

b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display asks you to confirm your decision to restart the system, similar to the following:

Confirm?

[1-Yes 2-No]

abort your
instruction to
restart the Remote
Office 911x series
unit,

a. Press 2.

b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: Return to Display Local IP? [1-Yes 2-No] on page 69.

IF you want to	THEN do the following:
confirm your instruction to restart the Remote Office 911x series unit,	a. Press 1 to restart the Remote Office 911x series unit. b. Press the Hold key. Result: The telephone display informs you that it is restarting the system, similar to the following: Restarting the System Please Wait... c. When the system restarts, the telephone display returns to its normal state, showing the time and date, similar to the following: JAN 01 12:13 P d. If the telephone is connected to a PBX, it is ready to send and receive telephone calls as normal. e. If the telephone is not connected to a PBX, the telephone display shows a message similar to the following: HOSTLESS MODE
shut down the Remote Office 911x series unit, thereby disabling all functionality on the unit,	a. Press 0. b. Press the Hold key. Result: The telephone display asks you to confirm your instruction to shut down the Remote Office 911x series unit, similar to the following: Confirm? [1-Yes 2-No] Note: Only choose the shut down option when you have physical access to the remote unit. You must be able to disconnect then reconnect power to the Remote Office 911x series unit to be able to access the unit again.

IF you want to	THEN do the following:
abort your instruction to shut down the Remote Office 911x series unit,	a. Press 2. b. Press the Hold key. Result: Return to Display Local IP? [1-Yes 2-No] on page 69.
confirm your instruction to shut down the Remote Office 911x series unit,	a. Press 1. b. Press the Hold key. Result: The telephone display prompts you to turn off the Remote Office 911x series unit, similar to the following: Please remove System Power

Chapter 5

Changing configuration settings using Configuration Manager

In this chapter

Before you begin	98
Remote Office 911x series unit system configuration	99
IP configuration	104
RLC connection configuration	107

Before you begin

This section describes the configuration settings that apply to Remote Office 911x series units. If you need remote serial access to Configuration Manager, use a remote management software application.

Note: Nortel Networks recommends that you use the telephone menu set to perform the initial configuration for the Remote Office 911x series unit. Refer to Chapter 4, “Configuring the 911x unit using the telephone menu.” Once configured, you can then use the Configuration Manager for changes, administration, and firmware upgrades. For a more detailed description of Configuration Manager, refer to the *Reach Line Card Installation and Administration Guide* (NTP 555-8421-210).

Remote Office 911x series unit system configuration

This section describes the settings that apply to the Remote Office 911x series unit system.

Getting there 911x → Configuration Manager → 911x System Configuration

Remote Office 911x series unit System Configuration property sheet

SYSTEM CONFIGURATION			
Unit ID	1	Node Name	911x
DSP Gain	0 dB		
Time Offset	0	Emergency Activation Code	911
SPRE Codes			
Online	Offline	Registration	DeRegistration
# 99	# 99	# 97	# 96
Local Call			
Status	☐ Enable ☒ Disable	Local Calling Key Position	13
		Autohold	☒ Enable ☐ Disable
Local DH	12	Analog Localization	FCC
Phone Type	M2616	Modem Tones	☐ Enable ☒ Disable
		Add on Module Type	Not Configured
OK Default Send Retrieve Help			

Configuring the system settings

To configure the system settings, complete the following procedure:

- 1 Complete the fields as described in the "Remote Office 911x System Configuration field descriptions", on page 101.
- 2 Click on the **OK** button to save the information in the temporary work file.
- 3 Click on the **Send** button to update the Remote Office 911x series unit with the new information.

IF you are**THEN**

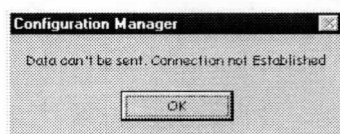
logged on to the Remote Office 911x series unit,

the changes are written into the Remote Office 911x series unit's buffer.

To save the changes in flash memory, choose Upload/Download › Save to Flash from the Menu Bar.

not logged on to the Remote Office 911x series unit,

the Confirmation Manager dialog box displays, similar to the following:



Do one of the following:

- a. Log on to the Remote Office 911x series unit and then click on the **Send** button.
 - b. Save the changes to a file on your administration PC using the File → Save As command.
-

Remote Office 911x System Configuration field descriptions

Field	Description
Unit ID	Assign a number between 1 and 20 to the Remote Office 911x series unit that you are configuring. This number: ■ must be different from numbers assigned to other units connected to the same RLC ■ must be consistent with the configuration on the RLC for this unit ID
Node Name	Enter your site name. The node name identifies this Remote Office 911x series unit in the remote network.
DSP Gain	Select the number of decibels (dB) that you want to add to, or subtract from, the strength of the incoming signal before the DSP processes it. Valid options are: 9, 6, 3, 0, -3, -6, -9, -12, and -15. Note: Change this setting at the remote site to address a problem with signal strength at the host site.
Time Offset	Click on the up or down arrows to change the time zone difference from the host PBX. Note: The time can be changed in 15-minute intervals only.
Emergency Activation Code	If you are using the PSTN to route calls, then enter the number your community dials to reach an emergency service. If you are using only the IP network to route calls, leave this field blank.

Field	Description
SPRE Codes: Online	Enter the SPRE code (maximum seven digits) that is used to place your site into online mode, or accept the default. The default is #99. Note: The SPRE code is automatically prefixed with the pound sign. This means users must dial # before the SPRE code when going into online mode.
SPRE Codes: Offline	Enter the SPRE code (maximum seven digits) that is used to put your site into offline mode, or accept the default code. The default is #98. Note: The SPRE code is automatically prefixed with the pound sign. This means users must dial # before the SPRE code when going into offline mode.
SPRE Codes: Registration	Enter the SPRE code (maximum seven digits) that engages the user's telephone with a multi-user or dynamic port, or accept the default code. The default is #97. Note: The SPRE code is automatically prefixed with a pound sign (#). This means users must dial # before the SPRE code when registering for a port.
SPRE Codes: DeRegistration	Enter the SPRE code (maximum seven digits) that disengages the user from a multi-user or dynamic port, or accept the default code. The default is #96. Note: The SPRE code is automatically prefixed with a pound (#) sign. This means users must dial # before the SPRE code when disengaging from a port.
Local Call: Status	Click on the Enable option button, if you want to place local calls over the PSTN. Click on the Disable option button, if you do not want to place local calls over the PSTN.

Field	Description
Local Call: Local Calling Key Position	Select the key you want to use for the local call key. Be sure that the key you choose as the Local Calling Key at the remote site does not conflict with PBX key assignments.
Local Call: Autohold	Click on the Enable option button if you want to be able to switch between local and remote calling keys without losing an active call. Click on the Disable option button if you want to disconnect active calls when you access another call without pressing the Hold key first.
Local DN	Enter the DN of the local calling key.
Analog Localization	Select one of three options from the drop down list box to modify the localization setting for this unit. Valid options: FCC, CTR21, and Custom.
Modem Tones	Click on the Enable option button to activate modem tones on the telephone. Click on the Disable option button to deactivate modem tones If you are using only the IP network to route calls, leave this field blank.
Phone Type	Select the type of digital telephone that the Remote Office 911x series unit attaches to, using the drop down list box. Valid options are: M2008, M2216, M2616, M2616CT, M3310, M3820, M3902, M3903, M3904, M3905, and OTHER.
Addon Module Type	Select the type of addon module attached to the Remote Office 911x series unit's telephone, if the telephone is an M3904 or M3905 telephone. Valid options are: DBA, KBA, and Not Configured.

IP configuration

This section explains how to change the IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway for the Remote Office 911x series unit.

Getting there 911x → Configuration Manager → IP Configuration

IP Configuration property sheet

The screenshot shows the 'IP CONFIGURATION' dialog box. It has a title bar and a main area with the following elements:

- Automatic DHCP Configuration:** A group box containing two radio buttons:
• ☒ Obtain IP Address from Server
• ☐ Configure IP Address
- IP Address:** Four text boxes for entering the IP address (e.g., 192, 168, 1, 1).
- IP Network Mask:** Four text boxes for entering the network mask (e.g., 255, 255, 255, 0).
- IP Gateway:** Four text boxes for entering the default gateway (e.g., 192, 168, 1, 1).
- DiffServ CodePoint:** Two radio buttons:
• ☐ Enable
• ☒ Disable
- QoS Ip Mapping:** Two radio buttons:
• ☐ Enable
• ☒ Disable

At the bottom of the dialog box, there are five buttons: **OK**, **Default**, **Send**, **Retrieve**, and **Help**.

Configuring IP information

To change the IP information, complete the following procedure:

- 1 Complete the fields of the IP Configuration property sheet as described in "IP Configuration field descriptions", on page 106.
- 2 Click on the **OK** button to save the information in the temporary work file.
- 3 Click on the **Send** button to update the Remote Office 911x series unit with the new information.

IF you are**THEN**

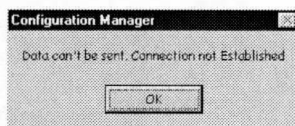
logged on to the Remote Office 911x series unit,

the changes are written into the Remote Office 911x series unit's buffer.

To save the changes in flash memory, choose Upload/Download › Save to Flash from the Menu Bar.

not logged on to the Remote Office 911x series unit,

the Configuration Manager dialog box displays, similar to the following:



Do one of the following:

- a. Log on to the Remote Office 911x series unit, then click on the **Send** button again.
- b. Save the changes to a file on your administration PC.

-
- 4 Restart the Remote Office 911x series unit.

Note: To restart a Remote Office 911x series unit, use the procedure found under "Restarting the system", on page 170.

IP Configuration field descriptions

Field	Description
Automatic DHCP Configuration	■ Click on the Obtain IP Address from Server option button to allow the Remote Office 911x series unit to use an IP address dynamically assigned by a DHCP server on the IP network. Result: Configuration Manager disables the IP Address, IP Network Mask, and IP Gateway fields. ■ Click on the Configure IP Address option button to manually configure a static IP address for the Remote Office 911x series unit. Result: Configuration Manager enables the IP Address, IP Network Mask, and IP Gateway fields.
Address Information—IP Address, IP Network Mask, IP Gateway	If you clicked on the Configure IP Address option button, enter the IP address, IP network mask, and IP gateway in the appropriate fields.
DiffServ CodePoint	■ Click on the Enable option button if you want to allow DiffServ prioritizing in the IP header. ■ Click on the Disable option button if you do not want to allow DiffServ prioritizing.
802.1p Mapping	■ Click on the Enable option button, if you want to allow 802.1p prioritizing in the IEEE Media Access Control layer. ■ Click on the Disable option button, if you do not want to allow 802.1p prioritizing.

RLC connection configuration

This section shows you how to change the RLC connection information needed by the Remote Office 911x series unit to establish connections with the RLC on the host PBX.

Getting there 911x → Configuration Manager → RLC Connection Configuration

RLC Connection Configuration property sheet

RLC CONNECTION CONFIGURATION

Unit ID:

RLC Port Number:

IP Connection: ☐ Enable ☒ Disable

IP Address:

IP Signaling: ☒ On Demand ☐ On Demand

PSTN Connection: ☐ Enable ☒ Disable

PSTN Number to Connect to RLC:

Security Level:

Security Id:

Configuring the RLC connection information

To change the RLC connection information, complete the following procedure:

- 1 Complete the fields of the RLC Connection property sheet as described in "RLC Connection configuration field descriptions" on page 109.
- 2 Click on the **OK** button to save the information in the temporary work file.
- 3 Click on the **Send** button to update the Remote Office 911x series unit with the new information.

IF you are**THEN**

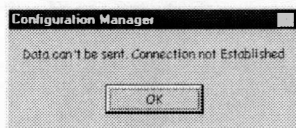
logged on to the Remote Office 911x series unit,

the changes are written into the Remote Office 911x series unit's buffer.

To save the changes in flash memory, choose Upload/Download › Save to Flash.

not logged on to the Remote Office 911x series unit,

the Configuration Manager dialog box displays, similar to the following:



Do one of the following:

- a. Log on to the Remote Office 911x series unit, then click on the **Send** button again.
 - b. Save the changes to a file on your administration PC.
-

RLC Connection configuration field descriptions

Field	Description
Unit ID	The RLC's non-configurable unit ID of 254.
RLC Port Number	Enter the RLC voice port number designated for the Remote Office 911x series unit on the RLC Remote connection configuration property sheet.
IP Connection	Click on the Enable option button, if you want to route calls over your IP network. Click on the Disable option button, if you do not want to route calls over your IP network.
IP Connection: IP Address	Enter the RLC's IP address. The Remote Office 911x series unit uses this IP address to connect to the RLC over the IP network.
IP Connection: IP Signaling	Click on the Permanent option button to configure this port's IP connection to be up at all times. Click on the On Demand option button to configure this port's IP connection to be up only when needed. Refer to "Deployment", on page 42 for help in determining which setting to configure.
PSTN Connection	Click on the Enable option button, if you want to route calls over PSTN. Click on the Disable option button, if you do not want to route calls over PSTN.

Field	Description
PSTN Connection: PSTN Number to Connect to RLC	If you enabled the PSTN connection, enter the telephone number used to connect to the RLC. The telephone number can contain the following digits and characters: 0 through 9, #, *, comma (,), period (.), and dash (-). ■ caller ID separator: "." (period) ■ caller ID separator and 1/2 second delay: "," (comma) ■ null separator: "-" (dash)
Security Level	Select No Security from the drop down list box if you do not want the RLC to perform a security check. Select Provision ID from the drop down list box to require the RLC to perform a security check every time a user tries to log on to a remote unit. This action enables the Security ID fields.
Security ID: Outbound Security ID	Enter the 10-digit Remote Office 911x series unit security identifier.
Security ID: Inbound Security ID	Enter the 10-digit RLC security identifier.

Chapter 6

Using the digital telephone

In this chapter

Modes of operation	112
Placing and receiving calls	115
Indicator updates	118
Display messages	120
Telephone features operation	122
Going online and offline	125

Modes of operation

Digital telephones at your Remote Office 911x series unit site can operate in the following modes:

- host-controlled
- locally controlled
- online to host PBX
- offline from host PBX

Host-controlled mode

Host-controlled mode means that the host PBX controls the following:

- some display messages that appear on your telephone
- indicator updates such as the message waiting indicator
- calls that you receive from or place to someone at the host PBX site

In host-controlled mode, a voice path is established to the host PBX and signaling messages are passed between the host PBX and the Remote Office 911x series unit.

Locally controlled mode

Locally controlled mode means that calls are placed or received through your local telephone service provider.

Relationship between host-controlled and locally controlled modes

Both the host-controlled and locally controlled modes can be used at the same time. When placing or receiving calls, the call modes are controlled by the following telephone keys:

- host calling key (also known as the *primary DN* key)
- local calling key (may sometimes be referred to as the *secondary DN* key)

Host calling key

The host calling key is the main key used to place and receive calls. For example, if someone from Finance at the Head Office calls you, the call rings on this key. Similarly, if you need to call someone in Payroll at the Head Office, you place the call using this key.

Local calling key

The local calling key is the key used to place and receive local calls. For example, you use this key if you want to call one of your local customers. Your telephone has one local calling key.

Note: Ensure that the local calling key is not configured on the host PBX. Local configurations override host PBX settings for the same key.

Online mode

When in online mode, calls initiated on the host calling key are directed through the host PBX. The display on your digital telephone set shows **Online Mode**.

Offline mode

When in offline mode, you cannot place or receive calls through the host PBX over either the PSTN or IP network. You can only place or receive calls through your local telephone service provider if your station has been granted locally controlled call capability. The display on all digital telephone sets show **Offline Mode**.

Why offline mode is important

Your organization is concerned about telephone costs and, as such, wants to ensure that the PSTN line at your site is used for host-controlled calls during business hours only. This is especially important when the PSTN connection between the host PBX and your site is defined as *permanent* (always on) rather than *on demand*. A permanent PSTN connection means the line remains active all the time and incurs charges unless it is put into offline mode.

What controls the online and offline modes

The online and offline modes can be controlled by one or both of the following:

- online/offline schedule configured for your site on the RLC at the host PBX
- special prefix (SPRE) codes configured on the Remote Office 911x series unit at your site

For more information, refer to “SPRE Codes: Online” on page 102 and “SPRE Codes: Offline” on page 102.

Placing and receiving calls

The way that you place outgoing calls depends on the calling key that you use.
The calling key that you receive calls on depends upon where the call originates.

Receiving incoming calls

A Remote Office 911x series unit receives incoming calls according to the following conditions:

- When the remote unit is offline, you can receive locally controlled incoming calls.
- When the remote unit is configured as IP-only at the RLC and the PSTN is disabled in the RLC detail configuration, you can receive locally controlled incoming calls.
- When both PSTN and IP modes are configured with permanent allocation, you cannot receive locally controlled calls.

Refer to “Priority” in the *Reach Line Card Installation and Administration Guide* (NTP 555-8421-210) for more information.

Refer to “Deployment” on page 42 for more information.

Note: If an incoming call is not answered within a specified number of rings, the RLC transfers the call to a bridge port. The RLC then places a call through the host PBX to a DN defined for the user. This DN may be assigned the user’s voice mail, or may be a redirection to another DN.

Methods for placing outgoing calls

You can place an outbound call from a Remote Office 911x series unit station in one of the following ways:

- method 1: Lift the telephone handset.

This method automatically initiates a host-controlled call.

Note: If you then press the local calling key, the call moves to locally controlled mode, and the host PBX connection is released.

- method 2: Press a calling key.

Pressing a host calling key initiates a host-controlled call. Pressing the local calling key, initiates a locally controlled call.

Placing a host-controlled call

To place a host-controlled call, complete the following procedure:

- 1 Lift the telephone handset or press the host calling key.

Result: You hear a dial tone over a connection with the host PBX.

Note: If a connection to the host PBX cannot be established within a time-out period or no resources are available to carry the call, you hear a reorder dial tone (fast busy signal), and one of the following messages appears on the telephone display:

- Release and Try Again
- Bandwidth Limit
- DSP Limit

Bandwidth limit indicates that there was not enough bandwidth available in the system to complete the requested task.

DSP limit indicates that there were not enough available DSP resources in the system to complete the requested task.

- 2 Dial the number of the party you want to call.

Result: The host PBX receives and processes the dialed digits, and rings the called party.

Placing an outgoing locally controlled call

To place an outgoing locally controlled call, complete the following procedure:

- 1 Lift the telephone handset, then press the local calling key.

Result: A connection is established with the central office and you hear a dial tone.

- 2 Dial the number of the party you want to call.

Result: Your local telephone service provider receives and processes the dialed digits, and rings the called party.

To call another station at your site—locally controlled mode

If your site is equipped with multiple Remote Office 911x series units and you want to use the local calling key to place the call, dial the PSTN number (seven digits) of the person you want to call.

To call another station at your site—host-controlled mode

Station-to-station calls should be attempted through the host PBX to allow all stations configured as multiple appearance DN (MADNs) to ring and provide access to voice mail, if the call is not answered.

If a connection cannot be established through the host PBX, you can use the local calling key to place the station-to-station call.

- 1 Lift the telephone handset or press the host calling key.

Result: A connection is established with the host PBX and you hear a dial tone. The indicator beside the host calling key lights up.

- 2 Dial the extension of the party you wish to reach.

Result: The host PBX receives and processes the dialed digits, and rings the station as well as any other stations that include the dialed DN as an MADN key.

Note: The MADN stations could be located at another site (such as the host PBX site). If the call is answered by a MADN station at another site, a voice path to the host PBX is established and the call proceeds.

Indicator updates

Digital telephone indicators reflect the current status of the telephone. For example, they identify when calls are waiting, active, on hold, or (if your office has voice mail) that messages are waiting.

The host PBX updates indicators when a connection between the host PBX and Remote Office 911x series unit is active.

Host-controlled indicator updates

The host PBX automatically updates indicators for host-controlled features each time any of the following occur:

- the host PBX receives an incoming call from your site
- the host PBX processes an outgoing call from your site
- the host PBX sends a message waiting indicator (MWI) update

Note: When online with a permanent connection to the host PBX, a remote site receives constant telephone indicator updates.

Locally controlled indicator updates

The Remote Office 911x series unit updates the following indicators (that is, these indicator updates are locally controlled):

- host and local calling key indicators
The indicator lights up when you lift the handset, or when you press the line key.
Note: The Remote Office 911x series unit passes key presses and the on- or off-hook status for the host calling key to the host PBX.
- handsfree
- mute

PSTN line usage and the local calling indicator

The following two instances of PSTN line usage cause the local calling indicator to remain lit solid:

- a remote call on the PSTN line
When there is a remote call on the local calling (PSTN) key, the local calling indicator stays lit, indicating that the line is active.
- a signaling connection over the PSTN line
When the RLC at the host site and the Remote Office 911x series unit at the remote site exchange information. This information, or signaling, travels over the PSTN line. When this happens, the local calling indicator stays lit, indicating that the line is active.

Display messages

This section describes the messages that can appear on your digital telephone display.

Message descriptions

Message	Description
Going Offline in 30 Secs	This message warns you that all digital telephones at this site are about to go offline in the number of seconds indicated. If any calls are active, they disconnect when the offline mode activates. To override, enter the online SPRE code.
Going Offline in 20 Secs	
Going Offline in 10 Secs	
Hostless Mode	The connection to the host PBX cannot be established. The host PBX may be temporarily unavailable. You can still place local calls by using the local calling key. Note: If Hostless Mode persists, contact your system administrator.
Logged In	If this message appears on your station, your station participates in a multi-user or dynamic pool port on the RLC. Your station is logged on. Note: This message only displays for approximately 10 seconds.

Message	Description
Offline Mode	This means you cannot place calls through the host PBX. Notes: ■ If you need to place a call through the host PBX while in offline mode, enter the online SPRE code. Refer to "SPRE Codes: Online" on page 102 for further details. ■ The Offline Mode message is not persistent on the M3903 telephone display. This message sometimes does not appear for the entire Offline period.
Online Mode	This means you can place and receive calls through the host PBX.
Port Already in Use	If this message appears on your station, your station participates in a multi-user or dynamic pool port on the RLC. This message appears if the port that you are attempting to log on to is already being used by someone else.
Port Not Logged In	If this message appears on your station, your station participates in a multi-user or dynamic pool port on the RLC. Your station is logged off.
Release and Try Again	There are not enough DSP resources to process the call. Try again at a later time. Note: Ensure to initiate calls from the appropriate calling key according to the following parameters: ■ Use the host calling key to call someone at the host PBX site ■ Use the local calling key to place a local PSTN call or to call another station at your site.
Bandwidth Limit	There is not enough bandwidth to complete the requested action.
DSP Limit	There were not enough DSP resources to complete the requested action.

Telephone features operation

This section describes how to use the following digital telephone features in host-controlled modes:

- call forward
- call transfer
- call waiting
- conference
- emergency service calls
- hold

The conference, transfer, and call forward features are only supported for host-controlled calls.

Emergency service calls

The Remote Office 911x series unit allows you to program an emergency number (for example, 911). You can initiate an emergency service call with the programmed number on either the host calling key (primary DN key) or the local calling key.

If using the IP network to route calls, do not dial the emergency service number on a station connected to a Remote Office 911x series unit.

Hold

When you press the Hold key on a host-controlled call, the holding party receives the Hold treatment defined on the host PBX. For example, if the host PBX is configured to play music for the holding parties, then the holding party hears music. You can press the local calling key to place a new call.

When you are on a locally controlled call, you can automatically place that call on hold by pressing the host calling key. To do this, you must enable the Auto Hold feature on your station. Refer to “Local Call: Autohold” on page 103 for further details. If Auto Hold is not enabled, and you press the local calling key while a host-controlled call is active, that call is disconnected.

When you press the Hold key on a locally controlled call, the holding party hears silence. Since Remote Office 911x series units have only one local calling key, you cannot place another locally controlled call while the first call is on Hold. However, when you place a locally controlled call on Hold, you can still place a host-controlled call.

Call Waiting

Since the Remote Office 911x series unit does not use host-controlled indicators and the locally controlled indicators are not defined on the host PBX, there are never any indicator conflicts when a call is presented to the station.

However, since the host PBX is not aware when locally controlled calls are active, the host PBX may try to present a call and ring your station while you are busy with a locally controlled call. The Remote Office 911x series unit always checks the status of your station before ringing it. If your station is busy with a call, the alert tone is sounded instead. For host-controlled calls routed over PSTN ensure that call waiting is disabled at the CO. If a call comes in when the remote unit has a call in a QoS transitioning situation, the incoming call waiting signal disrupts the connection. The call waiting signal drops the transitioned PSTN call.

How Call Waiting works in host-controlled mode

If you are busy with a host-controlled call, incoming calls are handled as follows:

- An incoming host-controlled call is directed to the call waiting key by the host PBX.
- An incoming locally controlled call flashes the local calling key indicator and sounds the alert tone.

How Call Waiting works in locally controlled mode

If you are busy with a locally controlled call, an incoming host-controlled call flashes the host calling key and sounds the alert tone.

- If you have enabled QoS Transitioning Technology, Nortel Networks recommends that you disable call waiting.
- Call waiting presents CLID and CPND information according to the options that your service provider offers and what you have subscribed to.

Call Transfer

A call on the host calling key can be transferred. You can complete an announced or unannounced (blind) transfer. Refer to your telephone manual for the proper procedures on completing an unannounced transfer.

If a host-controlled call is to be transferred to a remote trunk from a remote station (remote trunk access digit dialed), the following occurs:

- Dialed digits are used to place a remote trunk call, but are not forwarded to the host PBX.
- A voice path is established between the remote trunk and a bridge port on the host line card.
- The number dialed to the host for the new call is the DN of that bridge port.

To transfer a call, complete the following procedure:

- 1 Press the **Transfer** key.

Result: The active call is placed on hold and you hear dial tone.

- 2 Dial the number that you want to transfer the call to.

- 3 Press the **Transfer** key again to complete the transfer.

Note: You can press the Transfer key while the call is still ringing, or after the called party answers.

Conference

The Conference feature is supported for host-controlled calls only. You cannot conference in someone who must be called through the local PSTN.

Call Forward

Call forward is supported for host-controlled calls only. Your station might be programmed to forward all calls, forward calls when your station is busy, or forward calls when you do not answer.

Going online and offline

Your Remote Office 911x series unit site can operate in either online mode or offline mode. This is controlled by one or both of the following:

- SPRE codes to manually toggle between online and offline modes.
- An online/offline schedule on the host PBX to automatically toggle your site between online and offline modes.

For a description of the online and offline modes, refer to “Modes of operation” on page 112.

Using the SPRE code to place your unit in online mode

To use the SPRE code to place your unit in online mode, complete the following procedure:

- 1 Lift the telephone handset, or press the local calling key.
- 2 Press the pound (#) key followed by the online SPRE code.

Note: Contact your system administrator for the online SPRE code.

Result: The connection to the host PBX is initiated and negotiated with the host PBX. During this negotiation period (up to five seconds), you cannot place host-controlled calls. When negotiation is completed and connection to the host PBX has been established, Online Mode appears on the telephone display and the system is ready to place and receive host calls.

Using the SPRE code to place your unit in offline mode

To use the SPRE code to place your unit in offline mode, complete the following procedure:

- 1 Dial the pound (#) key followed by the offline SPRE code.

Note: Contact your system administrator for the online SPRE code.

Result: Offline Mode appears on the telephone display.

Overriding an automatic offline event from the host PBX

If the host PBX attempts to process an offline event while you are on a host-controlled call, you are alerted by both an audible alert and a display message indicating that you are about to go offline in 30, 20, or 10 seconds. If you ignore this warning, your call disconnects.

To prevent your call from being disconnected, enter the online SPRE code. You can do this without putting your call on hold first. The online SPRE code cancels the offline event, leaving your telephone online until the next offline event occurs.

On-Demand and Permanent Allocation to Remote Office 911x series units

Nortel Networks recommends that you do not enable the On-Demand feature when configuring a PSTN port to the Remote Office 911x series unit. Doing so can cause the following to occur:

- The Remote Office 911x series unit can activate voice-mail prematurely (after one or two rings).
- The incoming host-controlled caller hears ringback.

Note: Incoming locally controlled callers may hear a busy signal or modem tones. Do not advertise this number for local calls.

For more information about on-demand and permanent allocation, refer to “Deployment” on page 42.

Chapter 7

Administration

In this chapter

Changing the administration password	128
Creating a backup configuration file	130
Restoring the configuration	133
Display logs	138
Statistics screens	142
Verifying the firmware and software version	162
Obtaining the latest upgrade file	164
Extracting upgrade files from the download file	165
Performing a firmware upgrade	167
Restarting the system	170
Performing a software upgrade	171

Changing the administration password

Two layers of password security protect the Remote Office 911x series unit's configuration. If you want to secure the Remote Office 911x series unit's configuration, then change the following items:

- Configuration Manager password
This password prevents unauthorized users from performing offline configuration changes.
- Remote Office 911x series unit's password
This password prevents unauthorized users from performing online changes of the configuration residing in the Remote Office 911x series unit's flash memory.

Note: Make sure that you record the password and store it in a safe, secure location. If you forget or lose the password, contact your Nortel Networks customer support representative.

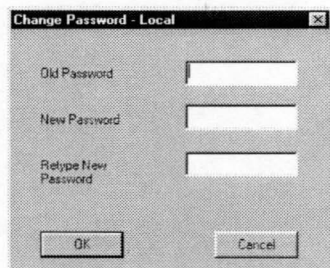
Getting there 911x → Configuration Manager

Changing the Configuration Manager password

To change the Configuration Manager password, complete the following procedure:

- 1 From the Menu Bar, choose Connect → Change Password → Local.

Result: The Change Password dialog displays, similar to the following:

A screenshot of a Windows-style dialog box titled "Change Password - Local". It contains three text input fields labeled "Old Password", "New Password", and "Retype New Password". At the bottom of the dialog are two buttons: "OK" and "Cancel".

- 2 Complete the fields in the Change Password - Local dialog box.
- 3 Click on the **OK** button.

Changing the Remote Office 911x series unit's password

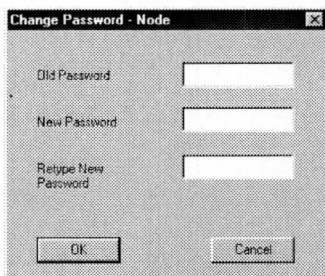
To change the Remote Office 911x series unit's password, complete the following procedure:

ATTENTION

Do not change the Remote Office 911x series unit's password until the system is up and working.

- 1 From the Menu Bar, choose Connect → Change Password → Node.

Result: The Change Password dialog box displays, similar to the following:



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Change Password - Node". It has a standard Windows-style title bar with a close button (X). Inside the dialog, there are three text input fields stacked vertically. The first field is labeled "Old Password", the second is labeled "New Password", and the third is labeled "Retype New Password". At the bottom of the dialog, there are two buttons: "OK" on the left and "Cancel" on the right.

- 2 Complete the fields in the Change Password - Node dialog box.
- 3 Click on the **OK** button.

Creating a backup configuration file

Create a backup copy of the Remote Office 911x series unit's configuration by downloading the configuration flash memory to a text file on your administration PC. Nortel Networks recommends that you create a backup of your configuration file whenever you make configuration changes or after you perform a firmware upgrade.

Storing backup configuration files

The Remote Office 911x series unit is an extension of the telecommunications and data network. It is extremely important that you keep a backup copy of the Remote Office 911x series unit's configuration. If the Remote Office 911x series unit's flash memory or configuration becomes corrupted or is lost, you can easily restore it.

Store the configuration file in a safe, secure location, such as on backup tape or other media that is stored offsite.

Nortel Networks recommends that you keep the backup files indefinitely.

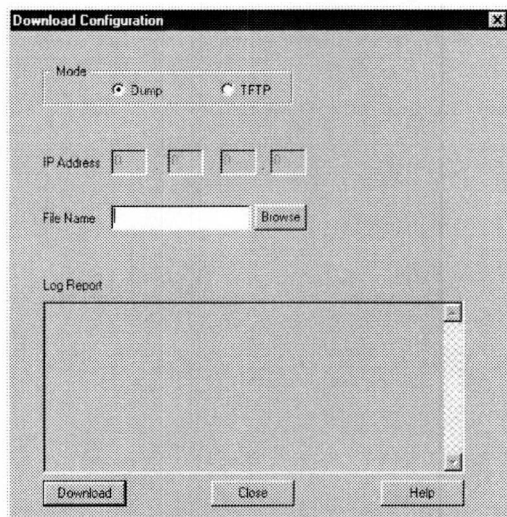
Getting there 911x → Configuration Manager

Creating the backup file

To create the backup file:

- 1 From the Menu Bar, choose Upload/Download → Download Config.

Result: The Download Configuration dialog box displays, similar to the following:



- 2 Choose the mode you want to use for the file transfer according to the following table:

IF you wish to save the configuration file to	THEN do the following:
the administration PC,	Click on the Dump option button.
a different location on the IP network,	1 Click on the TFTP option button. Result: This enables the IP Address fields. 2 Enter the IP address of the PC that you want to save the configuration file on.

- 3 Click on the **Browse** button and navigate to the folder where you want to keep the configuration text file.

- 4 Enter a name for the file in the File name field.

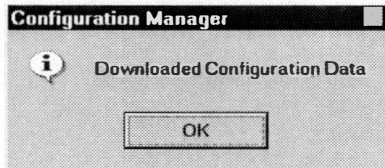
Note: This configuration file becomes your backup file, so ensure the file name is meaningful. The file name's extension must be .TXT.

- 5 Click on the **Download** button.

Result: The Download configuration dialog box closes, and the following message displays in the status bar at the bottom of the screen:

Downloading Config From Board

When the download is complete, the Downloaded Configuration Data dialog box displays, similar to the following:



- 6 Click on the **OK** button.

Restoring the configuration

Restore the Remote Office 911x series unit's configuration in flash memory by uploading a configuration text file from your administration PC.

Perform the upload over the IP network using the TFTP protocol. You must have a TFTP server application running on your administration PC. The TFTP server's base directory must point to the directory that contains the configuration file you want to upload.

Before you begin

Before you can upload the configuration file to the Remote Office 911x series unit, you must complete the following steps:

- 1 Start the TFTP server application.
- 2 Ensure the TFTP base directory points to the location of the configuration file.

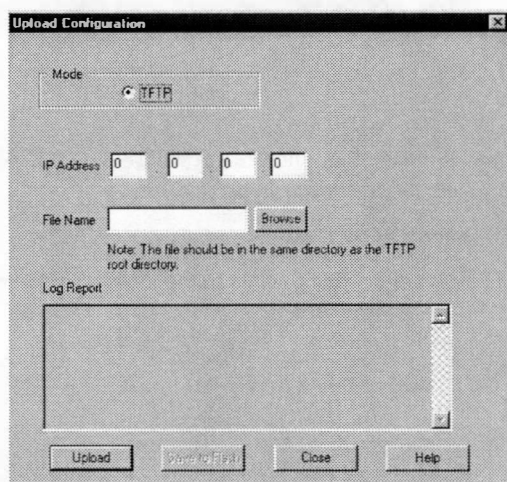
Getting there 911x → Configuration Manager

Uploading a configuration file over the IP network

To upload a configuration file over the IP network, complete the following procedure:

- 1 Navigate to the location of the configuration file.
- 2 From the Menu Bar, choose → Upload/Download → Upload Config.

Result: The Upload Configuration dialog box displays, similar to the following:



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Upload Configuration". It contains the following elements:

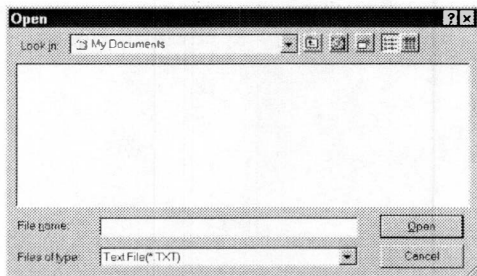
- Mode:** A radio button is selected next to "TFTP".
- IP Address:** Four input fields, each containing the digit "0".
- File Name:** A text input field followed by a "Browse" button.
- Note:** A text label stating "Note: The file should be in the same directory as the TFTP root directory."
- Log Report:** A large, empty text area with a vertical scrollbar on the right.
- Buttons:** At the bottom, there are four buttons: "Upload", "Download", "Close", and "Help".

- 3 Enter the IP address of the TFTP server in the IP Address fields.

Note: Since the TFTP server application is running on your administration PC, this is the IP address of that PC.

- 4 Click on the **Browse** button.

Result: The Open dialog box displays, similar to the following:

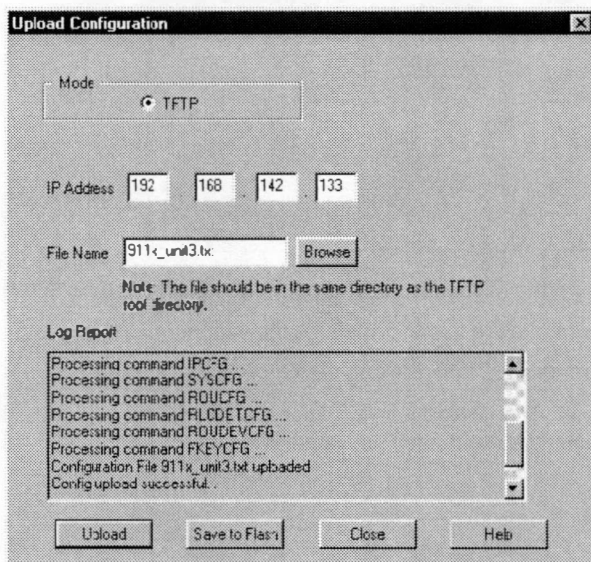


- 5 Ensure the Files of type list drop down box shows Text File (*.TXT)
- 6 Navigate to the folder containing the configuration file.
- 7 Select the file, then click on the **Open** button.

Result: The Upload Configuration dialog box displays with the file you selected shown in the File Name field.

- 8 Click on the **Upload** button.

Result: The middle of the Upload Configuration dialog box displays status messages relating to the upload. The following is an example.



CAUTION

Risk of incorrect operation due to partial configuration

Do not interrupt the configuration upload. If you interrupt the configuration upload, this results in an incomplete configuration in the Remote Office 911x series unit's database.

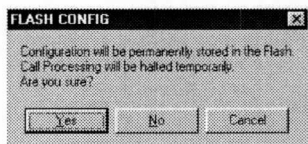
If the configuration upload is interrupted, repeat this procedure immediately.

IF the upload was	THEN
successful,	the following message displays: CONFIG UPLOAD SUCCESSFUL... USE SAVECFG TO UPDATE FLASH.
not successful,	the following message displays in the middle of the Upload Configuration dialog box: CONFIG UPLOAD FAILED For further instructions, refer to Chapter 8, "Troubleshooting".

Note: Do not ignore error messages in Save to Flash process. If Save to Flash fails, retry uploading and saving to Flash. If the problem persists, check the file being uploaded and report the problem to Nortel Networks.

- 9 From the Upload Configuration dialog box, click on the **Save to Flash** button.

Result: The FLASH CONFIG dialog box displays, similar to the following:



- 10 Click on the **Yes** button.

Result: The following message displays in the status bar at the bottom of the screen:

Saving to Flash in Progress

When the save is finished, the following message displays in the middle of the Upload Configuration dialog box:

CONFIGURATION IS UPDATED INTO FLASH...

- 11 Click on the **Close** button.
- 12 Restart the RLC.

Note: For instructions, refer to "Restarting the system" on page 170.

Display logs

The Remote Office 911x series unit keeps track of system performance through the maintenance of display logs. Each line, or display log, represents a separate action completed by the unit.

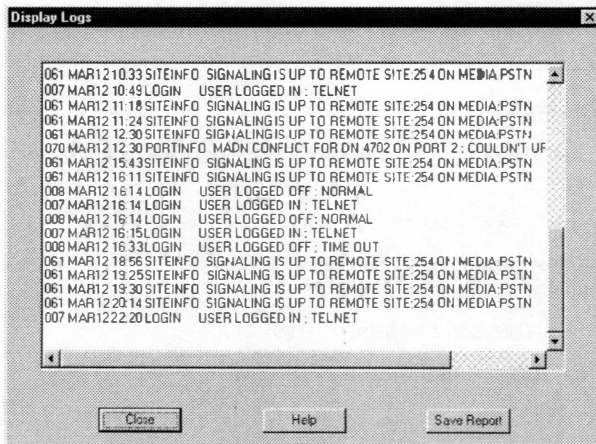
Use the display logs when troubleshooting system problems. Click on the **Save Report** button if you need to print the display logs to a text file. Refer to Configuration Manager Help for a complete listing of all display logs and the condition indicated by each.

Getting there 911x → Configuration Manager

Viewing display logs

From the Menu Bar, choose Alarms/Stats/Logs → Display Logs.

Result: The Remote Office 911x series unit lists the display logs it maintains in a window similar to the following. You can use the scroll bar to browse through the display logs.

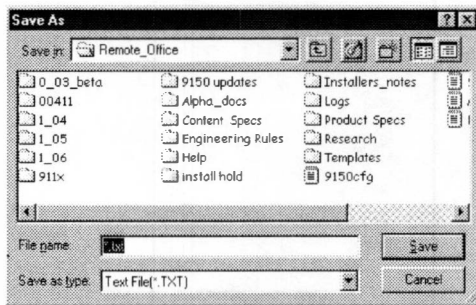


Printing the display logs to a file

If you request technical support, your support representative can ask you to provide a copy of the display logs. To recreate the log in a file on your administration PC, use the following procedure:

- 1 After listing the display logs using the procedure explained under "Viewing display logs" on page 138, click on the **Save Report** button on the Display Logs window.

Result: The Save As dialog box displays, similar to the following:



- 2 Enter a name for the configuration in the File name field.

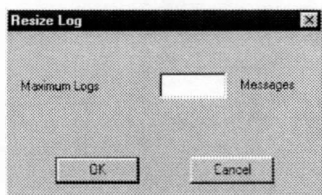
Result: Configuration Manager saves the display logs to a text file in the location indicated in the Save As dialog box.

Changing the number of display logs retained by the Remote Office 911x series unit

A Remote Office 911x series unit retains a maximum of 1000 display logs, each requiring one line of text. When the unit's display logs reach 1000 lines, new display logs overwrite existing display logs on a first in, first out basis. If you want to change the number of display logs retained by the Remote Office 911x series unit, complete the following procedure:

- 1 From the Menu Bar, choose Alarms/Stats/Logs → Resize Logs.

Result: The Resize Log dialog box displays, similar to the following:



Note: "Maximum logs" refers to the number of text lines, or messages, maintained by the Remote Office 911x series unit. The Remote Office 911x series unit currently retains a maximum of 1000 text lines.

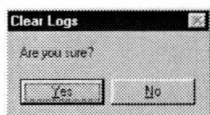
- 2 Enter the maximum number of text lines you want maintained by the Remote Office 911x series unit in the Maximum Logs field.
- 3 Click on the **OK** button.

Clear logs

The Remote Office 911x series unit allows you to delete unneeded information by clearing the display logs. To discard or clear display logs that are no longer useful, complete the following procedure:

- 1 From the Menu Bar, choose Alarms/Stats/Logs → Clear Logs.

Result: The CLEAR LOGS dialog box displays, similar to the following:



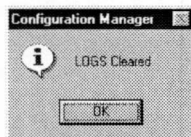
IF you select**THEN**

No,

the Clear logs dialog box closes and the retained display logs remain as they are.

Yes,

- the Remote Office 911x series unit deletes its stored display logs.
- the LOGS cleared dialog box displays, similar to the following:



Click on the **OK** button.

Statistics screens

All statistics screens provided by the Alarms/Stats/Logs menu, function primarily to help you obtain information to provide to technical support personnel, upon request.

Getting there 911x → Configuration Manager

Trunk Connection Statistics

Trunk Connection Statistics allow you to see the status of the active PSTN calls on the Remote Office 911x series unit. Use the Trunk Connection Statistics screen to determine if you need more trunk connections at your remote location.

[illegible]

Displaying the Trunk Connection Statistics screen

Choose Alarms/Stats/Logs → Trunk Connection Statistics from the Menu Bar to display the Bandwidth Connection Statistics screen.

Result: Configuration Manager gathers statistics from the Remote Office 911x series unit and displays the Bandwidth Connection Statistics screen, similar to the example on page 142.

IF you want to	THEN click
update the statistics with the latest information,	on the Refresh button.
create a text file containing these statistics,	on the Save to File button.
close the Trunk Connection Statistics screen,	on the Close button.
obtain descriptions of the statistics in the Trunk Connection Statistics screen,	on the Help button.

Trunk Connection Statistics field descriptions

The following table describes the statistics on the Trunk Connection Statistics screen:

Statistic	Description
Trunk Number	RLC - Identifies the Network Port number used for the call. The third pair of numbers (the third item in the triplet) corresponds to the port on the RLC. 9150 - Identifies the ISDN BRI module and B-channel used for the call. 911x - Identifies the only trunk available to the Remote Office 911x series unit with all zeroes.
Status	Identifies the current status of the trunk. Valid options are: Active and Idle.
Call Type	Identifies whether the call is a local call or a remote signaling call. Valid options are: Local and Signaling.
Remote ID	Identifies the remote unit involved in the call.
Called Number	Identifies the remote DN regardless of who initiated the call.
Start Time	Identifies the time that the call began.
Close Time	Identifies the time that the last call on this trunk ended. If the trunk is active, this statistic displays "NA".
Duration	Identifies the amount of time taken for the call.

Bandwidth Connection Statistics

Bandwidth Connection Statistics, similar to the following, allow you to see the amount of bandwidth that the logged-on Remote Office 911x series unit has available to it. Use the Bandwidth Connection Statistics to help you determine if you need to add more bandwidth on the PSTN or IP network connections.

[illegible]

To display the Bandwidth Connection Statistics screen, refer to “Displaying the Bandwidth Connection Statistics screen”, as follows. To obtain the definitions for the statistics presented on the Bandwidth Connection Statistics screen, refer to “Bandwidth Connection Statistics field descriptions” on page 147.

Displaying the Bandwidth Connection Statistics screen

Choose Alarms/Stats/Logs → BW Connection Statistics from the Menu Bar to display the Bandwidth Connection Statistics screen.

Result: Configuration Manager gathers statistics from the Remote Office 911x series unit and displays the Bandwidth Connection Statistics screen, similar to the example on page 145.

IF you want to	THEN click
update the statistics with the latest information,	on the Refresh button.
create a text file containing these statistics,	on the Save to File button.
close the Trunk Connection Statistics screen,	on the Close button.
obtain descriptions of the statistics in the Trunk Connection Statistics screen,	on the Help button.

Bandwidth Connection Statistics field descriptions

The following table describes the statistics on the Bandwidth Connection Statistics screen:

Statistic	Description
Remote Unit Number	Identifies the remote unit that initiated the call.
Signaling Status	Identifies whether a connection is up on this unit. Valid options are: Active and Idle.
No of Voice Calls on IP	Identifies the number of calls in progress on this unit's IP connection.
No of Voice Calls on PSTN	Identifies the number of calls in progress on this unit's PSTN connection.
Used IP BW	Identifies the IP bandwidth in use on this unit.
Used Trunk BW	Identifies the PSTN bandwidth in use on this unit.
Total Up Trunk BW	Identifies the total PSTN bandwidth up and available to this unit.
IP QoS Status	Identifies the quality of service level on this unit's IP connection. Valid options are: Good and Bad.

Caller Information Statistics

Caller Information (Info) Statistics, similar to the following, allow you to see the type of call being made (IP or PSTN) and how often QoS transitions occur. Use the Caller Information Statistics to help you determine if the bandwidth used by the logged-on Remote Office 911x series unit.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Caller Info Statistics". At the top right are standard Windows window controls (minimize, maximize, close). Below the title bar is a search field containing the number "7". The main area contains a table with the following columns: Connection ID, Remote ID, Current Media, Type, Priority, Call BW, Start Time, and Transitions to PSTN. A single row of data is visible:

Connection ID	Remote ID	Current Media	Type	Priority	Call BW	Start Time	Transitions to PSTN
7	254	IP	SIGNALING	IPO	16.00	07/25/2001 ...	0

Below the table is a horizontal scrollbar. At the bottom of the window are five buttons: Refresh, Save to File, Close, Reset, and Help.

To display the Caller Info Statistics screen, refer to “Displaying the Caller Info Statistics screen” on page 149. To obtain the definitions for the statistics presented on the Caller Info Statistics screen, refer to “Caller Info Statistics field descriptions” on page 150.

Displaying the Caller Info Statistics screen

Choose Alarms/Stats/Logs → Caller Info Statistics from the Menu Bar to display the Caller Info Statistics screen.

Result: Configuration Manager gathers the statistics from the Remote Office 911x series unit and displays the Caller Info Statistics screen, similar to the example on page 148:

IF you want to	THEN click
update the statistics with the latest information,	on the Refresh button.
create a text file containing these statistics,	on the Save to File button.
close the Trunk Connection Statistics screen,	on the Close button.
obtain descriptions of the statistics in the Trunk Connection Statistics screen,	on the Help button.

Caller Info Statistics field descriptions

The following table describes the statistics on the Caller Info Statistics screen:

Statistic	Description
Connection ID	Identifies the serial number of this call through the lifetime of the logged on unit.
Remote ID	Identifies the unit ID of the involved remote unit.
Current Media	Identifies whether the call took place over the PSTN or IP network.
Type	Identifies the type of call. Valid options are: Signaling, Voice, and Local.
Priority	Identifies the priority setting of the involved trunk. Valid options are: PSTN Only, IP Only, High, and Normal.
Call BW	Identifies the amount of bandwidth used by the call.
Start Time	Identifies the time that the connection initiated.
Transitions to PSTN	Identifies the number of times the RLC moved the call to the PSTN.
Transitions to IP	Identifies the number of times the RLC moved the call to the IP network.
Last Transition to PSTN	Identifies the last time the RLC moved the call from the IP network to the PSTN.
Last Transition to IP	Identifies the last time the RLC moved the call from the PSTN to the IP network.

Digital Signal Processor (DSP) Statistics

Digital Signal Processor (DSP) Statistics, similar to the following, show information about the DSP devices on the logged-in Remote Office 911x series unit. Use this screen to determine the type of DSP on the unit and the functionality and performance of that DSP.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "DSP Statistics". It contains a large table with the following headers:

Single Digit Device ID	Module Number	Device Number	In Service	Total MIPS	Available MIPS	Total Channels
0	0	0	IS	100	100	2

Below the table are several controls:

- A horizontal scrollbar at the bottom left of the table area.
- An empty rectangular input field.
- Five buttons arranged horizontally: "Refresh", "Save to File", "Close", "Print", and "Help".

To display the DSP Statistics screen, refer to “Displaying the DSP Statistics screen” on page 152. To obtain the definitions for the statistics presented on the DSP Statistics screen, refer to “DSP Statistics field descriptions” on page 153.

Displaying the DSP Statistics screen

Choose Alarms/Stats/Logs → DSP Statistics from the Menu Bar to display the DSP Statistics screen.

Result: Configuration Manager gathers statistics from the Remote Office 911x series unit and displays the DSP Statistics screen, similar to the example on page 151.

IF you want to	THEN click
update the statistics with the latest information,	on the Refresh button.
create a text file containing these statistics,	on the Save to File button.
close the Trunk Connection Statistics screen,	on the Close button.
obtain descriptions of the statistics in the Trunk Connection Statistics screen,	on the Help button.

DSP Statistics field descriptions

The following table describes the statistics on the DSP Statistics screen:

Statistic	Description
Single Digit Device ID	Identifies an internal sequence number for indexing this DSP device among all others on the RLC linked to the Remote Office 911x series unit.
Module Number	Identifies this DSP Application Module's module number on the RLC linked to the Remote Office 911x series unit. Valid options are: 0, 1, 2, 3, and 4.
Device Number	Identifies the DSP device that processed the call.
In Service	Identifies any voice channels operating on this DSP application module.
Total MIPS	Identifies the total millions of instructions per second (MIPS) capacity for this DSP device.
Available Mips	Identifies the millions of instructions per second (MIPS) currently available on this DSP device.
Total Channels	Identifies the total channel capacity for this DSP device.
Total Voice Channels	Identifies the total voice channel capacity for this DSP device.
Available Voice Channels	Identifies the number of unused voice channels on this DSP device.
Total Modem Channels	Identifies the number of channels on this DSP device that can transmit modem calls.

Statistic	Description
Available Modem Channels	Identifies the number of unused channels on this DSP that can transmit modem calls.
Total Flex Channels	Identifies the number of channels on this DSP that can provide multiple functionalities.
Available Flex Channels	Identifies the number of channels on this DSP currently available to provide multiple functionalities.
Total Tones Channels	Identifies the number of channels on this DSP that can transmit tones.
Total Reserved Channels	Identifies the number of special purpose channels on this DSP reserved for internal use.
Name	Identifies the name of the DSP load, that is, the combination of DSP algorithms, on the DSP module.

Ethernet Interface Statistics

Ethernet Interface Statistics, similar to the following, list information about the connection between the IP network and the Remote Office 911x series unit that is achieved over the unit's Ethernet interface.

[illegible]

To display the Ethernet Interface Statistics screen, refer to “Displaying the Ethernet Interface Statistics screen” on page 156. To obtain the definitions for the statistics presented on the Ethernet Interface Statistics screen, refer to “Ethernet Interface Statistics field descriptions” on page 157.

Displaying the Ethernet Interface Statistics screen

Choose Alarms/Stats/Logs → Ethernet Interface Statistics from the Menu Bar to display the Ethernet Interface Statistics screen.

Result: Configuration Manager gathers statistics from the Remote Office 911x series unit and displays the Ethernet Interface Statistics screen, similar to the example on page 155.

IF you want to	THEN click
update the statistics with the latest information,	on the Refresh button.
create a text file containing these statistics,	on the Save to File button.
close the Trunk Connection Statistics screen,	on the Close button.
obtain descriptions of the statistics in the Trunk Connection Statistics screen,	on the Help button.

Ethernet Interface Statistics field descriptions

The following table describes the statistics on the Ethernet Interface Statistics screen:

Statistic	Description
Channel	Identifies the Ethernet device that the statistics on that line apply to. Valid option is: 1
LAN Drv	Identifies the LAN driver used by the call.
Admin	Identifies the desired state of the port.
Oper	Identifies the actual state of the port.
IfcType	Identifies the interface type used by the call.
IfcNo	Identifies the Ethernet interface used by the call. Valid options are: 0 (ELAN) and 1 (CLAN).
MTUlen	Identifies the Maximum Transmission Unit for this interface.
Speed	Identifies the data rate of this interface.
In - Octet	Identifies the number of inbound bytes.
UPkts	Identifies the number of inbound packets sent only to this recipient.
MPkts	Identifies the number of inbound packets sent to multiple recipients.
Disc	Identifies the number of packets discarded by the interface.
Err	Identifies the number of error packets received by the interface.
Out - Octet	Identifies the number of outbound bytes.
UPkts	Identifies the number of outbound packets sent only to this recipient.

Statistic	Description
MPkts	Identifies the number of outbound packets sent to multiple recipients.
Disc	Identifies the number of outbound packets discarded by the interface due to resource problems.
Err	Identifies the number of outbound packets discarded due to errors.
QLen	Identifies the number of bytes in the interface's outbound queue.

Network Statistics

Network Statistics allow you to see the performance of the Remote Office 911x series unit in terms of the transmission and reception of frames and packets during the last 24 hours. Use this log to identify periods when other network activity can adversely affect Remote Office system performance.

Network Statistics

Remote Unit Number = 1

Hour	Tx Frames	Rx Frames	Rx Error	Rx Dropped	Error %	BroadCast Packet	Tx UCs/Pkt	Tx DiscPkt	F
0	0	0	0	0	0.00	0	173	0	
1	0	0	0	0	0.00	0	303	0	
2	0	0	0	0	0.00	0	222	0	
3	0	0	0	0	0.00	0	209	0	
4	0	0	0	0	0.00	0	217	0	
5	0	0	0	0	0.00	0	213	0	
6	0	0	0	0	0.00	0	214	0	
7	0	0	0	0	0.00	0	216	0	
8	0	0	0	0	0.00	0	220	0	
9	0	0	0	0	0.00	0	219	0	
10	0	0	0	0	0.00	0	219	0	
11	0	0	0	0	0.00	0	218	0	
12	0	0	0	0	0.00	0	436	0	
13	816	698	0	1	0.14	0	1086	0	
14	1459	1376	0	0	0.00	0	1857	0	
15	1068	2183	0	0	0.00	0	1976	0	
16	0	122	0	0	0.00	0	4674	0	
17	0	0	0	0	0.00	0	2706	0	
18	0	0	0	0	0.00	0	1849	0	
19	0	0	0	0	0.00	0	1750	0	
20	0	0	0	0	0.00	0	1225	0	

Refresh Close Help

To display the Network Statistics screen, refer to “Displaying the Network Statistics screen” on page 160. To obtain the definitions for the statistics presented on the Network Statistics screen, refer to “Network Statistics field descriptions” on page 161.

Displaying the Network Statistics screen

Choose Alarms/Stats/Logs → Network Statistics from the Menu Bar to display the Network Statistics screen.

Result: Configuration Manager gathers statistics from the Remote Office 911x series unit and displays the Network Statistics screen, similar to the example on page 159.

IF you want to	THEN click
update the statistics with the latest information,	on the Refresh button.
create a text file containing these statistics,	on the Save to File button.
close the Trunk Connection Statistics screen,	on the Close button.
obtain descriptions of the statistics in the Trunk Connection Statistics screen,	on the Help button.

Network Statistics field descriptions

The following table describes the information on the Network Statistics screen:

Statistic	Description
Hour	Identifies the hour that the statistics on that line apply to. These numbers refer to the most recent 24 hours, such that "1" refers to one hour ago, "2" refers to two hours ago, and so on.
Tx Frames	Identifies the number of frames transmitted in the given hour.
Rx Frames	Identifies the number of frames received in the given hour.
Rx Error	Identifies the number of frames received in the given hour with an error.
Rx Dropped	Identifies the number of received frames that the Remote Office system dropped in the given hour.
Error %	Identifies the percentage of frames received in the given hour with an error.
BroadCast Packet	Identifies the number of packets broadcast, or sent to all addresses on the network, by this unit in the given hour.
Tx UCastPkt	Identifies the number of packets unicast, or sent to one specific address, by this unit in the given hour.
Tx DiscPkt	Identifies the number of packets discarded by this unit in the given hour.
Rx MultiPkt	Identifies the number of packets received by this unit that were sent to multiple addresses in the given hour.
Rx UCastPkt	Identifies the number of packets received by this unit that were sent only to this unit in the given hour.
Rx DiscPkt	Identifies the number of received packets that were discarded by this unit in the given hour.

Verifying the firmware and software version

This section describes how to determine the version of firmware and software currently installed.

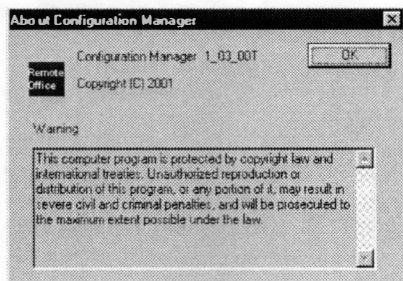
Before you perform a firmware or software upgrade, you should determine what version is currently installed. This ensures that you do not replace the installed firmware or software with an older version.

Verifying the software version

To verify the software version on your Remote Office 911x series unit, complete the following procedure:

- 1 From the Menu Bar, choose Help → About Configuration Manager.

Result: The About Configuration Manager dialog box displays, similar to the following:



- 2 Review the About Configuration Manager dialog box. This identifies the version of software installed on the unit.
- 3 Click on the **OK** button.

Verifying the firmware version

To verify the firmware version on your Remote Office 911x series unit, complete the following procedure:

- 1 From the Menu Bar, choose System Information → System Data.
- 2 The System Configuration Details dialog box displays, similar to the following:

System Configuration Details

Unit Id	2	Site Name	UNIT
Unit Type	911X	Unit Version	1_03_001.7 911X
Database Version	1.20	Date	MAR-22-2001
		Time	16:26
IP Address	192.168.143.102	Mac Address	00:50:07:00:12:04

Application Module Information

Successfully Read System Configuration Data

Close Help

- 3 Review the Unit Version box. This identifies the version of firmware installed on the unit.
- 4 Click on the **Close** button.

Determining the current firmware and software versions

To determine what the current firmware and software versions are, refer to the *Remote Office and RLC Release Notes* (NTP 555-8421-102).

Obtaining the latest upgrade file

If you need to upgrade the firmware or software, you can obtain the latest upgrade files by clicking on the Customer Support and Software Distribution links at the following website:

www.nortelnetworks.com

Nortel Networks provides upgrade files in self-extracting executable files. You must extract the upgrade files before you can perform the upgrade.

Types of upgrades

There are two types of upgrades that can be performed for your Remote Office 911x series unit:

1. Configuration Manager software upgrade

You use the Configuration Manager software to configure or administer the Remote Office 911x series unit.

2. Remote Office 911x series unit firmware upgrades

The firmware contains the code necessary for operating the Remote Office 911x series unit.

Downloading the upgrade file

To download the upgrade file, complete the following procedure:

- 1 With your web browser, connect to the Nortel Networks website at:
www.nortelnetworks.com/remotooffice
- 2 Click Software and Documentation Distribution Center.
- 3 Locate the software and firmware you need.
- 4 Download the files into a temporary location on your PC.
- 5 Double-click on the **.exe** file to extract the files into a temporary location on your PC.
- 6 Continue with "Extracting upgrade files from the download file" on page 165.

Extracting upgrade files from the download file

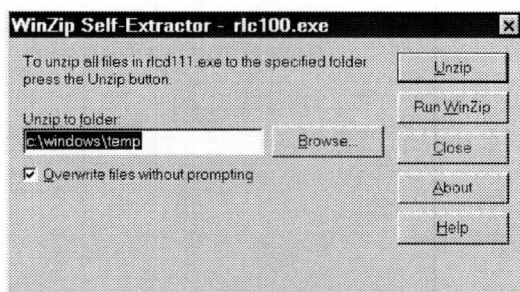
Before you perform an upgrade, ensure you have obtained the latest upgrade files from your Nortel Networks distributor. The upgrade files are enclosed in self-extracting executable files. You must extract the upgrade files before you can perform the upgrade.

Performing the extraction using Windows

To perform the extraction using Windows, complete the following procedure:

- 1 Navigate to the directory that contains the .exe file you received from Nortel Networks.
- 2 Double-click on the .exe file.

Result: The WinZip Self-Extractor dialog box displays, similar to the following:



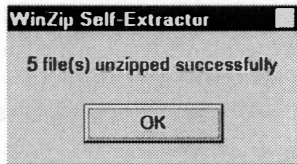
- 3 Review the information presented and make changes as necessary.

Notes:

- Nortel Networks recommends that you extract the files into a temporary directory.
- If you specify a directory that does not exist, the WinZip Self-Extractor creates it.

- 4 Click on the **Unzip** button.

Result: The file extraction begins. A status bar shows the extraction progress. When completed, an “unzipped successfully” message displays, similar to the following:



- 5 Click on the **OK** button.

Result: The WinZip Self-Extractor dialog box reappears.

- 6 Click on the **Close** button.

Performing a firmware upgrade

This section describes how to perform a firmware upgrade on your Remote Office 911x series unit. You perform the upgrade over the IP network using the TFTP protocol.

You must have a TFTP server application running on the administration PC. The TFTP server's base directory must point to the directory that contains the upgrade files.

When to perform a firmware upgrade

Perform a firmware upgrade if you have determined that you are using out-of-date firmware. For instructions on determining if you need to perform an upgrade, refer to "Verifying the firmware and software version" on page 162.

About firmware upgrades and configuration files

Each time you perform a firmware upgrade, the configuration database is also converted (if necessary) to a format that is compatible with the new firmware. Configuration settings are not affected by the conversion.

Nortel Networks recommends that, each time you perform a firmware upgrade, you create a backup copy of the converted configuration file, and store it in a safe secure location.

Before you begin

It is important to complete the procedures described under "Obtaining the latest upgrade file" on page 164 before performing a firmware upgrade. Then you must complete the following steps:

- 1 Start the TFTP server application.
- 2 Ensure the TFTP base directory reflects the directory where the firmware upgrade file you want to use resides.

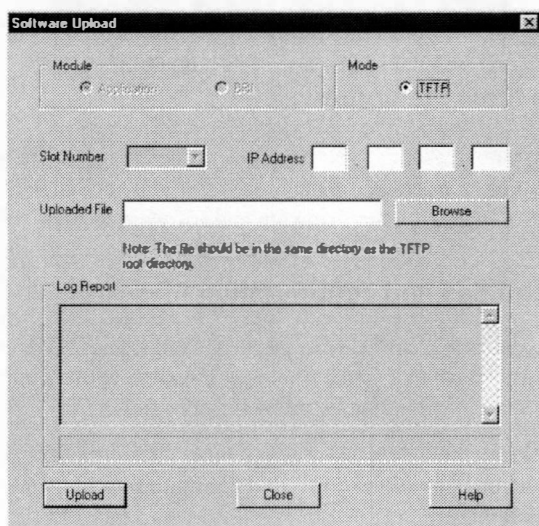
Getting there 911x → Configuration Manager

Upgrading the Remote Office 911x series unit firmware

To upgrade the Remote Office 911x series unit firmware, complete the following procedure:

- 1 From the Menu Bar, choose Upload/Download → Upload S/W.

Result: The Software Upload dialog box displays, similar to the following:



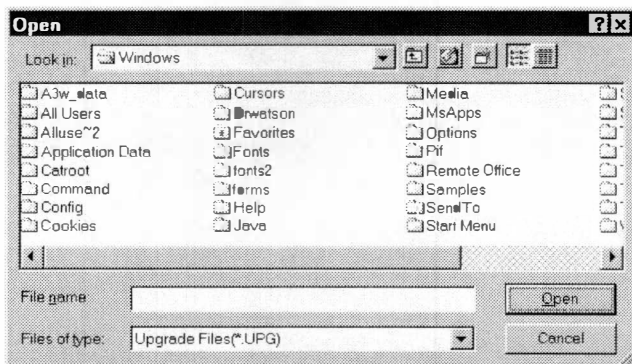
Note: In the Module section, the Application option button is the default selection.

- 2 Enter the IP address of the TFTP server into the IP Address fields.

Note: Since the TFTP server application is running on your administration PC, this is the IP address of the administration PC.

- 3 Click on the **Browse** button.

Result: The Open dialog box displays, similar to the following:



- 4 Ensure the Files of type drop down box shows Upgrade Files (*.UPG).
- 5 Navigate to the folder where the firmware file is located.
- 6 Select the file, and then click on the **Open** button.

Example: For Remote Office 911x series unit firmware, select 911X.upg, and click on the **Open** button.

Result: The Software Upload dialog box reappears. The file you selected is shown in the Uploaded File box.

- 7 Click on the **Upload** button.

Wait until the file uploads completely before entering any other commands. The Log Report window displays a confirmation message when the upgrade is completed.

Note: Configuration Manager prompts you to restart the Remote Office 911x series unit after upgrading the firmware. To do this, follow the procedure on page 170.

Restarting the system

After a firmware upgrade or a configuration change, it is often necessary to restart the Remote Office 911x series unit. Use the following procedure to restart the unit using Configuration Manager.

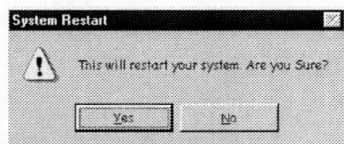
Note: After you restart the system, wait 7–10 seconds before placing a call.

Getting there 911x → Configuration Manager

To restart the unit

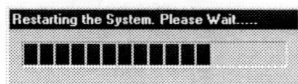
- 1 From the Menu Bar, choose Connect → System Reset → Restart.

Result: The System Restart dialog box displays, similar to the following:



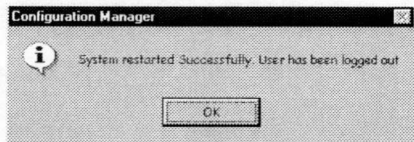
- 2 Click the **Yes** button.

Result: The Restarting the System. Please Wait.....progress bar displays indicating that Configuration Manager is restarting the system, similar to the following:



- 3 When the restart is complete, the system logs off the user.

Result: The Configuration Manager dialog box displays notifying you of the successful restart, similar to the following:



- 4 Configuration Manager then displays the User Authentication dialog box, so that you can resume Configuration Manager activities.

Performing a software upgrade

Perform a software upgrade if you have determined that you are using out-of-date software. For instructions on determining if you need to perform an upgrade, refer to “Verifying the firmware and software version” on page 162.

Upgrading the Configuration Manager software

To upgrade the Configuration Manager software, complete the following procedure:

- 1 Navigate to the directory that contains the upgrade files you extracted.
- 2 Double-click on the **setup.exe** file.
- 3 Follow the prompts on the screen.

ATTENTION

Do not ignore any warning messages that the InstallShield displays about versions of files (such as DLL files) that already exist on your PC. If you overwrite these files, you may inadvertently cause other applications on your PC to stop working.

Result: The InstallShield installs the software, overwriting the previous version.

Chapter 8

Troubleshooting

In this chapter

Before you begin	174
Remote Office 911x series unit LEDs	176
Digital telephone	177
Network connectivity	184
Software problems	187
Using Configuration Manager's PING	188
Recovering from a catastrophic failure	191
Repair and warranty information	192

Before you begin

The questions listed in this section can help you determine the proper course of action for addressing your problem.

Identifying why a problem occurred

If you experience problems in setting up or running your Remote Office 911x series unit, identify the problem first, using the table provided below.

Question	IF you answered	THEN do the following
Is this a new installation?	yes	1 Perform troubleshooting in the sequence presented in this chapter. 2 PING the unit to confirm that it is accessible on the network. Refer to “Using Configuration Manager’s PING,” on page 188.
	no	Answer the next question.
Did the Remote Office 911x series unit work, then suddenly stop working?	yes	Answer the next question.
	no	1 Perform troubleshooting in the sequence presented in this chapter. 2 PING the unit to confirm that it is accessible on the network. Refer to “Using Configuration Manager’s PING,” on page 188.

Question	IF you answered	THEN do the following
Did you modify the configuration or change any hardware components?	yes	1 Verify that changes were completed correctly. 2 Check the hardware components to ensure they are in working order. 3 Perform troubleshooting for the specific component.
	no	Contact your telecom or data network administrator. There may be a problem with the network.

Remote Office 911x series unit LEDs

During the Remote Office 911x series unit power-up cycle, watch the front panel of the Remote Office 9115 unit, or the rear panel of the digital telephone housing the Remote Office 9110 circuit card. The LEDs should behave as follows:

- The Power LED should light up and remain lit.
- The remaining LEDs flash whenever there is network activity.

If the LEDs do not display correctly:

- Ensure that the Remote Office 911x series unit is connected to a power source.
- If you are using an uninterruptible power supply (UPS), ensure the UPS is powered on.
- Verify that the AC power source is operational.

Digital telephone

This section identifies some problems that can occur on the digital telephone, and describes what to do to resolve them.

Symptom descriptions

If you are having trouble with digital telephones, perform troubleshooting as described in the following tables, according to whether this is a first-time installation.

Symptom	What to do
There is no dial tone when pressing either the host calling or local calling keys and this is a first-time installation	1 Ensure that the Remote Office 911x series unit completed its power-up cycle successfully. If it did, the Status LED remains lit. 2 Verify the connections between the telephone network and the Remote Office 911x series unit. 3 Use Configuration Manager to verify that the following configuration is correct on the Remote Office 911x series unit, as appropriate: ■ IP information (Remote Office 911x series unit's IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway, as well as the RLC's IP address, if using the IP network to route calls) ■ the telephone number used to establish connections to the RLC, if using the PSTN to route calls 4 Verify the security IDs of both the Remote Office 911x series unit and the RLC, if a security ID is required to authenticate connection attempts.

Symptom

There is no dial tone when pressing either the host calling or local calling keys and this is a first-time installation.

(continued)

What to do

- 5 Use Configuration Manager to verify that the following configuration is correct on the Remote Office 911x series unit, as appropriate:

- station configuration, to ensure that the telephone you are using has the calling capabilities needed to complete the tests (that is, verify that the station is correctly configured as local only, remote only, or both local and remote)

Note: For instructions on using Configuration Manager, refer to Chapter 5, “Changing configuration settings using Configuration Manager”.

- 6 Work with the administrator at the host PBX site to ensure the following:
- The RLC is enabled and working in its PBX slot (restart the RLC, if necessary).
 - The configuration of the IP address, telephone number, and security ID on the RLC port are correct (if these items are used).
 - Both the telecom and data networks are routing voice calls as expected (that is, calls are not being blocked in any way).
-

IF Symptom**THEN What to do**

There is no dial tone when pressing either the host calling or local calling keys.

- 1** If you are trying to place a host-controlled call, check the IP network to ensure the following:
 - The IP network is not down.
 - Traffic is being routed between the Remote Office 911x series unit and RLC on the host PBX.
- 2** If you are trying to place a host- or locally controlled call, ensure that the PSTN line is working. Ask your service provider to check this.
- 3** Contact your telecom administrator. There might be problems at the host PBX.

Lamps or indicators are not lit after completion of a Remote Office 911x series unit power cycle.

- 1** Check all cable connections to and from the Remote Office 911x series unit to ensure that they are all securely connected.
- 2** If this is a first-time installation, check the telephone connections.
- 3** Ensure the PSTN line is working. Ask your service provider to check this.
- 4** Check the IP network and ensure that:
 - it is not down
 - traffic is being routed between the Remote Office 911x series unit and RLC on the host PBX
- 5** PING the RLC from the Remote Office 911x series unit to verify IP network connectivity.

Lamps or indicators do not reflect the true status of the telephone.

It is possible that there is a synchronization error between the Remote Office 911x series unit and the host PBX. Contact your telecom network administrator.

IF Symptom

The display is blank (that is, the time and date are not displayed).

THEN What to do

- 1** Take the digital telephone handset off hook and dial the online SPRE code. The Remote Office 911x series unit attempts to connect to the host PBX. When the connection is established, the time and date appear.
- 2** Check the IP network and ensure that:
 - it is not down
 - traffic is being routed between the Remote Office 911x series unit and RLC on the host PBX
- 3** PING the RLC from the Remote Office 911x series unit to verify IP network connectivity.
- 4** Ensure the PSTN line is working. Ask your service provider to check this.
- 5** Restart the RLC, wait one minute, and then restart the Remote Office 911x series unit.
- 6** Ensure that the RLC is enabled in its host PBX slot.

In overlay 32 on the host PBX, check the status of the RLC, disable and enable it, or reseal it if necessary.
- 7** Contact your telecom administrator. There might be problems at the host PBX.

IF Symptom**THEN What to do**

There are noticeable gaps or poor quality when a voice call is active on the IP network.

Contact your network administrator to do the following:

- 1 Check the Quality of Service configuration on the RLC. Adjust the configuration, if required.
 - Lower the QoS threshold so that transition occurs earlier.
- 2 Conduct a traffic study on your voice and IP network traffic patterns as described in the *Remote Office Network Engineering Guidelines* (NTP 555-8421-103). (This NTP is available from your Nortel Networks distributor.) It is possible that your IP network capacity cannot accommodate the additional voice data, especially during High Day Busy Hour (HDBH) periods. Make adjustments to your network as required.

Incoming calls are not being received from the host PBX.

- 1 Ensure your telephone is not on call forward.
- 2 Ensure that the Remote Office 911x series unit is not in offline mode by entering the online SPRE code at a digital telephone.
- 3 Ensure that the Remote Office 911x series unit is powered up. It cannot receive calls from the host PBX if it is not powered up.
- 4 The network administrator should ensure the RLC is correctly configured with your Remote Office 911x series unit's IP address, telephone number, and security ID (if they are used).

IF Symptom	THEN What to do
Incoming calls are not being received from the host PBX. (continued)	5 Ensure that the PSTN line is working, if it is being used to route host-controlled calls. Ask your service provider to check this. 6 The network administrator should check the IP network (if it is being used) and ensure that: ■ it is not down ■ traffic is being routed between the Remote Office 911x series unit and RLC on the host PBX 7 The network administrator should PING the RLC from the Remote Office 911x series unit to verify IP network connectivity. 8 If the problem persists, contact your telecom administrator or Nortel Networks distributor.
Incoming calls are not being received from the PSTN.	1 Ensure your telephone is not on call forward. 2 Ensure the calling party has your correct telephone number. 3 Ensure the Remote Office 911x series unit is powered up. It cannot receive calls from the host PBX or the PSTN if it is not powered up. 4 Ensure the PSTN line is working. Ask your service provider to check this. 5 If the problem persists, contact your telecom administrator or Nortel Networks distributor.

IF Symptom**THEN What to do**

A call in progress was suddenly disconnected.

- 1** Does your telephone display "Offline Mode?" If so, enter the online SPRE code to go back online.
- 2** Contact your telecom and data network administrators. Perhaps network problems caused the call to disconnect.

Network connectivity

This section identifies some problems that can occur on the data network, and describes what to do to resolve them.

System descriptions

If you are not able to establish or maintain data network connectivity, perform troubleshooting as described in the following table:

Symptom	What to do
You cannot establish a connection from your administration PC to the Remote Office 911x series unit.	1 Ensure that you entered the IP address correctly when trying to establish the connection.
	2 Ensure that you entered the logon ID and password correctly when trying to establish the connection.
	3 Ensure the Remote Office 911x series unit's IP address, network mask, and default gateway are correctly configured in the Remote Office 911x series unit.
	4 PING the Remote Office 911x series unit to see if it responds. Refer to "Using Configuration Manager's PING," on page 188 for proper procedure.
	5 PING the gateway to see if it responds.
	6 If the PING still does not work, contact your data network administrator.

Symptom	What to do
10060 TELNET CONNECTION FAILED appears when attempting to connect to the Remote Office 911x series unit.	The Remote Office 911x series unit cannot be reached on the IP network. 1 Check the configuration of network devices and ensure that Remote Office 911x series unit can be reached. 2 Verify that the Ethernet cable is connected at both ends (Remote Office 911x series unit and Internet Access Device). 3 Check the Ethernet cable and ensure it is good. 4 Ensure the Remote Office 911x series unit is powered up. 5 Power the Remote Office 911x series unit off, then back on. 6 PING the Remote Office 911x series unit. 7 Contact your Nortel Networks distributor. There may be a hardware problem.
The Remote Office 911x series unit does not send or receive Ethernet traffic.	1 Ensure the Remote Office 911x series unit is powered up. The Remote Office 911x series unit cannot send or receive traffic if it is not powered up. 2 Check the Ethernet cable between the Remote Office 911x series unit and the network and ensure it is good. 3 Ensure the Ethernet cable is connected. 4 If the Remote Office 911x series unit still does not send or receive traffic, contact your data network administrator. 5 Data network administrator: Ensure other network devices are configured to allow traffic to and from the Remote Office 911x series unit.

Symptom

An attempt to log out from the Remote Office 911x series unit does not work.

What to do

It is possible that communication has been lost between the administration PC and the Remote Office 911x series unit.

Close the Configuration Manager, then restart it.

Software problems

This section identifies some problems that can occur with the Configuration Manager software, and describes what to do to resolve them.

Symptom descriptions

If you are not able to complete a task with the Configuration Manager, perform troubleshooting as described in the following table.

Symptom	What to do
10060 TELNET CONNECTION FAILED appears when attempting to connect to the Remote Office 911x series unit.	It is possible that communication has been lost between the administration PC and the Remote Office 911x series unit. Close the Configuration Manager, then restart it.
The Remote Office 911x series unit does not send or receive Ethernet traffic.	It is possible that communication has been lost between the administration PC and the node you were logged on to. Close the Configuration Manager, then restart it.

Display Logs definitions

You can locate Display Logs definitions in Configuration Manager Help.

Using Configuration Manager's PING

PING, or Packet InterNet Groper, is a protocol and program to test that a device is accessible on a network. This section explains how to use the PING option provided in the Configuration Manager to verify network connectivity. Use this test as a troubleshooting tool to determine if you can reach the RLC, another remote unit, or any other device on the network.

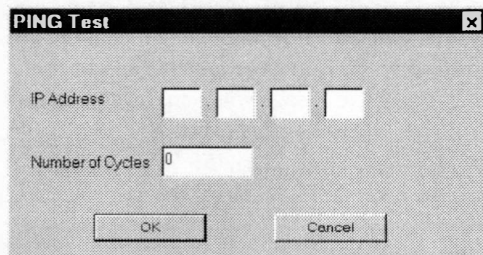
Getting there 911x → Configuration Manager

Performing a Configuration Manager PING

To perform a Configuration Manager PING, complete the following procedure:

- 1 From the Menu Bar, choose Tests → PING.

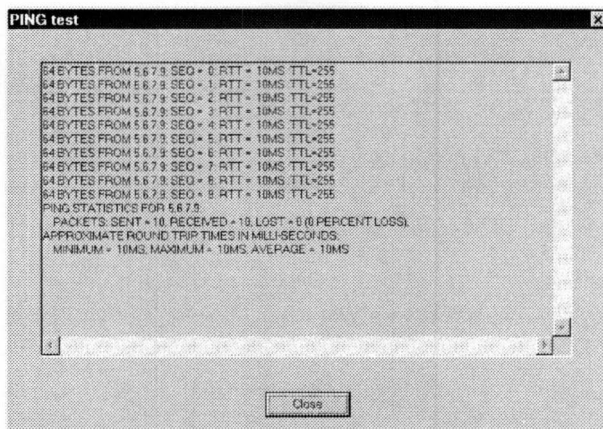
Result: The PING Test dialog box displays, similar to the following:



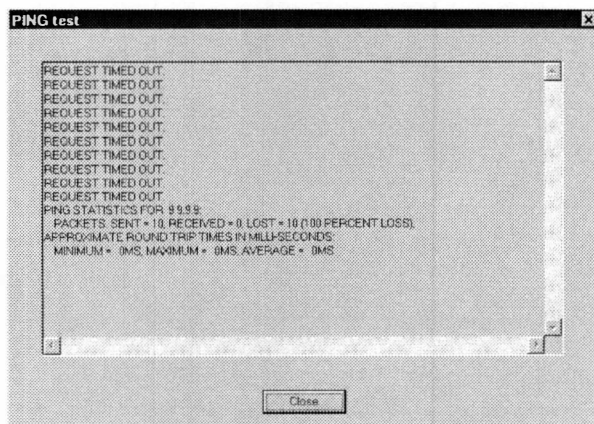
- 2 Enter the IP Address of the unit you want to PING in the IP Address field.
- 3 Enter the number of times you want to PING the unit in the Number of Cycles field (1 to 100).

- 4 Click on the **OK** button.

Result: The PING test window displays, showing the PING results. The following is an example of a successful PING.



The following is an example of an unsuccessful PING.



- 5 Click on the **Close** button.

Result: The PING test window closes.

Unsuccessful PING options

If the PING was unsuccessful, answer these questions:

- 1 Did you enter the IP address correctly?
- 2 Are the subnet mask and default gateway configured properly at your site?
(Confirm this by checking the IP Configuration property sheets for the involved units.)
- 3 Are the subnet mask and default gateway configured properly at the site that you are PINGing? (Confirm with the site's network administrator.)
- 4 Does the gateway respond to a PING?

If you are able to answer "Yes" to the questions above and the PING still does not work, the problem lies somewhere in the network between the involved sites.

Recovering from a catastrophic failure

Catastrophic failure is defined as a failure of the equipment to operate after review of all troubleshooting information and implementation of appropriate procedures.

Should your Remote Office 911x series unit fail to operate after thorough review of the troubleshooting information in this and related Guides, consult your Nortel Networks distributor for hardware replacement.

Repair and warranty information

The Remote Office 911x series unit contains no user-serviceable components. If the problem experienced with your Remote Office 911x series unit persists after you have used all the appropriate procedures in this chapter, refer to the following contact information for repair and warranty help, depending upon your location:

Canada

Nortel Networks Service Selection Center
30 Norelco Drive
Weston, ON
M9L 2X6
Canada

Telephone: 1-888-977-9444

United States

Nortel Networks
Product Service Center
640 Massman Drive
Nashville, TN 37210
USA

Telephone: 1-800-251-1758

Europe

Nortel Networks (NI) Ltd.
FAO: Irish Express Cargo (IEC)
Raheen Industrial Estate
Raheen, Limerick
Ireland

Telephone: +33 4 9296 1568
Fax: +33 4 9296 1598

Asia/Pacific

Nortel Distribution Center
c/o ACCO Transport
21 South St. Unit#2
Rydalmere, NSW
2116 Australia

CALA

Note: When you need warranty and repair service in Central American and Latin American countries, you must first get an RR (repair and return) number from your Nortel Networks distributor before shipping to the Nortel CALA Repair Center.

Nortel c/o Wesbell
4019 S.W. 30th Avenue
Fort Lauderdale, FL 33312
USA

Notify: Receiving Department
RR no.:

Telephone:
Normal Service Hours (Monday to Friday 8:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. Central Time)
1-954-851-8841
After Normal Hours (weekends and holidays)
1-888-594-8474

Appendix A

Planning forms

In this appendix

Remote Office 911x series Network Connections	196
Remote Office 911x series Configuration Information—Dialing Plans	198
Remote Office 911x series telephone menu— Configuration Values	199

Note: You can locate electronic Remote Office Planning forms on the Nortel Networks website at:

www.nortelnetworks.com

Remote Office 911x series Network Connections

Security level:	☐ No security ☐ Provisioned security							
Remote Office 911x series site identification								
Node number: _____	Node name: _____							
IP address:	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; text-align: center; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 25%;"> _ _ _ </td> <td style="width: 5%;">.</td> <td style="width: 25%;"> _ _ _ </td> <td style="width: 5%;">.</td> <td style="width: 25%;"> _ _ _ </td> <td style="width: 5%;">.</td> <td style="width: 25%;"> _ _ _ </td> </tr> </table>	_ _ _	.	_ _ _	.	_ _ _	.	_ _ _
_ _ _	.	_ _ _	.	_ _ _	.	_ _ _		
Subnet mask:	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; text-align: center; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 25%;"> _ _ _ </td> <td style="width: 5%;">.</td> <td style="width: 25%;"> _ _ _ </td> <td style="width: 5%;">.</td> <td style="width: 25%;"> _ _ _ </td> <td style="width: 5%;">.</td> <td style="width: 25%;"> _ _ _ </td> </tr> </table>	_ _ _	.	_ _ _	.	_ _ _	.	_ _ _
_ _ _	.	_ _ _	.	_ _ _	.	_ _ _		
Default gateway:	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; text-align: center; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 25%;"> _ _ _ </td> <td style="width: 5%;">.</td> <td style="width: 25%;"> _ _ _ </td> <td style="width: 5%;">.</td> <td style="width: 25%;"> _ _ _ </td> <td style="width: 5%;">.</td> <td style="width: 25%;"> _ _ _ </td> </tr> </table>	_ _ _	.	_ _ _	.	_ _ _	.	_ _ _
_ _ _	.	_ _ _	.	_ _ _	.	_ _ _		
If the security level is <i>provisioned security</i> , what is the Remote Office 911x series unit's security identifier?								
Inbound _____								
Outbound _____								
Connection to RLC information								
IP address to reach the host PBX (for IP network):								
<table border="1" style="width: 100%; text-align: center; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 25%;"> _ _ _ </td> <td style="width: 5%;">.</td> <td style="width: 25%;"> _ _ _ </td> <td style="width: 5%;">.</td> <td style="width: 25%;"> _ _ _ </td> <td style="width: 5%;">.</td> <td style="width: 25%;"> _ _ _ </td> </tr> </table>		_ _ _	.	_ _ _	.	_ _ _	.	_ _ _
_ _ _	.	_ _ _	.	_ _ _	.	_ _ _		
Telephone number to reach host PBX (for analog network):								
If security level is <i>provisioned security</i> , what is the RLC's security code?	Inbound _____ Outbound _____							

Remote Office 911x series Configuration Information—Dialing Plans

Notes:

- The pound sign (#) is mandatory and is automatically preconfigured in Configuration Manager. The pound sign prevents conflicts with the dialing plan on the host PBX.

Description	Default code	Your code (maximum of 3 digits)
Online SPRE code	#99	#
Offline SPRE code	#98	#
Registration SPRE code (for multi-user or dynamic pool ports only)	#97	#
Deregistration SPRE code (for multi-user or dynamic pool ports only)	#96	#

Remote Office 911x series telephone menu— Configuration Values

Use the values shown below to configure the Remote Office 911 x series unit using the telephone menu.

Configuration Value Description	Value
User Name	GUEST (48378)
Password	
Unit ID (Remote Office 911 x series unit)	
Time Offset	
Emergency Code	
Online SPRE Code	
Offline SPRE Code	
Registration SPRE Code	
Deregistration SPRE Code	
Enable DHCP	Y / N (circle one)
IP Address	
IP Subnet Mask	
IP Gateway	
Enable Diffserve	Y / N (circle one)
Enable 802.1p Mapping	Y / N (circle one)
Port # (RLC)	

Configuration Value Description	Value
Security Level (RLC)	
Enable IP (Voice over IP)	Y / N (circle one)
RLC IP Address	
IP Signaling	
Enable PSTN to RLC	
RLC PSTN Number	
Enable Local Calling	
Enable Auto-Hold	
Key Position	
Local DN	
Localization	
Modem Tones	
Set Type	

Appendix B

Connection pin-out tables

In this appendix

RJ-45 ethernet connector	202
RJ-11 Analog telephone line connector	203
Admin (serial) connector pin-out table	204
Power connector pin-out table	205

RJ-45 ethernet connector

Pin #	Signal
1	RX+
2	RX-
3	TX+
4	NC
5	NC
6	TX-
7	NC
8	NC

RJ-11 Analog telephone line connector

Pin #	Signal
1	NC
2	NC
3	Tip
4	Ring
5	NC
6	NC

Admin (serial) connector pin-out table

Pin number	Signal name	I/O	Description
1			
2	MMI-RXD	I	MMI RS-232C Receive Data
3	MMI-TXD	O	MMI RS-232C Transmit Data
4			
5	Ground	I	Logic Ground
6			
7			
8			
9			

Power connector pin-out table

Pin number	Signal name	I/O	Current	Description
1	Ground	I		Logic Ground
2	+24VAC	I	1.5 A	+24VAC

Appendix C

Equipment attachment notices

In this appendix

Industry Canada	208
Ringer Equivalence Number	209

Industry Canada

NOTICE: The Industry Canada label identifies certified equipment. This certification means only that the equipment meets telecommunications network protective, operational, and safety requirements as prescribed in the appropriate Terminal Equipment Technical Requirements document(s). The Department does not guarantee that the equipment operates to the user's satisfaction.

Before installing this equipment, users should ensure that it is permissible to be connected to the facilities of the local telephone company. The equipment must also be installed using an acceptable method of connection. The customer should be aware that compliance with the above conditions may not prevent degradation of service in some situations.

Repairs to certified equipment should be coordinated by a representative designated by the supplier. Any repairs or alterations made by the user to this equipment, or equipment malfunctions may give the telecommunications company cause to request the user to disconnect the equipment.

Users should ensure for their own protection that the electrical ground connections of the power utility, telephone lines, and internal metallic water pipe system, if present, are connected. This precaution may be particularly important in rural areas.

Caution: Users should not attempt to make such connections themselves, but should contact the appropriate electric inspection authority, or electrician, as appropriate.

Ringer Equivalence Number

NOTICE: The Ringer Equivalence Number (REN) assigned to each terminal device provides an indication of the maximum number of terminals allowed to be connected to a telephone interface. The termination on an interface may consist of any combination of devices subject only to the requirement that the sum of the RENs of all devices does not exceed five (5).

For additional information, refer to “Ringer Equivalence Number” on page 217.

Appendix D

Safety and regulatory information

In this appendix

International safety compliance	212
Electromagnetic compatibility	213
Electromagnetic immunity	214
Electrostatic discharge	215
FCC requirements	216

International safety compliance

The Remote Office 911x series unit and the Remote Office system comply with international safety regulations as listed on this page.

Underwriters Laboratory (UL)

The Remote Office 911x series unit complies with and is listed under UL 1950, Third Edition, including revisions based on the Fourth Amendment to IEC 950, Second Edition.

Canadian Standards Association (CSA)

The Remote Office 911x series unit complies with and is listed under CSA C22.2, No. 950-95.

Europe

The Remote Office 911x series unit complies with and is listed under EN60950: 1992, incorporating amendments 1, 2, 3, 4 & 11.

Australia

The Remote Office 911x series unit complies with and is listed under TS001\AS 3260.

Other Countries Deviations Assessed

Refer to Nemko Test Report # 2000 29173.

Electromagnetic compatibility

The Remote Office 911x series unit does not interfere with operation of other licensed communications systems according to the standards set forth by Australia, the United States, and Canada.

The Remote Office 911x series unit does not adversely effect the compliance of the Meridian 1 system to:

- AS 3548 Class B (Australia)
- Class A of FCC Part 15, Subpart J
- CSPR B requirements.

The margin is at least 2 dB better than the specified limit.

Electromagnetic immunity

The Remote Office 911x series unit resists electromagnetic interference.

The Remote Office 911x series unit performs correctly when subjected to narrow band radiated fields in frequency range 500 kHz to 1 GHz (field strength up to 10 V/m, 1 kHz, 50% modulated AM signal) per IEC 1000-4-3.

Electrostatic discharge

The Remote Office 911x series unit is immune to electrostatic discharges typical for an office environment (carpeted floors, low humidity) according to the test method specified by IEC 1000-4-2.

No damage or malfunction occurs when the Remote Office 911x series unit is exposed to up to $\pm 8\text{kV}$ of direct discharge. An indirect discharge of up to $\pm 16\text{kV}$ does not result in malfunction of the system (to adjacent equipment or connected cabling).

The requirements for both “closed door” and “open door” have been met.

FCC requirements

Information in the following paragraphs pertains to FCC-required information concerning equipment that is connected to the public switched telephone network (PSTN). These paragraphs describe where to locate details concerning the Remote Office 911x series unit's compliance to FCC regulations, as well as these regulations' effects on the use of the Remote Office 911x series unit.

Part 68

The Remote Office 911x series units comply with Part 68 of the FCC rules. A label on the underside of the enclosure contains, among other information, the FCC certification number and ringer equivalence number (REN) for the Remote Office 911x series unit. If requested, you must provide this information to the telephone company.

Class B

This equipment passes tests for compliance with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy. If not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, this equipment can cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee against interference in a particular installation. You can determine whether this equipment causes harmful interference to radio or television reception by turning the equipment off and on. The user can try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and the receiver.
- Connect the equipment to an outlet on a circuit different from the outlet that the receiver connects to when producing the interference.
- Consult your Nortel Networks dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by Nortel Networks can void your right to operate Remote Office 911x series unit equipment.

Telephone network plug and jack

The Remote Office 911x series unit's package contains an FCC-compliant telephone cord and modular plug. The Remote Office 911x series unit's design calls for it to be connected to the telephone network or premises wiring using a Part 68-compliant modular jack. Refer to Chapter 3, "Installing the Remote Office 911x series unit," for complete details on proper installation of the Remote Office 911x series unit.

Ringer Equivalence Number

The ringer equivalence number (REN) indicates the number of devices that a telephone line can accommodate. Excessive RENs on the telephone line can result in the devices' not ringing in response to an incoming call. Typically, the sum of RENs should not exceed five (5.0). To be certain of the number of devices that may be connected to a line, as determined by the total RENs, contact the local telephone company.

This equipment complies with Part 68 of the FCC rules. The information for this equipment is as follows:

Ringer Equivalence: AC-REN - 0.1B and DC-REN - 2.2
Grantee's name: TelStrat, Int'l

Equipment harmful to the telephone network

If the Remote Office 911x series unit causes harm to the telephone network, the telephone company notifies the customer in advance that temporary discontinuance of service may be required. But, if advance notice isn't practical, the telephone company notifies the customer as soon as possible. The customer also receives notification of their right to file a complaint with the FCC if the customer believes a complaint is necessary.

Party lines

Connection to party line service is subject to state tariffs. Contact the state public utility commission for information.

Glossary

10BaseT Ethernet

The Ethernet standard for baseband local area networks using twisted-pair cable carrying 10 megabits per second (Mbps) in a star topology.

A

A-law

A companding technique used in encoding and decoding audio signals in 30-channel pulse code modulated (PCM) systems. A-law companding is the primary method used in Europe. *See also* Mu-law.

adapter

Hardware required to support a particular device. For example, network adapters provide a port for the network wire. Adapters can be expansion boards or part of the computer's main circuitry.

administrator

A user who is responsible for maintaining the RLC or its associated remote units.

agent

A person who is responsible for handling customer calls.

analog

The type of signal used by most telephone connections. A modem converts a digital (computer) signal to analog, and vice versa, so that the signal can travel through telephone lines.

API

See application program interface.

application

A program that runs on a computer.

application program interface

A set of routines, protocols, and tools that programmers use to develop software applications. APIs simplify the development process by providing commonly used programming procedures.

Asynchronous Transfer Mode

A network technology that uses start bits and stop bits (identifying the beginning and end of digital code) to facilitate data transfer. ATM equipment can transmit video, audio, and computer data over the same network, ensuring that no single type of data dominates the line.

ATM

See Asynchronous Transfer Mode.

Automatic Call Distribution (ACD) applications

A separate system or built-in feature of a PBX that equally distributes incoming calls to agents. As calls come in, they are placed into a queue (or a waiting line) for the next available agent. The RLC and its associated remote units support all of Nortel Networks' ACD applications.

B**bandwidth**

The amount of data that the network can transmit, usually expressed in Mbytes per second.

baseboard

See motherboard.

Basic Input/Output System

Flash ROM-based code that runs the Power-On Self-Test (POST) and bootstrap loader. BIOS contains low-level access routines for hardware that can be called from DOS.

basic rate interface

An ISDN subscriber service that uses two B (64Kbps) channels and one D (64 Kbps) channel to transmit voice, video, and data signals.

BIOS

See Basic Input/Output System.

bit

Short for binary digit, the smallest unit of information on a machine. A single bit can hold only one of two values: 0 or 1.

Boolean logic

A logic system that enables a computer to use electricity to make complex decisions. The basic logic gates (And, Or, and Not) determine the flow of electricity through the computer's circuitry and whether specific computing functions are carried out.

boolean

A value that can only be true or false.

branch station

A Meridian Digital Telephone set located at the Remote Office 9110, 9115, or 9150 site.

BRI

See basic rate interface.

bridge

A protocol-independent device that connects two LANs or two segments of the same LAN. Bridges are faster (and less versatile) than routers because they forward packets without analyzing and rerouting messages.

bridge port

Bridge ports are configured on the Remote Office 9150 unit and are used to connect branch office trunks through the host PBX to accommodate conference calls, remote station to remote station calls, and so on.

bus

A collection of wires that connects the microprocessor and main memory to internal computer components. All buses consist of an address bus that transfers data and a data bus that transfers information about where the data should go.

In a network, the bus (also called the backbone) is the main cable that connects all devices on a LAN.

byte

Abbreviation for binary term, a unit of storage capable of holding a single character. On almost all modern computers, a byte is equal to eight bits. Large amounts of memory are indicated in terms of kilobytes (1024 bytes), megabytes (1 048 576 bytes), and gigabytes (1 073 741 824 bytes).

C**cache**

A temporary storage area in computer memory.

call duration timer

Used in PSTN mode only, it specifies the minimum length of time that each call to the host PBX remains open, regardless of telephone activity (or lack thereof).

call on demand

A call connection that is opened only when a connection to the host PBX is required. This is different from a permanent connection, that is open all the time.

call treatment

A method of handling applied to a call while it is waiting to be answered or serviced.

caller ID

Caller ID is used on the RLC to identify the number of the caller requesting access to one of its ports. It is also used on remote units to authenticate incoming calls from the RLC.

calling line identification

An optional service that identifies the telephone number of the caller. This information can then be used to route the call to the appropriate agent or skillset. The caller's telephone number can also be displayed on a phoneset.

card

A thin, rectangular plate that chips and other electronic components are placed on. Examples of cards include motherboards, expansion boards, daughterboards, controller boards, network interface cards, and video adapters.

central processing unit

This is the system unit that holds a PC's essential components.

CBT

See computer-based training.

CD-ROM

A type of optical disk capable of storing large amounts of data (up to 1 Gbyte), although the most common size is 630 Mbytes. A single CD-ROM has the storage capacity of 700 floppy disks and is particularly well-suited to information that requires large storage capacity.

chip

The small flake of silicon crystal that makes up the microprocessor. 2. A type of controller.

CLAN

See customer local area network.

CLID

See calling line identification.

client

The part of a client/server architecture that runs on a personal computer or workstation and relies on a server to perform some operations. For example, an e-mail client is an application that enables you to send and receive e-mail.

COD

See call on demand.

codec

An acronym for COder-DECoder. A device that codes analog signals into digital signals for transmission and decodes digital signals into analog signals for receiving.

COM or COMM

Communications port. This usually refers to the Logical Device name of PC serial ports as defined by DOS.

computer-based training

A type of education that students learn by running special training programs on a computer. CBT is especially effective for training people to use computer applications, because the CBT program can be integrated with the applications.

Configuration Manager

The software application used to configure and administer remote units and the RLC port that they are connected to.

controller board

A special type of expansion board that contains a controller for a peripheral device. When you attach new devices to a computer, such as a disk drive, often a controller board must also be added.

CPU

See central processing unit.

CPU clock

The clock that regulates the execution of instructions inside a computer. *See also* real-time clock.

crash

A serious computer failure whereby the computer stops working or a program closes unexpectedly. A crash indicates a hardware malfunction or a serious software bug.

customer local area network

The LAN that your corporate services and resources connect to. The RLC and its associated remote units both connect to the CLAN.

D**daughterboard**

Usually used as a synonym for an expansion board, a daughterboard is any printed circuit board that connects directly or indirectly to a motherboard.

DB9 connector

A 9-pin connector labeled ADMIN that provides the RS-232 serial port interface. This serial port connection can be used to configure a Remote Office 9150 unit that is directly connected to a PC.

DB25 connector

The DB25 connector on the RLC Multi-I/O cable—Enhanced is for future use.

DC

See direct current.

DHCP

See dynamic host configuration protocol.

digital linear tape

A high-capacity 1/2-inch streaming tape cartridge format.

digital signal processor

A special type of coprocessor that manipulates analog data, such as sound or photographs, that has been converted to digital form.

DIMM

See dual in-line memory module.

direct current

DC, the electrical power used by computers, comes from a single source (such as a battery) that provides a single voltage that stays at a constant level. AC, the power provided by utility companies, must be converted to DC before it can be used in computer systems.

directory number

The number that identifies a phoneset on a switch. The directory number (DN) could be a local extension (local DN), a public network telephone number, or an automatic call distribution directory number (ACD-DN).

DIP

A type of protective packaging for silicon memory chips that provides a safe and convenient means of installing and removing the chip.

DIP switch

A series of tiny switches built into circuit boards that enables you to configure a circuit board for a particular type of computer or application. DIP switches are always toggle switches. This means that they have two possible positions: on or off (or 1 or 0).

direct memory access

DMA speeds up system performance by moving blocks of memory around inside the computer (typically between I/O devices and memory). This process enables the microprocessor to spend its time performing other functions.

DLL

See dynamic link library.

DLT

See digital linear tape.

DMA

See direct memory access.

DN

See directory number.

driver

A program that controls a device. Every device, whether it is a printer, disk drive, or keyboard, must have a driver program. A driver acts like a translator between the device and programs that use the device.

DSP

See digital signal processor.

dual in-line memory module

The protective packaging for microprocessor chips that provides a safe and convenient means of installing and removing the chip.

dynamic host configuration protocol

A protocol for dynamically assigning IP addresses to devices on a network.

dynamic link library

A library of executable functions or data that can be used by a Windows application. Typically, a DLL provides one or more particular functions and a program accesses the functions by creating either a static or dynamic link to the DLL. A DLL can be used by several applications at the same time.

dynamic port pool

A RLC feature that is similar to multiuser ports in that multiple stations can share ports on the RLC. However, users sharing ports from a dynamic pool are assigned to the first available port on the RLC.

E**ECC**

See error correction code.

ECP

See extended capabilities port.

EEPROM

See electronically erasable programmable read-only media.

EIDE

See enhanced IDE.

EISA

See extended industry standard architecture bus.

ELAN

See embedded local area network.

electronically erasable programmable read-only media

A memory chip that needs only a higher than normal voltage and current to erase its contents. An EEPROM chip can be erased and reprogrammed without taking it out of its socket. An EEPROM chip gives a computer and its peripherals a means of storing data without the need for a constant supply of electricity.

electrostatic discharge

Discharge of a static charge on a surface or body through a conductive path to ground. Can be damaging to integrated circuits.

embedded local area network

This is the network connection from the host PBX to the RLC. It is an Ethernet LAN that is segmented from the rest of the Ethernet network and enables signaling and administration access to the RLC. Nortel Networks recommends the following:

- IP traffic should not be routed between the main network and the ELAN.
- An IP route should not be established between the two LANs.

Emergency Service Number

The Remote Office 9150 unit allows you to program an emergency service number (such as 911).

EMI

Electro-magnetic interference. Interference in signal transmission or reception caused by the radiation of electrical and magnetic fields.

enhanced IDE

An IDE hard disk interface enhanced with hardware and firmware changes to support disks larger than 540 Mbytes, four disks instead of two, and faster transfer rates. *See also* IDE.

enhanced parallel port

A parallel port standard for PCs that supports bidirectional communication between the PC and attached devices (such as a printer).

EPP

See enhanced parallel port.

error correction code

A scheme that can detect and fix single-bit memory errors without crashing the system. Also known as Error Detection and Correction (EDAC).

ESD

See electrostatic discharge.

Ethernet

A widely used LAN protocol that uses a bus topology and supports data transfer rates of 10 Mbps.

event

An occurrence or action on the RLC or remote unit, such as the sending or receiving of a message, the opening or closing of an application, or the reporting of an error. Some events are for information only, while others can indicate a problem.

expansion board

Any board that plugs in to one of the computer's expansion slots. Expansion boards include controller boards, LAN cards, and video adapters.

expansion bus

Enables expansion boards to access the microprocessor and memory. *See also* bus.

expression

A building block of a script, used to test for conditions, perform calculations, or compare values within scripts. *See also* logical expression, mathematical expressions, and relational expression.

extended capabilities port

A parallel-port standard for PCs that supports bidirectional communication between the PC and attached devices (such as a printer).

extended industry standard architecture bus

A 32-bit bus that accommodates ISA PC boards.

F**first-level threshold**

The value that represents the lowest value of the normal range for a given field in a threshold class. The system tracks how often the value for the field falls below this value.

G

G.711

G.711 is the international standard for encoding telephone audio on a 64 Kbps channel. It is a pulse code modulation (PCM) scheme operating at an 8 kHz sample rate, with 8 bits per sample. According to the Nyquist theorem, that states that a signal must be sampled at twice its highest frequency component, G.711 can encode frequencies between 0 and 4 kHz. Telcos can select between two different variants of G.711: A-law and μ -law. A-law is the standard for international circuits.

G.726

G.726 is a standard ADPCM algorithm specified by the International Telecommunication Union (ITU) for reducing the 64 kbps A-Law or μ -law logarithmic data of a normal telephone line to 16, 24, 32, or 40 kbps.

G.729

G.729 is a voice compression International Telecommunications Union (ITU) standard that can be used in a wide range of applications including wireless communications, digital satellite systems, packetized speech, and digital leased lines. G.729 provides 8 Kbps bandwidth for compressed speech at toll quality (equivalent to G.726 32 Kbps ADPCM under clean channel condition).

gateway

A device that functions as a node on two or more networks, forwarding packets from one network to addresses in the other networks. In a Remote Office context, the gateway is the device on the network that directs traffic to and from the Remote Office 9150 unit or RLC.

Gbyte

See gigabyte.

general protection fault

A computer condition that causes a Windows application to crash. GPFs usually occur when one application attempts to use memory assigned to another application.

gigabyte

1 073 741 824 bytes. One Gbyte is equal to 1024 Mbytes.

GPCP

General purpose computing platform

GPF

See general protection fault.

graphical user interface

The information displayed on the monitor when a Windows application (or another non-command-based application) runs. A graphical user interface uses features such as pointers, icons, I-beams, and menus to make the program easier to use.

GUI

See graphical user interface.

H**handshaking**

A process involved in establishing a valid connection or signal between two pieces of hardware or communications software.

host call appearance key

An assigned key on the telephone set at the remote site that is used to establish a connection with the host PBX or to receive incoming calls from the host PBX.

host-controlled call mode

When a call is placed to someone at the host site, or when someone from the host site calls the remote site, the call is in host-controlled call mode. Calls in host-controlled mode are routed through the host PBX.

host station

A telephone set located at the host PBX site.

host trunk

The ISDN PRI or TI connection located at the host site. Host trunks are used to route calls from the host PBX to remote sites over the PSTN.

hub

A common connection point for all 10BaseT cables connected to a small network. A hub enables data to go from one device to another.

icon

A small picture that represents an object or program in a graphical user interface.

IDE

Commonly used to describe the AT attachment design, the dominant hard disk interface. IDE is a cost-effective interface technology for mass storage devices that the controller is integrated into the disk or CD-ROM drive in.

idle timer

Identifies the maximum length of time that an ISDN connection should remain idle before it can be closed. Idle means that a voice connection does not exist, and buttons are not being pressed on the digital telephone.

Industry Standard Architecture

A 16-bit standard interface for add-in cards.

input/output

Refers to any operation, program, or device that enters data into a computer or extracts data from a computer.

integrated services digital network

A worldwide digital communication protocol that permits telephone networks to carry data, voice, and other source material. There are two kinds of ISDN lines—Primary Rate Interface (PRI) and Basic Rate Interface (BRI). *See also* BRI.

internet protocol

The protocol within TCP/IP that governs the breakup of data messages into packets, the routing of the packets from sender to destination network, and the reassembly of the packets into the original data messages at the destination.

I/O

See input/output.

IP

See internet protocol.

IP address

Internet Protocol address. An identifier for a computer or device on a TCP/IP network. Networks use the TCP/IP protocol to route messages based on the IP address of the destination. The format of an IP address is a 32-bit numeric address written as four numbers separated by periods. Each number can be 0–255. For example, 1.160.10.240 could be an IP address.

IPX

Internetwork Packet Exchange. A networking protocol used by the Novell NetWare operating systems.

ISA

See Industry Standard Architecture.

ISDN

See integrated services digital network.

J**jumper**

A metal bridge that closes an electrical circuit. Typically, a jumper consists of a plastic plug that fits over a pair of protruding pins. Jumpers are sometimes used to configure expansion boards. By placing a jumper plug over a different set of pins, you can change a board's parameters.

K**Kbyte**

See kilobyte.

kilobyte

1024 bytes. Roughly the amount of information in half a typewritten page.

L**LAN**

See local area network.

LCD

Liquid crystal display. An alphanumeric display using liquid crystal sealed between two pieces of glass.

LED

Light emitting diode. A semiconductor diode that emits light when a current is passed through it.

local area network

A computer network that spans a relatively small area. Most LANs connect workstations and personal computers and are confined to a single building or group of buildings.

local call

A call that originates at your site.

local call appearance key

An assigned key on the telephone set at the remote site that is used to call another station at the branch office, or to place and receive calls through the local PSTN.

local station

A telephone set located at a remote site.

locally controlled call mode

When you place a call from a specified local call appearance key, or your call is to another telephone at your branch site, you are in locally controlled call mode. Calls in locally controlled mode are routed through the local PSTN.

logical expression

A symbol used in scripts to test for different conditions. Logical expressions are AND, OR, and NOT. *See also* mathematical expressions and relational expression.

M**M1**

Meridian 1 PBX

MAT

Meridian Administration Tools. This is a Nortel Networks software application that is used to administer the Meridian 1 PBX.

mathematical expressions

The expressions used in scripts to add, subtract, multiply, and divide values. Mathematical expressions are addition (+), subtraction (-), division (/), and multiplication (*). *See also* logical expression, relational expression.

Mbyte

See megabyte.

megabyte

A unit of measurement for data storage equal to 1 048 576 bytes.

megahertz

One million cycles per second.

MHz

See megahertz.

RLC

An abbreviation for Reach Line Card. The RLC is installed on the host PBX and relays voice and signaling information from the digital telephones connected at a remote site to the host PBX.

motherboard

The principal board that has connectors for attaching devices to the bus. Typically, the motherboard contains the CPU, memory, and basic controllers for the system. On PCs, the motherboard is often called the system board.

MTBF

Mean time between failures.

Mu-law

A companding method for encoding and decoding audio signals in 24-channel pulse-code-modulated (PCM) systems. Mu-law is the method used in North America and Japan *See also* A-law.

multiuser ports

A Remote Office 9150 unit port feature that allows multiple stations to time-share a single port on the host PBX. All stations that use a multiuser port are always assigned to the same port number (TN) on the host PBX.

N**NetBeui**

See NetBIOS enhanced user interface.

NetBIOS

See Network Basic Input Output System.

NetBIOS enhanced user interface

An enhanced version of the NetBIOS protocol used by network operating systems such as LAN Manager, LAN Server, Windows for Workgroups, Windows 95 and Windows NT.

Network Basic Input Output System

An application programming interface (API) that augments the DOS BIOS by adding special functions for local-area networks (LANs). Almost all LANs for PCs are based on the NetBIOS. Some LAN manufacturers have even extended it, adding additional network capabilities.

network interface card

An expansion board that enables a PC to be connected to a local area network (LAN).

NIC

See network interface card.

node

A device connected to the network capable of connecting to other network devices. For example, the RLC and each remote unit are nodes on the network.

NPA

See Number Plan Area.

Number Plan Area

Area code

NVRAM

Non-Volatile Random Access Memory. RAM that doesn't lose its memory when you shut the electricity off to it.

O**OA&M**

Operations, administration, and maintenance

object linking and embedding

A compound document standard that enables you to create objects with one application and then link or embed them in a second application.

ODBC

See Open Database Connectivity.

OEM

Original Equipment Manufacturer. The maker of equipment marketed by another vendor, usually under the name of the reseller. The OEM may only manufacture certain components, or complete computers, that are then often configured with software and/or other hardware, by the reseller.

OLE

See object linking and embedding.

online/offline table

The online/offline table is configured on the RLC. It allows you to schedule times that the host PBX connection is made available to the remote site and the times all telephones at the remote site can use only the local telephone service.

The online/offline table is used for controlling ISDN BRI costs.

Open Database Connectivity

A Microsoft-defined database application program interface (API) standard.

Open System Interconnection

A worldwide communications standard that defines a framework for implementing protocols in seven layers.

OS

Operating Standard

OSI

See Open System Interconnection.

P**packetized voice**

Digital signal processors (DSPs), located in the Remote Office 9150 unit and RLC, convert analog voice into digital data. The data is constructed as a UDP/IP voice packet for transmission over an IP network.

parity

The quality of being either odd or even. The fact that all numbers have parity is commonly used in data communications to ensure the validity of data.

parallel port

A type of interface used to connect an external device such as a printer to a PC. Most personal computers have both a parallel port and at least one serial port.

PBX

See private branch exchange.

PC

Personal computer. A computer with an architecture that is compatible with the IBM PC.

pegging

The action of incrementing statistical counters to track system events.

pegging threshold

A threshold used to define a cut-off value for statistics such as short call and service level. Pegging thresholds are used in reports and historical statistics.

personal directory number

A DN that an agent can be reached directly on, usually for private calls.

phoneset

The physical device, connected to the switch, calls are presented to.

PING

Packet Internet Groper. A protocol that can be used to test the Ethernet connection to devices on the network (such as the RLC and its associated remote units).

position ID

A unique identifier for a phoneset, used by the switch to route calls to the phoneset.

POST

See power-on self-test.

power-on self-test

Initializes and performs rudimentary tests on baseboard hardware, including CPU, floating point unit, interrupts, memory, real-time clock, video, and auto-initializing PCI and EISA bus.

priority DN

A user station can be configured as a priority DN. There are two levels of priority—high and normal. High priority level allows you to

- ensure a trunk is always available
- use PSTN trunking for the host PBX connections
- move the high priority DN first from the IP network to the PSTN

private branch exchange

A telephone switch, typically used by a business to service its internal telephone needs. A PBX usually offers more advanced features than are generally available on the public network. Users of the PBX share a certain number of outside lines for placing telephone calls external to the PBX.

protocol

A standard format used for communication between two devices. The protocol determines the type of error checking to be used, the data compression method (if any), how the sending device will indicate that it has finished sending a message, and how the receiving device will indicate that it has received a message.

PSTN

See public switched telephone network.

public switched telephone network

Any common carrier network that provides circuit switching between public users. The term is usually applied to the public telephone network.

Q**QoS Transitioning Technology**

Nortel Networks' patented technology that can automatically switch calls from the IP network to the PSTN when the voice Quality of Service falls below a predetermined threshold, and back to the IP network when the Quality of Service returns to normal.

R**RAM**

Random Access Memory. This is the most common type of memory found in computers and other devices, such as printers. The term RAM is usually synonymous with main memory, the memory available to programs. For example, a computer with 8 Mbytes of RAM has approximately 8 million bytes of memory that programs can use.

RAS

Remote Access Server. A host on the local area network that is equipped with modems to enable users to connect to the network over telephone lines.

real-time clock

A clock that keeps track of the time even when the computer is turned off. *See also* CPU clock.

recorded announcement route

A resource installed on the switch that offers a recorded announcement to callers.

relational expression

An expression used in scripts to test for different conditions. Relational expressions are less than (<), greater than (>), less than or equal (<=), greater than or equal (>=), and not equal (<>). *See also* logical expression and mathematical expressions.

Remote Access Services

A feature built into Windows NT and Windows 95 that enables users to log in to an NT-based LAN using a modem, X.25 connection, or WAN link. Also known as Dial Up Networking.

remote station

A telephone set located at the Remote Office 9150 or Remote Office 911x series site.

remote trunk

From the RLC's point of view, remote trunks are the ISDN BRI connections between the PSTN and the remote unit located at the branch office site.

RJ-11 Connector

A six-conductor modular jack that is typically wired for four conductors. The RJ-11 jack is the most common telephone jack in the entire world.

RJ-45 Connector

An eight position, eight conductor modular jack used for data transmission over a standard telephone wire. The RJ-45 jack provides the 10BaseT Ethernet connection.

ROM

Read-Only Memory. This is the computer memory that data has been prerecorded on and cannot be removed from.

router

A device that connects two LANs. Routers are similar to bridges but provide additional functionality, such as the ability to filter messages and forward them to different places based on various criteria.

RTC

See real-time clock.

S**SCA**

See single connector architecture.

second-level threshold

The value used in display thresholds that represents the highest value of the normal range for a given statistic.

security identifier

The remote unit sends the branch office security identifier (password) to the RLC for each connection request. The RLC matches the identifier configured for the RLC port. When it finds a match, it grants access to the port and allows the call to proceed.

sequenced packet exchange

A transport layer protocol (layer 4 of the OSI Model) used in Novell Netware networks. The SPX layer sits on top of the IPX layer (layer 3) and provides connection-oriented services between two nodes on the network. SPX is used primarily by client/server applications.

serial port

A general-purpose interface that can be used for almost any type of device, including modems, mice, and printers (although most printers are connected to a parallel port). Most serial ports on personal computers conform to the RS-232C or RS-422 standards.

server

A computer or device on a network that manages network resources. Examples of servers include file servers, print servers, network servers, and database servers.

service

A process that adheres to a Windows NT structure and requirements. A service provides system functionality.

Service Control Manager

A Windows NT process that manages the different services on the PC.

service profile identifier

When you order an ISDN line, your phone company provides you with a SPID for every phone number you have.

silence suppression

A feature that prevents packet transmission during periods when there is no voice data present.

SIMM

Single In-line Memory Module. Used on Macs and PCs. A form of chip packaging where leads (pins) are arranged in a single row protruding from the chip.

simple network management protocol

A set of protocols for managing complex networks. SNMP works by sending messages, called protocol data units (PDUs), to different parts of a network and then analyzing the responses.

single connector architecture

A method for supplying power and data lines in one connector on hard disks. Provides hot-swap capability.

single-user ports

A RLC port that supports one remote station.

Small Computer System Interface

A standard for connecting and controlling mass storage devices such as CD-ROMS, tape drives, and hard disks.

SNMP

See simple network management protocol.

SPID

See service profile identifier.

SPRE code

A Special Prefix code that is used to initiate use of a host PBX feature. In a Remote Office context, SPRE codes are used to

- toggle a remote site between online and offline modes
- use the paging feature
- switch an analog or ATA equipped station from host-controlled mode to locally controlled mode so that local calls can be made
- register a Remote Office 9150 unit for a multiuser or dynamic port

SPX

See sequenced packet exchange.

SRAM

Static Random Access Memory. A form of RAM that retains its data without the constant refreshing that DRAM requires.

station

A telephone or fax machine located at a remote site.

stop bit

In asynchronous communications, a bit that indicates a byte has just been transmitted. Every byte of data is preceded by a start bit and followed by a stop bit.

subnet mask

A subnet mask is the part of the IP address used to represent a subnetwork within a network. A typical IP address might be 192.210.34.144. Each part of this address is made up of eight bits. The subnet mask identifies to the RLC or remote unit what portion of the IP address represents the network (and subnetwork) and what portion represents the host.

SVGA

Super Video Graphics Adapter. An extension of the VGA video standard.

switch

In a telecommunications network, a switch is the hardware that receives phone calls and provides connections to telephone sets. The switch allows a connection to be established as necessary and terminated when there is no longer a session to support it.

In networks, a device that filters and forwards packets between LAN segments. Switches operate at the data link layer (layer 2) of the OSI Reference Model and therefore support any packet protocol. LANs that use switches to join segments are called switched LANs or, in the case of Ethernet networks, switched Ethernet LANs.

switch resource

A device that is configured on the switch.

T**TAPI**

See telephone application programming interface.

TCP/IP

Transport Control Protocol/Internet Protocol. The communication protocol used to connect devices on the Internet. TCP/IP is the standard for transmitting data over networks.

telephone application programming interface

A term that refers to the Windows Telephony API. TAPI is a changing (i.e. improving) set of functions supported by Windows that allow Windows applications to program telephone-line based devices such as single and multi-line phones (both digital and analog), modems and fax machines in a device-independent manner.

telephony

The science of translating sound into electrical signals, transmitting them, and then converting them back to sound. The term is used frequently to refer to computer hardware and software that perform functions traditionally performed by telephone equipment.

TFTP

See trivial file transfer protocol.

threshold

A value for a statistic that system handling of the statistic changes at.

threshold class

A set of options that specifies how statistics are treated in reports and real-time displays. *See also* pegging threshold.

Token Ring

A PC network protocol developed by IBM. A Token Ring network is a type of computer network whereby all the computers are arranged schematically in a circle.

trivial file transfer protocol

A simplified version of FTP that transfers files but does not provide password protection or user-directory capability. It is associated with the TCP/IP family of protocols. TFTP depends on the connectionless datagram delivery service, UDP.

trunk

A communications link between a PBX and the public central office, or between PBXs. Various trunk types provide services such as Direct Inward Dialing (DID), ISDN, and central office connectivity.

trunk access digits

Trunk access digits are numbers that are used by the remote unit to determine the trunk to use when routing a call. For example, 9 is a common trunk access digit used to obtain an outside line.

trunk groups

A trunk group consists of one or more trunk lines that are logically grouped. You can configure up to eight trunk groups on the Remote Office 9150 unit.

trunk interface modules

Used to route calls over the PSTN. The number of modules you must install on the Remote Office 9150 unit depends on the number of simultaneous calls you want in host-controlled or locally controlled mode.

U**uninterruptible power supply**

A power supply that includes a battery to maintain power in the event of a power outage. Typically, a UPS keeps a computer running for several minutes after a power outage, enabling you to save data that is in RAM and to shut down the computer safely.

UPS

See uninterruptible power supply.

utility

A program that performs a specific task, usually related to managing system resources. Operating systems contain a number of utilities for managing disk drives, printers, and other devices.

V**V.35**

An ITU-T standard describing a synchronous, physical layer protocol used for communications between a network access device and a packet network. V.35 is most commonly used in the United States and in Europe, and is recommended for speeds up to 48 Kbps. In practice, V.35 is used for synchronous transmission up to 2.048 Mbps.

V.35 interface

A Frame Relay network technology used to carry the voice conversation and telephone set control signals over:

- a Frame Relay Access Device to send the voice and signal packets to the Remote Office 9150 unit via a Frame Relay Network
- a Channel Service Unit/Data Service Unit (CSU/DSU) to access a switched 56K line service

voice compression

Prior to transmission, the voice data is compressed; after transmission, the data is converted back to voice data at the destination. Voice compression means that voice consumes less bandwidth, leaving more bandwidth for data or other voice or fax communications.

voice jitter attenuation

A feature that removes the variable delays from the voice packets sent across the IP network, thus avoiding awkward-sounding speech.

Voice over Internet Protocol (VoIP)

Technology that uses the IP data network to carry the voice conversation and telephone set control signals between a remote site and the host PBX.

W**WAN**

Wide area network. A computer network that spans a relatively large geographical area. Typically, a WAN consists of two or more local area networks (LANs). The largest WAN in existence is the Internet.

Fields index

Symbols

802.1p Mapping 106

A

- Addon Module Type 103
- Address Information
 - IP Address 106
 - IP Gateway 106
 - IP Network Mask 106
- Analog Localization 103
- Autohold 103
- Automatic DHCP Configuration 106
- Available Flex Channels 154
- Available MIPS 153
- Available Voice Channels 153, 154

B

- Bandwidth (BW) Connection Statistics
 - IP QoS Status 147
 - No of Voice Calls on IP 147
 - No of Voice Calls on PSTN 147
 - Remote Unit Number 147
 - Signaling Status 147
 - Total Up Trunk BW 147
 - Used IP BW 147
 - Used Trunk BW 147
- BroadCast Packet 161
- Browse
 - Upload Configuration 135
- Browse (button)
 - Software Upload 169

C

- Call BW 150
- Call Type 144
- Called Number 144
- Caller Info Statistics
 - Call BW 150
 - Connection ID 150
 - Current Media 150
 - Last Transition to IP 150
 - Last Transition to PSTN 150
 - Priority 150
 - Remote ID 150
 - Start Time 150
 - Transitions to IP 150
 - Transitions to PSTN 150
 - Type 150
- Close Time 144
- Connection ID 150
- Current Media 150

D

- Device Number 153
- DiffServ CodePoint 106
- DSP Gain 101
- DSP Statistics
 - Total Voice Channels 153
- DSP statistics
 - Available Flex Channels 154
 - Available MIPS 153
 - Available Voice Channels 153, 154
 - Device Number 153
 - In Service 153
 - Module Number 153
 - Name 154
 - Single Dig Dev ID 153

Total Channels 153
Total Flex Channels 154
Total MIPS 153
Total Modem Channels 153
Total Reserved Channels 154
Total Tones Channels 154
Duration 144

E

Emergency Activation Code 101
Error % 161
Ethernet Interface Statistics
 UPkts 157

H

Hour 161

I

In Service 153
Inbound Security ID 110
IP Address 106
 Software Upload 168
 Upload Configuration 134
IP Connection 109
 IP Address 109
 IP Signaling 109
IP Gateway 106
IP Network Mask 106
IP QoS Status 147

L

Last Transition to IP 150
Last Transition to PSTN 150
Local Call
 Autohold 103
 Local Calling Key Position 103

Status 102
Local DN 103

M

Messages 140
Modem Tones 103
Module Number 153

N

Name 154
Network statistics
 BroadCast Packet 161
 Error % 161
 Hour 161
 Rx DiscPkt 161
 Rx Dropped 161
 R x Error 161
 Rx Frames 161
 Rx MultiPkt 161
 Rx UCastPkt 161
 Tx DiscPkt 161
 Tx Frames 161
 Tx UCastPkt 161
No of Voice Calls on IP 147
No of Voice Calls on PSTN 147
Node Name 101

O

Outbound Security ID 110

P

Phone Type 103
Priority 150
PSTN Connection 109
 PSTN Number to Connect to RLC 110

R

- registration 102
- Remote ID 144, 150
- Remote Unit Number 147
- Resize Logs
 - Messages 140
- RLC Port Number 109
- Rx DiscPkt 161
- Rx Dropped 161
- Rx Error 161
- Rx Frames 161
- Rx MultiPkt 161
- Rx UCastPkt 161

S

- Security ID
 - Inbound Security ID 110
 - Outbound Security ID 110
- Security Level 110
- Signaling Status 147
- Single Dig Dev ID 153
- SPRE Codes
 - DeRegistration 102
 - Offline 102
 - Online 102
 - registration 102
- Start Time 144, 150
- statistics
 - Bandwidth (BW) Connection Statistics
 - IP QoS Status 147
 - No of Voice Calls on IP 147
 - No of Voice Calls on PSTN 147
 - Remote Unit Number 147
 - Signaling Status 147
 - Total Up Trunk BW 147
 - Used IP BW 147
 - Used Trunk BW 147
 - Caller Info Statistics
 - Call BW 150
 - Connection ID 150

- Current Media 150
- Last Transition to IP 150
- Last Transition to PSTN 150
- Priority 150
- Remote ID 150
- Start Time 150
- Transitions to IP 150
- Transitions to PSTN 150
- Type 150
- Caller Info Statistics field descriptions 150
- DSP statistics
 - Available Flex Channels 154
 - Available MIPS 153
 - Available Voice Channels 153, 154
 - Device Number 153
 - In Service 153
 - Module Number 153
 - Name 154
 - Single Dig Dev ID 153
 - Total Channels 153
 - Total Flex Channels 154
 - Total MIPS 153
 - Total Modem Channels 153
 - Total Reserved Channels 154
 - Total Tones Channels 154
 - Total Voice Channels 153
- Ethernet Interface Statistics
 - UPkts 157
- Network statistics
 - BroadCast Packet 161
 - Error % 161
 - Hour 161
 - Rx DiscPkt 161
 - Rx Dropped 161
 - Rx Error 161
 - Rx Frames 161
 - Rx MultiPkt 161
 - Rx UCastPkt 161
 - Tx DiscPkt 161
 - Tx Frames 161
 - Tx UCastPkt 161
- Resize Logs

- Messages 140
- Trunk Connection Statistics
 - Call Type 144
 - Called Number 144
 - Close Time 144
 - Duration 144
 - Remote ID 144
 - Start Time 144
 - Status 144
 - Trunk Number 144
- Status 144

T

- Time Offset 101
- Total Channels 153
- Total Flex Channels 154
- Total MIPS 153
- Total Modem Channels 153
- Total Reserved Channels 154
- Total Tones Channels 154
- Total Up Trunk BW 147
- Total Voice Channels 153

- Transitions to IP 150
- Transitions to PSTN 150
- Trunk Connection Statistics
 - Call Type 144
 - Called Number 144
 - Close Time 144
 - Duration 144
 - Remote ID 144
 - Start Time 144
 - Status 144
 - Trunk Number 144
- Trunk Number 144
- Tx DiscPkt 161
- Tx Frames 161
- Tx UCastPkt 161
- Type 150

U

- Unit ID 101, 109
- UPkts 157
- Used IP BW 147
- Used Trunk BW 147

Index

Numerics

- 10BaseT Ethernet
 - connection options 11
 - description 2
- 9110
 - Refer to Remote Office 9110*
- 9115
 - Refer to Remote Office 9115*
- 911x
 - Refer to Remote Office 911x series*

A

- ACD features
 - features
 - ACD features 23
- Admin 157
- Admin connector 204
- analog
 - connection options 11
- Automatic Call Distribution (ACD)
 - applications 24

B

- backup
 - creating a backup configuration file 131
 - introduction 130
 - restoring the configuration 133
 - storing configuration files 130
- bandwidth
 - measuring with Bandwidth Connection Statistics 145
- Bandwidth Connection Statistics screen 145
- bandwidth limit 116
 - display message 121

C

- cable connections 7
- cable connectors
 - RJ-11 7
 - RJ-45 7
- cable modem 10
- cables
 - included 36
 - not included 36
- cabling
 - cables included with the Remote Office 9110 unit 36
 - cables you must supply 36
- call forward 124
- call forward feature 23, 124
- call modes
 - host-controlled 13
 - locally controlled 13
- call timers
 - how they work 27
 - idle timer 26
 - introduction 26
 - minimum call duration timer 26
- call transfer 124
- call waiting 23, 123
 - host-controlled mode 123
 - locally controlled mode 123
- call waiting feature
 - features
 - call waiting 23
- Caller Information Statistics
 - displaying 149
- Caller Information Statistics screen 148
- QoS Transitioning Technology 148
- calls
 - call forward feature 124
 - call transfer feature 124
 - call waiting feature 123

- calling another station at your site 117
 - conference feature 124
 - display messages 120
 - emergency service calls feature 122
 - hold feature 122
 - host-controlled indicator updates 118
 - host-controlled mode 112
 - incoming 13
 - locally controlled indicator updates 118
 - locally controlled mode 112
 - methods for placing outgoing calls 115
 - offline mode 113
 - online mode 113
 - online/offline modes
 - putting unit in online mode 125
 - outgoing 13
 - placing a host-controlled call 116
 - bandwidth limit 116
 - DSP limit 116
 - placing a locally controlled call 117
 - placing calls 115
 - receiving calls 115
 - Canadian Standards Association
 - CSA C22.2, No 950 212
 - Canadian Standards Association (CSA) 212
 - Channel 157
 - CLASS 46
 - computer telephony integration applications 23
 - conference 124
 - conference feature 23, 124
 - configuration
 - default values
 - restoring 70, 71
 - deregistration SPRE code 78
 - emergency code 74
 - IP information 69
 - offline SPRE code 76
 - online SPRE code 75
 - registration SPRE code 77
 - telephone menu 69
 - default password 69
 - display local IP 69
 - modify deregistration SPRE code 78
 - modify emergency code 74
 - modify offline SPRE code 76
 - modify online SPRE code 75
 - modify registration SPRE code 77
 - modify unit ID 72
 - restore default values 70, 71
 - time offset 73
 - user name 69
 - time offset 73
 - unit ID 72
 - Configuration Manager
 - Help
 - Display Logs definitions 187
 - configuring the unit using the telephone menu
 - accessing the telephone menu 67
 - before you begin 69
 - information you need 66
 - running the telephone menu script 69
 - telephone menu key function 67
 - configuring the unit with Configuration Manager
 - IP addresses
 - configuring 104
 - RLC connection information
 - configuring 107
 - system settings
 - configuring 99
 - field descriptions 101
 - system identification information 98
 - connection options
 - 10BaseT Ethernet 11
 - administration PC 37
 - introduction 11
 - PSTN 11
 - Quality of Service transitioning technology 11
 - CSA C22.2, No. 950 212
- ## D
- DB-9 connector
 - Remote Office 9115 7
 - deployment
 - IP options 43
 - on-demand 43
 - permanent 43
 - local PSTN connection
 - emergency service calls 45
 - inbound local calls and RLC calls 46

- CLASS 46
 - distinctive ring 46
 - model 3 - PSTN permanent 46
 - model 4 - PSTN on-demand 46
 - model 5 - IP permanent/PSTN permanent 47
 - models 1 and 2 - IP only 46
 - outbound local calls 45
 - media 42
 - NAT 42
 - PNAT 42
 - PSTN options 44
 - on-demand 44
 - permanent 44
 - QoS
 - IP permanent, PSTN permanent 45
 - QoS transition 44
 - shared PSTN numbers
 - RLC calling shared PSTN number 47
 - transport media
 - IP 42
 - PSTN 42
 - QoS Transitioning Technology 42
 - deployment options
 - introduction 42
 - deregistration 102
 - SPRE code 78
 - digital telephones
 - display messages
 - introduction 120
 - message descriptions 120
 - going online and offline
 - introduction 125
 - overriding an automatic offline event 126
 - using the SPRE code for online mode 125
 - indicator updates
 - host-controlled indicator updates 118
 - introduction 118
 - locally controlled indicator updates 118
 - modes of operation
 - controlling online and offline modes 114
 - host-controlled mode 112
 - host-controlled v s locally controlled modes 113
 - introduction 112
 - locally controlled mode 112
 - offline mode 113
 - online mode 113
 - why offline is important 114
 - placing and receiving calls
 - calling another station at your site 117
 - introduction 115
 - methods for placing outgoing calls 115
 - placing host-controlled calls 116
 - supported sets 22
 - telephone features
 - call forward 124
 - conference 124
 - introduction 122
 - troubleshooting 177
 - Disc 157, 158
 - Display Logs
 - definitions 187
 - display messages
 - bandwidth limit 121
 - going offline 120
 - hostless mode 120
 - offline mode 120
 - online mode 121
 - port already in use 121
 - port not logged in 121
 - release and try again 121
 - distinctive ring 46
 - documents
 - related xxii
 - DSP
 - DSP Statistics screen 151
 - DSP application modules
 - Hardware Statistics 151, 155
 - DSP limit 116
 - display message
 - display messages
 - DSP limit 121
 - DSP Statistics screen 151
- ## E
- electromagnetic compatibility 213
 - AS 3548 Class B (Australia) 213
 - Class A of FCC Part 15, Subpart J 213
 - CSPR B requirements 213

- margin 213
- electromagnetic immunity 214
- electrostatic discharge 215
- emergency
 - service number description 30
- emergency calls
 - placing 122
- emergency code 74
- emergency service calls 45, 122
- emergency service calls feature 122
- EN90650 212
- equipment
 - equipment attachment notices 207
- equipment attachment notices 207
 - Industry Canada 208
 - Ringer Equivalence Number 209
- Err 157, 158
- Ethernet
 - Ethernet Interface Statistics screen 155
- Ethernet Interface Statistics
 - Admin 157
 - Channel 157
 - Disc 157, 158
 - Err 157, 158
 - Ifc Type 157
 - IfcNo 157
 - In - Octet 157
 - LAN Drv 157
 - MPkts 157, 158
 - MTU Len 157
 - Oper 157
 - Out - Octet 157
 - QLen 158
 - Speed 157
 - UPkts 157
- Ethernet Interface Statistics screen 155
- extracting upgrade files from the download file 165

F

- features
 - call forward 23, 124
 - call transfer 124
 - call waiting 23, 123

- host-controlled mode 123
 - locally controlled mode 123
- conference 23, 124
- hold 23
- transfer 23
- firmware
 - extracting upgrade files 165
- upgrade
 - downloading files 164
 - performing 167

G

- going offline
 - display message 120

H

- Hardware Statistics
 - introduction 151, 155
- Help
 - Display Logs definitions 187
- hold 23, 122
- hold feature 23
- host call appearance key
 - purpose 13
- host-controlled calls
 - placing 116
 - bandwidth limit 116
 - DSP limit 116
- host-controlled mode
 - indicator updates 118
 - overview 112
- hostless mode
 - display message 120

I

- idle timer 26, 27
- lfc Type 157
- lfcNo 157
- In - Octet 157
- inbound local calls and RLC calls 46
 - CLASS 46

- distinctive ring 46
- incoming calls 13
- Industry Canada notice 208
- installation
 - 9110 circuit card
 - powering up 57
 - 9110 unit
 - connecting 56
 - removing the base of the digital telephone 52
 - 9115 unit
 - powering up 62
 - general safety 50
 - unpacking and inspecting the equipment 51
- international safety compliance 212
 - Australia 212
 - Canadian Standards Association 212
 - EN90650 212
 - Underwriters Laboratory (UL) 212
- Internet Access Device
 - description 10
- IP 42
 - addressing and routing 40
 - PSTN and IP network diagram 12
 - remote unit 69
- IP deployment 43
 - IP on-demand 43
 - IP permanent 43
- IP on-demand 43
- IP permanent 43
- IP permanent, PSTN permanent 45
- ISDN Basic Rate Interface (BRI) router 10

L

- LAN Drv 157
- LEDs
 - description 5
 - Remote Office 911x unit LED display
 - diagrams 6
 - troubleshooting 176
- local call appearance key
 - purpose 13
- local calling
 - local calls through PSTN 28

- telephone features
 - supported 28
- local PSTN connection
 - emergency service calls 45
 - inbound local calls and RLC calls 46
 - CLASS 46
 - distinctive ring 46
 - model 3 - PSTN permanent 46
 - model 4 - PSTN on-demand 46
 - model 5 - IP permanent/PSTN permanent 47
 - models 1 and 2 - IP only 46
 - outbound local calls 45
- locally controlled call mode 13
 - calling another station 117
 - indicator updates 118
- locally controlled calls
 - placing 117
- locally controlled mode
 - overview 112
- logs
 - clearing
 - introduction 141
 - displaying
 - introduction 138
 - viewing 138

M

- media 42
- Meridian Communication Adapters (MCA) 23
- minimum call duration timer 26
- model 3 - PSTN permanent 46
- model 4 - PSTN on-demand 46
- model 5 - IP permanent/PSTN permanent 47
- models 1 and 2 - IP only 46
- mounting options
 - Remote Office 9115 36
- MPkts 157, 158
- MTU Len 157

N

- NAT 42
 - network address translation (NAT) 42
 - network considerations

- introduction 40
- IP addressing and routing 40
- quality of service 41
- no security 21
- notices
 - equipment attachment 207
 - Industry Canada 208
 - Ringer Equivalence Number 209

O

- offline 102
- offline mode
 - display message 120
- offline SPRE code 76
- online 102
- online mode
 - display message 121
- online SPRE code 75
- online/offline table
 - configuration 29
 - how the table works 29
 - introduction 29
 - offline mode 113
 - online mode 113
 - why offline is important 114
- Oper 157
- Out - Octet 157
- outbound local calls 45
- outgoing calls 13

P

- password
 - Configuration Manager password 128
 - default 69
 - Remote Office 911x series password 128
- PC administration
 - administering multiple nodes 38
 - connection options 37
 - Ethernet connection 37
- PC requirements 38
- PING
 - using 188
- pin-out tables

- connector
 - Admin 204
 - Power 205
 - RJ11 Analog telephone line connector 203
 - RJ-45 ethernet connector 202
- placing calls 115
 - host-controlled 116
 - bandwidth limit 116
 - DSP limit 116
 - locally controlled 117
- PNAT 42
- port already in use
 - display message 121
- port not logged in
 - display message 121
- port number and network address translation (PNAT) 42
- Power
 - connector 205
- power requirements
 - Remote Office 911x units 32
- preinstallation preparation
 - unpacking and inspection 51
- PSTN 42
- PSTN deployment 44
 - PSTN on-demand 44
 - PSTN permanent 44
- PSTN on-demand 44
- PSTN permanent 44

Q

- QLen 158
- QoS deployment
 - IP permanent, PSTN permanent 45
- QoS Transitioning Technology 42, 44
 - Caller Information Statistics 148
- QoS Transitioning Technology deployment 44
- Quality of Service 42
- quality of service 44
- Quality of Service transitioning technology
 - connection option 11

R

- Reach Line Card (RLC)
 - description 3
- receiving calls 115
- registration
 - registration SPRE code 77
- related documents xxii
- release and try again
 - display message 121
- Remote Office 9110
 - cables included 36
 - defined 2
 - universal power supply 8
- Remote Office 9115
 - defined 3
 - universal power supply 9
- Remote Office 911x Series
 - deployment options 42
 - network considerations 40
 - using the digital telephone 111
- Remote Office 911x series
 - 9115 module 3
 - administering 127–171
 - cables you must supply 36
 - components 2
 - configuring using the telephone menu 65
 - defined 2
 - how it works 12
 - installing 50
 - LEDs 176
 - password 128
 - physical environment 34
- Remote Office 911x series cable connections 7
- Remote Office 911x unit
 - power requirements 32
- restoring
 - introduction 133
 - uploading a configuration file 134
- Ringer Equivalence Number notice 209
- RJ-11 connector 7
- routers
 - NAT routers 42
 - PNAT routers 42

S

- safety and regulatory information 211
 - electromagnetic compatibility 213
 - AS 3548 Class B (Australia) 213
 - Class A of FCC Part 15, Subpart J 213
 - CSPR B requirements 213
 - margin 213
 - electromagnetic immunity 214
 - electrostatic discharge 215
 - international safety compliance 212
 - Australia
 - TS001AS 3260 212
 - CSA C22.2, No. 950 212
 - EN90650 212
 - UL 1950 212
- security
 - no security 21
 - security identifier 21
- security identifier 21
- shared PSTN numbers
 - calling from RLC 47
- software
 - upgrades
 - performing 171
- Speed (statistic) 157
- SPRE code
 - deregistration
 - modifying 78
 - offline
 - modifying 76
 - online
 - modifying 75
 - registration
 - modifying 77
- SPRE codes 75–78
 - deregistration 102
 - offline 102
 - online 102
 - registration 102
- statistics
 - Bandwidth Connection Statistics screen 145
 - Caller Information Statistics screen 148
 - QoS Transitioning Technology 148
 - DSP Statistics screen 151
 - Ethernet Interface Statistics

- Admin 157
- Channel 157
- Disc 157, 158
- Err 157, 158
- Ifc Type 157
- IfcNo 157
- In - Octet 157
- LAN Drv 157
- MPkts 157, 158
- MTU Len 157
- Oper 157
- Out - Octet 157
- QLen 158
- Speed 157
- UPkts 157
- Ethernet Interface Statistics screen 155

T

- telephone features
 - call forward 124
 - conference 124
 - emergency service calls 122
 - hold 122
 - introduction 122
- telephone menu 69
 - accessing 67
 - default password 69
 - IP 69
 - display local IP 69
 - modify deregistration SPRE code 78
 - modify emergency code 74
 - modify offline SPRE code 76
 - modify online SPRE code 75
 - modify registration SPRE code 77
 - modify unit ID 72
 - password
 - default 69
 - restore default values 70, 71
 - time offset 73
 - user name 69
- telephones
 - supported digital telephones 22
 - supported features 23
 - supported telephone modules 22

- TFTP
 - and upgrades 167
 - defined 38
 - time offset 73
 - transfer 23
 - transfer feature 23
 - transport media 42
 - IP 42
 - PSTN 42
 - QoS Transitioning Technology 42
- troubleshooting
 - before you begin 174
 - recovering from a catastrophic failure 191
 - using PING 188
- TS001AS 3260 212

U

- UL 1950 212
- Underwriters Laboratory (UL) 212
 - UL 1950 212
- unit ID
 - modifying 72
- universal power supply
 - Remote Office 9110 8
 - Remote Office 9115 9
- upgrades
 - performing 165
 - firmware upgrade 167
 - obtaining the latest file 164
 - software upgrade 171
 - upgrades and configuration files 167
 - verifying the firmware and software versions 162
 - when to perform 167
- UPkts 157
- user name 69

V

- V32.bis modem 11
- Voice over IP
 - introduction 25

Remote Office 911x Series

Installation and Administration Guide

Copyright © 2001 Nortel Networks, All Rights Reserved.

Printed in Canada.

All information contained in this document is subject to change without notice. Nortel Networks reserves the right to make changes to equipment design or program components, as progress in engineering, manufacturing methods, or other circumstances may warrant.

*Nortel Networks, the Nortel Networks logo, the Globemark, and Unified Networks, Meridian 1, MSL-100, and Succession Communication Server for Enterprise 1000 are trademarks of Nortel Networks.

MICROSOFT, MS-DOS, WINDOWS, and WINDOWS NT are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Publication number:	555-8421-220
Product release:	1.3
Document release:	Standard 1.1
Date:	October 2001



555-8421-211

Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter

Installation and Administration Guide

Product release 1.3

Standard 1.1

October 2001

NORTEL
NETWORKS

Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter

Installation and Administration Guide

Product release:	1.3
Publication number:	555-8421-211
Document release:	Standard 1.1
Date:	October 2001

Copyright © 2001 Nortel Networks, All Rights Reserved.

Printed in Canada.

All information contained in this document is subject to change without notice. Nortel Networks reserves the right to make changes to equipment design or program components, as progress in engineering, manufacturing methods, or other circumstances may warrant.

*Nortel Networks, the Nortel Networks logo, the Globemark, and Unified Networks, Meridian 1, MSL-100, and Succession Communication Server for Enterprise 1000 are trademarks of Nortel Networks.

MICROSOFT, MS-DOS, WINDOWS, and WINDOWS NT are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Publication history

October 2001

This is the Standard 1.1 issue of the *Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter Installation and Administration Guide* (NTP 555-8421-211). This document provides product descriptions, planning, installation, configuration, administration, and troubleshooting information for the Remote Office Product release 1.3 of the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit.

Contents

About this document	xv
About this guide	xvi
<i>How to use this guide</i>	xvi
Product overview	xvii
Skills you need	xviii
<i>Nortel Networks product knowledge</i>	xviii
<i>Telecommunications knowledge</i>	xviii
<i>Data networking knowledge</i>	xix
Conventions used in this guide	xx
<i>Precautionary messages</i>	xx
<i>Instructions for selecting menu options</i>	xx
<i>Instructions for displaying property sheets</i>	xx
<i>PBX terminology</i>	xxi
Related information products	xxii
<i>Printed documents</i>	xxii
<i>CD-ROM</i>	xxiii

1 Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter description	1
Product Introduction	2
<i>Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card</i>	2
<i>Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit</i>	3
<i>Reach Line Card</i>	3
<i>Voice over IP technology</i>	3
<i>Configuration - Device and Software</i>	4
Hardware description	5
<i>Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit LEDs</i>	5
<i>Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit LED display diagrams</i>	6
<i>Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card</i>	7
<i>Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit</i>	7
<i>Universal power supply support - Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card</i>	8
<i>Universal power supply support - Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit</i>	9
<i>Internet Access Device description</i>	10

Connection options	11
10BaseT Ethernet interface	11
How Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units work	12
Outgoing call process	13
Incoming call process	13
Host-controlled call mode	13
Call scenario 1: host-controlled—corporate internal call	14
Call scenario 2: host-controlled—corporate external call	16
System security	18
No security	18
Security identifier	18
Telephones	19
Supported digital telephones	19
Required footstand for Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter units	19
Supported telephone modules	19
Supported telephone features	20
Computer telephony integration applications	20
Automatic Call Distribution (ACD) applications	21
Online/Offline Table	22
Emergency service number	23
Configuration Manager	24
Power requirements	25
Input specifications	25
Output specifications	25

2 Planning for installation 27

Physical environment	28
Space	28
Temperature	28
Mounting options	30
Cables included with the Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card	30
Cables included with the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit	30
Cables you must supply yourself	30
Administration PC	31
Connection options	31
Ethernet connection	31
Administering multiple nodes in the network	32
Windows PC requirements	32

Network considerations	34
<i>IP addressing and routing</i>	34
<i>Determining DHCP Assigned IP Addresses</i>	34
Deployment.....	36
<i>Transport media</i>	36
<i>Network Address Translation</i>	36
<i>IP deployment</i>	37

3	Installing the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit	39
	Preparing for installation	40
	<i>General Safety</i>	40
	<i>Required hardware and software tools</i>	41
	<i>Unpacking and inspecting the equipment</i>	41
	Installing the Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card ..	42
	<i>Removing the footstand of the digital telephone</i>	42
	<i>Inserting the Meridian Digital Telephone Internal</i>	
	<i>IP Adapter circuit card</i>	43
	<i>Installing ferrite beads</i>	45
	<i>Connecting the Meridian Digital Telephone Internal</i>	
	<i>IP Adapter circuit card</i>	46
	<i>Powering up the Meridian Digital Telephone Internal</i>	
	<i>IP Adapter circuit card</i>	47
	Installing the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit	48
	<i>Installing the Meridian Digital Telephone External</i>	
	<i>IP Adapter unit on a desk</i>	48
	<i>Installing the Meridian Digital Telephone External</i>	
	<i>IP Adapter unit on the wall</i>	48
	<i>Connecting the Meridian Digital Telephone External</i>	
	<i>IP Adapter unit</i>	50
	<i>Connecting the Meridian Digital Telephone External</i>	
	<i>IP Adapter unit to the network</i>	51
	<i>Powering up the Meridian Digital Telephone External</i>	
	<i>IP Adapter unit</i>	52

4	Configuring the IP Adapter unit using the telephone menu	53
	Before you begin	54
	<i>Information you need to know before configuring</i>	54
	<i>Accessing the telephone menu</i>	55
	<i>Telephone menu key function</i>	55
	<i>Backing up while in the telephone menu</i>	56
	<i>Exiting the system using the Release key</i>	56
	Running the telephone menu script	57
 5	 Changing configuration settings using Configuration Manager	 81
	Before you begin	82
	Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit system configuration	83
	<i>Configuring the system settings</i>	84
	<i>Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter System Configuration field descriptions</i>	85
	IP configuration	88
	<i>Configuring IP information</i>	89
	<i>IP Configuration field descriptions</i>	90
	RLC connection configuration	91
	<i>Configuring the RLC connection information</i>	92
	<i>RLC Connection configuration field descriptions</i>	93
 6	 Using the digital telephone	 95
	Modes of operation	96
	<i>Host-controlled mode</i>	96
	<i>Online mode</i>	96
	<i>Offline mode</i>	96
	<i>What controls the online and offline modes</i>	96
	Placing and receiving calls	98
	<i>Receiving incoming calls</i>	98
	<i>Methods for placing outgoing calls</i>	98
	<i>Placing a host-controlled call</i>	98
	<i>To call another station at your site—host-controlled mode</i>	99
	Indicator updates	100
	<i>Host-controlled indicator updates</i>	100
	Display messages	101
	<i>Message descriptions</i>	101

Telephone features operation	103
<i>Emergency service calls</i>	103
<i>Hold</i>	103
<i>Call Waiting</i>	103
<i>Call Transfer</i>	104
Going online and offline	105
<i>Using the SPRE code to place your unit in online mode</i>	105
<i>Using the SPRE code to place your unit in offline mode</i>	105
<i>Overriding an automatic offline event from the host PBX</i>	106

7 Administration 107

Changing the administration password	108
<i>Changing the Configuration Manager password</i>	108
<i>Changing the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's password</i>	109
Creating a backup configuration file	110
<i>Storing backup configuration files</i>	110
<i>Creating the backup file</i>	111
Restoring the configuration	113
<i>Before you begin</i>	113
<i>Uploading a configuration file over the IP network</i>	114
Display logs	118
<i>Viewing display logs</i>	118
<i>Printing the display logs to a file</i>	119
<i>Changing the number of display logs retained by the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit</i>	120
<i>Clear logs</i>	121
Statistics screens	122
<i>Bandwidth Connection Statistics</i>	122
<i>Caller Information Statistics</i>	125
<i>Digital Signal Processor (DSP) Statistics</i>	128
<i>Ethernet Interface Statistics</i>	132
<i>Network Statistics</i>	136
Verifying the firmware and software version	139
<i>Verifying the software version</i>	139
<i>Verifying the firmware version</i>	140
<i>Determining the current firmware and software versions</i>	140
Obtaining the latest upgrade file	141
<i>Types of upgrades</i>	141
<i>Downloading the upgrade file</i>	141
Extracting upgrade files from the download file	142
<i>Performing the extraction using Windows</i>	142

Performing a firmware upgrade	144
<i>When to perform a firmware upgrade</i>	144
<i>About firmware upgrades and configuration files</i>	144
<i>Before you begin</i>	144
<i>Upgrading the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit firmware</i>	145
Restarting the system	147
<i>To restart the unit</i>	147
Performing a software upgrade	148
<i>Upgrading the Configuration Manager software</i>	148
 8 Troubleshooting	 149
Before you begin	150
<i>Identifying why a problem occurred</i>	150
Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit LEDs	152
Digital telephone	153
<i>Symptom descriptions</i>	153
Network connectivity	159
<i>System descriptions</i>	159
Software problems	162
<i>Symptom descriptions</i>	162
<i>Display Logs definitions</i>	162
Using Configuration Manager's PING	163
<i>Performing a Configuration Manager PING</i>	163
<i>Unsuccessful PING options</i>	165
Recovering from a catastrophic failure	166
Repair and warranty information	167
<i>Canada</i>	167
<i>United States</i>	167
<i>Europe</i>	167
<i>Asia/Pacific</i>	168
<i>CALA</i>	168
 A Planning forms	 169
IP Adapter Network Connections	170
IP Adapter Configuration Information—Dialing Plans	171
IP Adapter telephone menu— Configuration Values	172

B	Connection pin-out tables	175
	RJ-45 ethernet connector	176
	Admin (serial) connector pin-out table	177
	Power connector pin-out table	178
C	Equipment attachment notices	179
	Industry Canada	180
D	Safety and regulatory information	181
	International safety compliance	182
	<i>Underwriters Laboratory (UL)</i>	182
	<i>Canadian Standards Association (CSA)</i>	182
	<i>Europe</i>	182
	<i>Australia</i>	182
	<i>Other Countries Deviations Assessed</i>	182
	Electromagnetic compatibility	183
	Electromagnetic immunity	184
	Electrostatic discharge	185
	FCC requirements	186
	<i>Part 68</i>	186
	<i>Telephone network plug and jack</i>	187
	<i>Equipment harmful to the telephone network</i>	187
	<i>Party lines</i>	187
	Fields Index	219
	Index	223

Preface

About this document

In this preface

About this guide	xvi
Product overview	xvii
Skills you need	xviii
Conventions used in this guide	xx
Related information products	xxii

About this guide

The *Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter Installation and Administration Guide* (NTP 555-8421-211) is for telecom and data network managers and administrators who plan, install, and manage corporate telecommunications and data networks. This guide contains the following information:

- detailed descriptions of the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units
- procedures necessary to install, configure, and manage Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units in a remote or branch office
- suggested troubleshooting procedures for addressing possible problems

This guide assumes that you are familiar with the following:

- basic telecommunications terminology
- basic networking terminology
- PC terminology and operation (specifically, Windows 95, Windows 98, or Windows NT 4.0)
- Nortel Networks PBX terminology, functionality, and administration

How to use this guide

This guide provides step by step procedures for installing, configuring, and managing the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit as a part of your remote services network. Review this guide before beginning Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit installation and configuration.

When you are ready to begin, follow the steps for planning, installing, and configuring your hardware in the order that they are presented in this guide. This helps you to achieve a successful, trouble-free installation.

Product overview

Nortel Networks proudly presents Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter remote telecommunications equipment. The *Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter Installation and Administration Guide* (NTP 555-8421-211) provides information on configuring and maintaining your Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit.

The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit allows your remote site to access a Reach Line Card (RLC) installed in the host PBX. A properly completed installation supplies your remote location with the full host PBX and.

To identify and locate documentation for the other elements of your Remote Office network, refer to “Related information products” on page xxii.

Skills you need

Knowledge of, or experience with, the following PC concepts as appropriate to your network is helpful when administering a Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit:

- Microsoft Windows
- software installation
- network configuration

Nortel Networks product knowledge

Knowledge of, or experience with, the following Nortel Networks products and concepts:

- basic administration of a Meridian 1, MSL-100, or Succession Communication Server for Enterprise 1000 PBX (telephone set and XDLC configuration)
- characteristics and principles of XDLC operation
- PBX data calls

Telecommunications knowledge

Knowledge of, or experience with, the following aspects of telecommunications:

- digital telephone set configuration
- ISDN PRI configuration
- trunk configuration
- PBX configuration
- PBX maintenance (SDI operation)
- knowledge of RS-232 signaling

Data networking knowledge

Knowledge of, or experience with, the following aspects of data networking:

- data link (Layer 2 of the OSI model)
 - IP protocol
 - routing
- network (Layer 3 of the OSI model)
 - addressing
 - traffic analysis and provisioning
 - configuration
- Voice over IP concepts

Conventions used in this guide

This section describes the symbols and text conventions used in this guide.

Precautionary messages

Note: A “Note” describes the secondary results of procedures or commands, or special conditions where you must use a procedure or command.

ATTENTION! Provides information essential to the completion of a task.



CAUTION

Risk of data loss or equipment damage

Cautions you against unsafe practices or potential hazards, such as equipment damage, service interruption, or loss of data.

Instructions for selecting menu options

To simplify the instructions for selecting menu options, this guide abbreviates the selection path. For example, if you must choose Telnet from the Logon Unit menu, under the Connect menu, this guide uses the following style:

From the menu, choose Connect → Logon Unit → Telnet.

Instructions for displaying property sheets

To simplify the procedures for accessing property sheets throughout this guide, the instructions for displaying a particular property sheet are summarized in a “Getting there” statement.

The procedure for displaying the screen that you need depends on if you are:

- performing an online configuration (connected to a node by Telnet)
- performing an offline configuration (not connected to a node)

Example

Getting there 911x → Configuration Manager → IP Configuration

The long instruction for this example is shown below.

- 1 Do the following:

IF	THEN
you are performing an offline configuration	select the device type as described in "Selecting the device type for offline configuration" on page 125.
you are performing an online configuration	connect to, and then log on to the node as described in "Logging on to a unit" on page 126.

- 2 In the left pane, click on the plus sign (+) beside Configuration Manager to expand the node list.
- 3 Click on **IP Configuration**.

Result: The IP Configuration property sheet for the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit displays in the right pane.

PBX terminology

Throughout this guide, the term "host PBX" refers to any of the following Nortel Networks PBX platforms:

- Meridian 1
- MSL-100
- Succession Communication Server for Enterprise 1000

Related information products

This section lists sources for additional information related to the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit. You can order printed documentation and the CD-ROM from your Nortel Networks distributor.

You can also download the documentation in Portable Document Format (PDF) from the Nortel Networks website. To locate these documents, click on the Customer Support, Documentation, and North America links at the following website:

www.nortelnetworks.com

Note: The information available on the website may supersede the information provided on the CD-ROM.

For further details, refer to *Remote Office and RLC Release Notes* (NTP 555-8421-102).

Printed documents

The following documents provide additional information on Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units and other elements of a Remote Office system:

***Remote Office Network Engineering Guidelines* (NTP 555-8421-103)**

The *Engineering Guidelines*, written for the installer/administrator, describe how a Remote Office system integrates with existing telecommunications and data networks. This document helps you to ensure that your networks are prepared for Remote Office.

***Remote Office and RLC Release Notes* (NTP 555-8421-102)**

The *Release Notes*, written for the installer/administrator, describe the features and known problems for the Reach Line Card (RLC), the Remote Office 9150 unit, Remote Office 911x series units, and Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units.

Reach Line Card Installation and Administration Guide
(NTP 555-8421-210)

The *Reach Line Card Installation and Administration Guide*, written for the installer/administrator, describes how to install, configure, and manage the Reach Line Card on the host PBX.

Remote Office 9150 Installation and Administration Guide
(NTP 555-8421-215)

The *Remote Office 9150 Installation and Administration Guide*, written for the installer/administrator, describes how to install, configure, and manage the Remote Office 9150 unit.

Remote Office 911x Series Installation and Administration Guide
(NTP 555-8421-220)

The *Remote Office 911x Series Installation and Administration Guide*, written for the installer/administrator, describes how to install, configure, and manage Remote Office 911x series units.

CD-ROM

A Remote Office Product CD-ROM is available containing the documentation in Portable Document Format (PDF), firmware, and Configuration Manager software.

Chapter 1

Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter description

In this chapter

Product Introduction	2
Hardware description	5
Connection options	11
How Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units work	12
System security	18
Telephones	19
Online/Offline Table	22
Emergency service number	23
Configuration Manager	24
Power requirements	25

Product Introduction

Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units provide full-featured host Private Branch Exchange (PBX) services to single users in small remote offices or home offices.

Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units require each of the following components:

- a Meridian Digital Telephone Internal or External IP Adapter unit
- a Reach Line Card (RLC)
- a 10BaseT Ethernet interface to an Internet Access Device (IAD)

This section provides a brief description of each component used to provide Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter functionality.

Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card

The Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card fits in the base of a Meridian digital telephone set. The circuit card relays voice and signaling information between the digital telephone connected at your office and the RLC installed on the host PBX using the Internet Protocol (IP) network.

Refer to the following chapters for additional information:

- Chapter 3, “Installing the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit”
- Chapter 4, “Configuring the IP Adapter unit using the telephone menu”, or Chapter 5, “Changing configuration settings using Configuration Manager”

Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit

The Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit connects to the telephone set line cord of the digital telephone with a standard RJ-11 connector. The unit relays voice and signaling information between your digital telephone at a remote location and the RLC installed in the host PBX over the IP network. Refer to the following chapters for additional information:

- Chapter 3, “Installing the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit”
- Chapter 4, “Configuring the IP Adapter unit using the telephone menu”, or Chapter 5, “Changing configuration settings using Configuration Manager”

Reach Line Card

The Reach Line Card (RLC), installed in the host PBX, provides service for up to 16 ports on a single-slot card or 32 ports on a double-slot card. The RLC emulates a standard digital line card (XDLC), providing PBX functionality for telephones at remote locations (including sites using the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit).

The RLC relays voice and signaling information between the remote digital telephone and the host PBX over the IP network.

For a more detailed description, refer to the *Reach Line Card Installation and Administration Guide* (NTP 555-8421-210).

Voice over IP technology

The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit uses Nortel Networks proprietary Voice over IP technology to send voice and data signals between your office and the host PBX through the existing IP data network.

Configuration - Device and Software

To make the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit operational, some configuration is required. You can use the following tools to configure the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit:

- telephone menu

You must use the telephone menu to configure the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit initially.

For detailed instructions on using the telephone menu, refer to Chapter 4, “Configuring the IP Adapter unit using the telephone menu”.

- Configuration Manager

Configuration Manager is a Windows-based application for accessing the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit configuration settings. Once you have configured the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit, you can use Configuration Manager to make configuration changes and perform ongoing administration.

For more details, refer to Chapter 5, “Changing configuration settings using Configuration Manager”, and Chapter 7, “Administration”.

Hardware description

This section describes the LED displays, power supply, cables, connectors, and Internet Access Devices (IAD) for the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units.

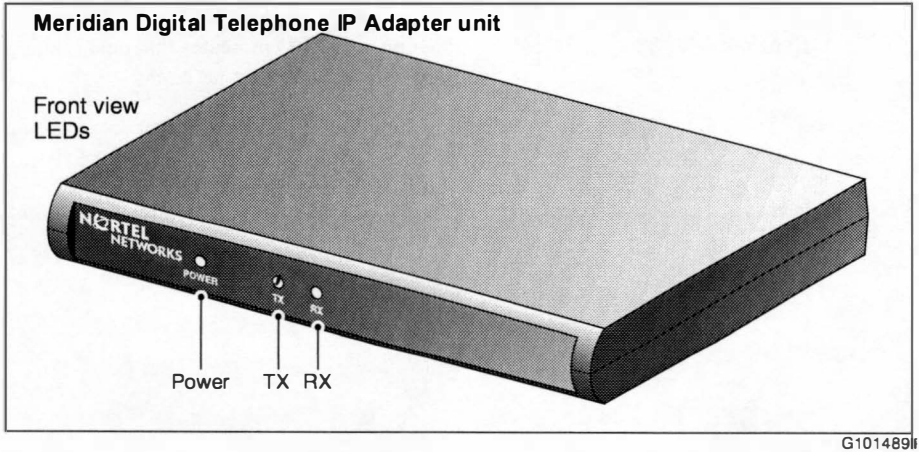
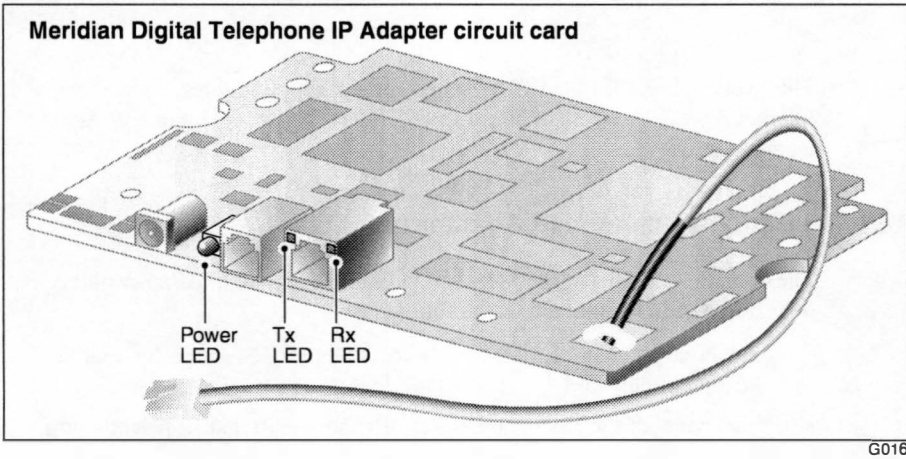
Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit LEDs

The operational status of the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit is indicated by LEDs mounted on the following:

- telephone set footstand for the Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card
- front panel of the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit

LED Type	LED Name	Description
Power	On	When lit, this LED indicates that power is present.
IP network	TX	When flashing, this LED indicates that data is being transmitted over the Ethernet network.
	RX	When flashing, this LED indicates that data is being presented to the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit over the Ethernet network.

Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit LED display diagrams



Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card

The Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card provides the connections listed below:

- a female RJ-45 connector (labeled ETHERNET) for a 10BaseT Ethernet connection to an Internet Access Device
- a female RJ-11 connector (labeled LINE) for an analog connection to the PSTN

This connector is not used for the Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card.

- a male RJ-11 connector on an approximately six-inch TCM cable for the connection between the circuit card and the digital telephone.

Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit

The Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit provides the connections listed below:

- a female RJ-45 connector (labeled ETHERNET) for a 10BaseT Ethernet connection to an Internet Access Device
- a female RJ-11 connector (labeled LINE) for an analog connection to the PSTN

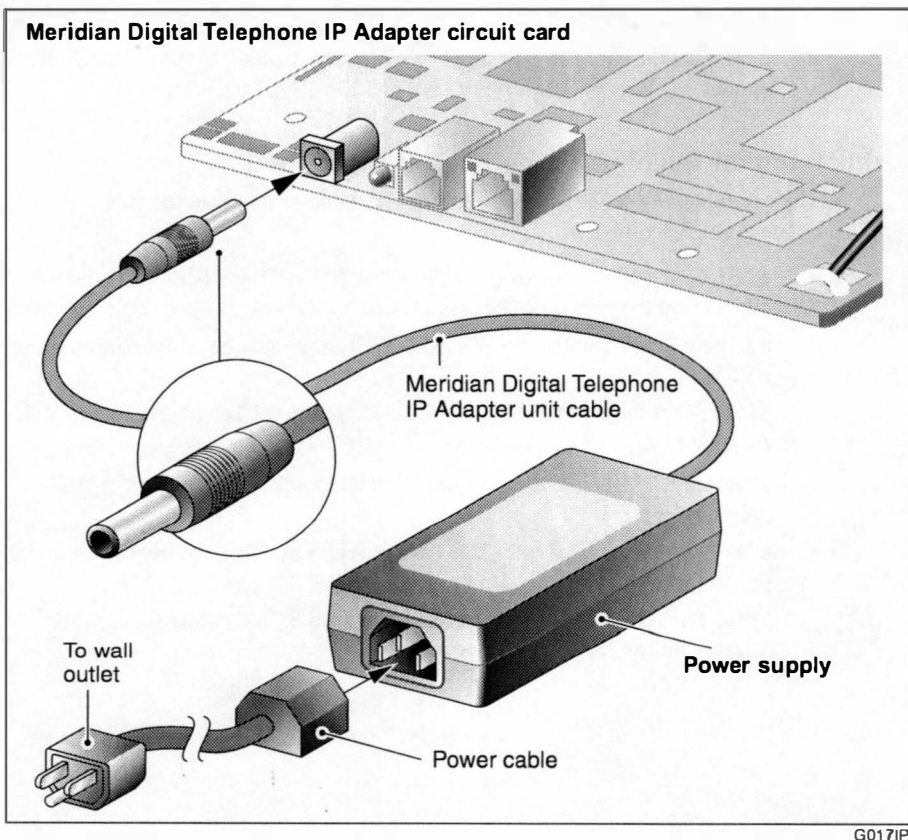
This connector is not used for the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit.

- a female RJ-11 connector (labeled D PHONE) for a connection to the digital telephone
- a DB-9 connector (labeled ADMIN) provides an RS-232 connection to the serial port of a PC

Note: The ADMIN port on the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit is for field service use only.

Universal power supply support - Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card

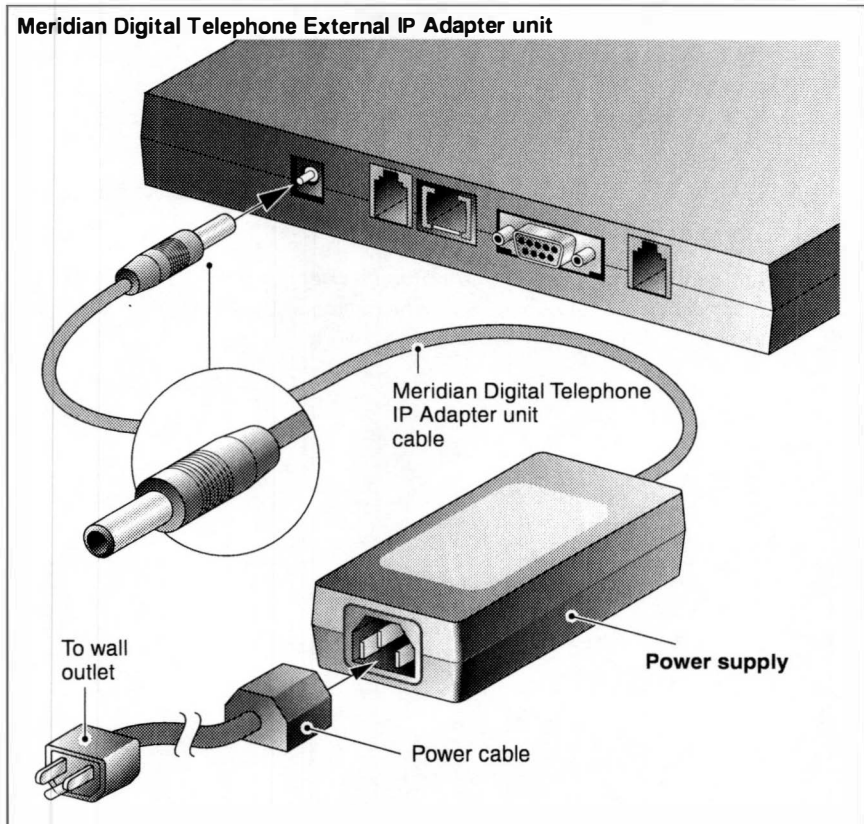
The Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card requires a .5A/24V power supply. To order the power supply from your Nortel Networks distributor, request part number NTDR91xx. (The “xx” represents the vintage and can vary.) The design of this power supply, shown in the following illustration, accommodates North American, British (U.K.), and European standards.



Universal power supply support - Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit

The Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit requires a .5A/24V power supply. To order the power supply from your Nortel Networks distributor, request part number NTDR91xx. (The "xx" represents the vintage and can vary.) The design of this power supply, shown in the following illustration, accommodates North American, British (U.K.), and European standards.

Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit



G101532IP

Internet Access Device description

If you are using a 10BaseT Ethernet LAN at the remote site, you can connect the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit to any high-speed Internet Access device. The following are some commonly-used devices:

- ISDN Basic Rate Interface (BRI) router
A BRI router is designed to send voice and data traffic across an ISDN line.
- digital subscriber line (xDSL) modem
An xDSL modem transmits digital information at high bandwidth on existing phone lines. The xDSL modem can send and receive data at a rate of 512 Kbps to 6 Mbps. An example, is the 1-meg modem.
- cable modem
A cable modem is used on cable TV lines so that customers can dial up to their Internet service providers over a cable line, instead of a telephone line.

Refer to the *Remote Office Network Engineering Guidelines* (NTP 555-8421-103) for detailed information on the interaction of the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit with the IP Network.

Connection options

Communications between the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit in your office and the host PBX takes place using 10BaseT Ethernet interface to an Internet Access Device (IAD) on a corporate wide area network (WAN). This section provides a description of this connection.

10BaseT Ethernet interface

The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit uses Nortel Networks proprietary Voice over IP (VoIP) technology over the IP network to the host PBX. Voice data is forwarded as UDP/IP packets and the signalling data as TCP/IP packets. You can connect the Ethernet interface to an Internet Access Device such as a BRI router, an xDSL modem, or cable modem. For more information, refer to the “Internet Access Device description” on page 10.

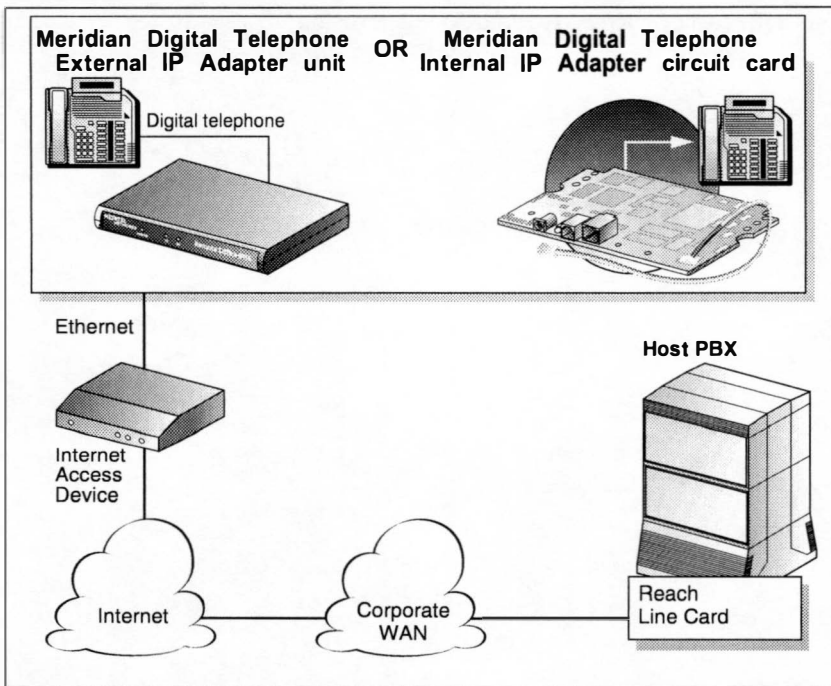
How Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units work

There are two major components to the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units. They are:

1. the Meridian Digital Telephone Internal or External IP Adapter circuit card or unit located at the remote office
2. the RLC located on the host PBX

These two components, along with the connection options described on page 11, extend the host PBX services to a remote office user.

IP network diagram



G018

Outgoing call process

To place outgoing calls, users can either pick up the handset on the telephone or press the line key. For a detailed description of the outgoing call process, refer to the sample illustrations beginning on page 14.

Incoming call process

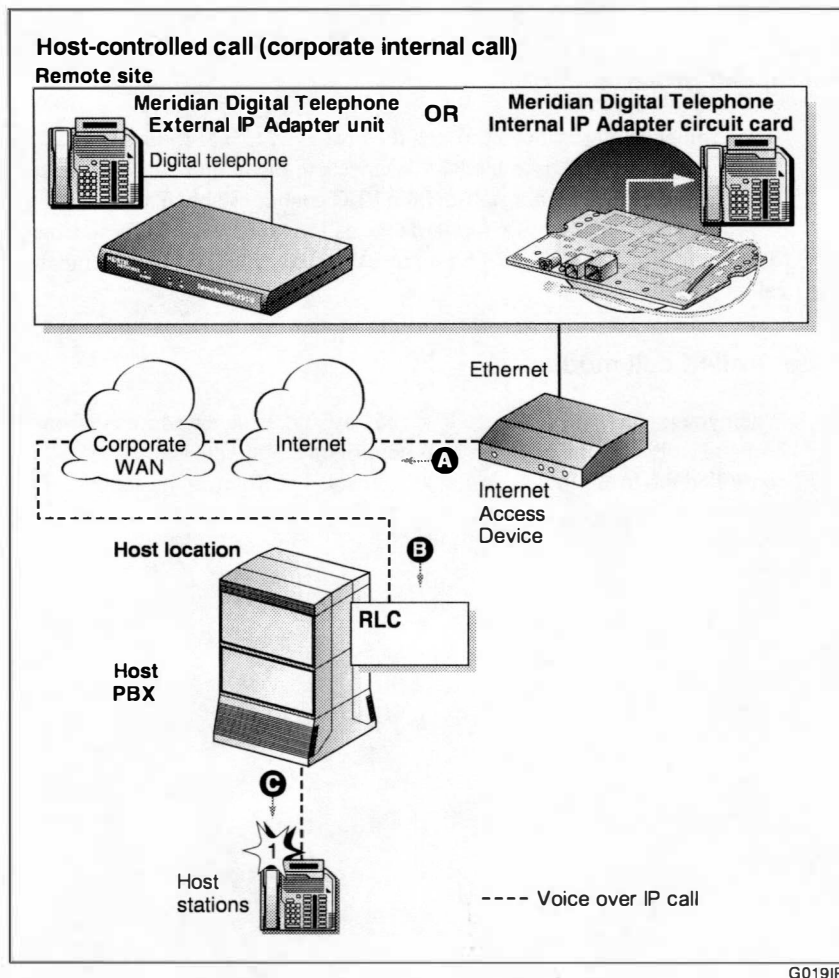
When someone places a call through the host PBX to a Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit, the RLC connects to the remote unit. The host PBX then completes the call normally. If the RLC cannot establish a connection, the call rings until the host PBX forwards the call to voice mail. Refer to Chapter 6, “Using the digital telephone”, for a more detailed description of the incoming call process.

Host-controlled call mode

When you place a call to someone at the host site, or when someone from the host site calls you, the call is in host-controlled call mode. Calls in host-controlled mode are routed through the host PBX. Refer to the sample illustrations beginning on page 14.

Call scenario 1: host-controlled—corporate internal call

The following diagram shows how a call is routed when placing a host-controlled call over the IP network to the corporate office:



Calls work the same in reverse, from the host PBX site to the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit site.

Voice over IP network call

- 1 The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter user lifts the handset (item A).

Result: The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter user hears a dial tone. This indicates a successful connection to the RLC over the IP network (item B).

- 2 The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter user dials a telephone number, such as the extension number of host station 1.

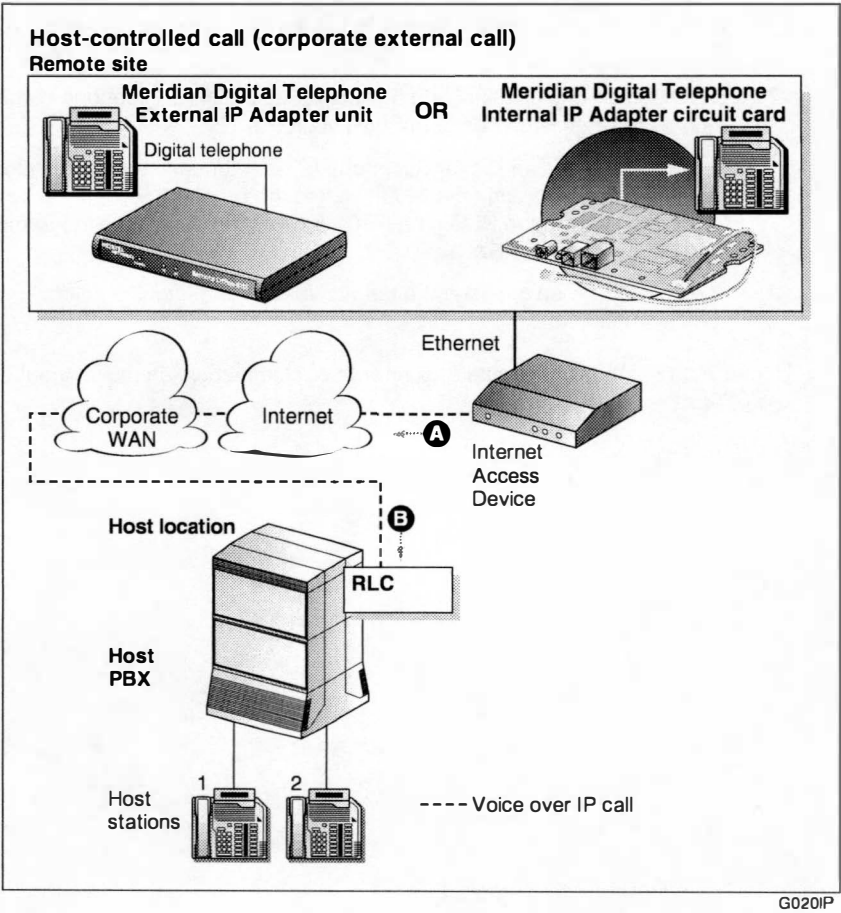
Result: The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit sends the dialed digits as packets through the IP network to the Ethernet network or Corporate WAN to the RLC. The RLC converts the packets to the format required by the host PBX.

- 3 The host PBX then converts the data to voice and routes the call to host station 1 (item C).

Note: Item notations in parentheses refer to circled markers in the diagram on page 14.

Call scenario 2: host-controlled—corporate external call

The following diagram shows how a call is routed when placing a host-controlled call to a party outside the organization using a Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit. Calls work the same in reverse, from the host PBX site to the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit site.



Voice over IP network call

- 1 The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter user lifts the handset (item A).

Result: The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter user hears a dial tone. This indicates a successful connection to the RLC over the IP network and the corporate WAN (item B).

- 2 The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter user dials the external telephone number.

Result: The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit sends the dialed digits as packets across the Ethernet network. The packets go through the IP network and the corporate WAN, to the RLC. The RLC converts the packets to the format required by the host PBX. The host PBX then converts the data to voice and routes the call to the called party (host stations 1 and 2).

Note: Item notations in parentheses refer to circled markers in the diagram on page 16.

System security

There are two levels of security that you can set to control access from Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units to the RLC on the host PBX. This section describes these security levels and how you can manage them using Configuration Manager.

No security

When no security measures are used, the RLC accepts incoming calls from all Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units.

Use this level with caution as it exposes the RLC to unauthorized use. For example, No security allows a user from an unauthorized remote site can accidentally, or intentionally, connect to the RLC. With this connection made, the unauthorized user can now place long distance phone calls through the RLC and the host PBX.

Security identifier

When you choose the security identifier level of security, the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter automatically sends its configured security identifier (password) for each connection request. The RLC compares the identifier configured to the RLC port with the identifier assigned to the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter. If the identifiers match, then the RLC grants the requested connection.

If the identifiers do not match, then the RLC records an event in the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter system log. You can view the system log in Configuration Manager. The telephone displays **HOSTLESS MODE**, indicating that communications with the host PBX are down.

Telephones

This section lists the telephones, features, and modules supported by the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit.

Supported digital telephones

Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units support the following digital telephone sets with display:

M2008D	M2616D	M3820	M3904
M2008HFD	M2616CT	M3902	M3905
M2216D	M3310	M3903	

Your digital telephone must have a one or two-line display in order to configure the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit with the telephone display menu.

Required footstand for Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter units

The Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter unit installs in the footstand of the Meridian Digital Telephone. The required ATA/MCA footstand is standard on Meridian Modular Telephones (M2000 series) with a date code of May 6, 1998 or later. Contact your Nortel Networks distributor to obtain the required footstand if your telephone has an earlier date code.

Supported telephone modules

Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units support the following telephone modules:

- add-on modules to add more keys to the digital telephone
- application modules to provide more functionality to the digital telephone

Note: Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter units do not support Meridian Communication Adapters (MCAs). Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter units support Meridian Communication Adapters (MCAs) to allow computer telephony integration (CTI) control of digital telephones operating in transparent mode. Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units do not support Analog Telephone Adapters (ATAs).

Supported telephone features

The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units support all features provided by the host PBX for host-controlled calls. The following are some examples:

- ACD features
- call forward
- conference
- call waiting
- hold
- transfer

Note: Dial tone for conference and transfer can be very rough. A stutter can be heard during a remote dial tone. This is a normal occurrence and is caused by the DSP activating a dial tone relay.

Refer to Chapter 6, “Using the digital telephone”, for a detailed description of the features listed above.

Computer telephony integration applications

You can use the following two types of computer telephony integration (CTI) applications:

1. first-party CTI applications that use the Symposium Desktop Telephone Application Programming Interface (TAPI) Service Provider
2. third-party CTI applications that use Symposium TAPI Service Provider for M1

You can use both types with the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit.

Automatic Call Distribution (ACD) applications

The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter supports all Nortel Networks Automatic Call Distribution (ACD) applications.

Online/Offline Table

Configure the Online/Offline table on the RLC to schedule the times that you want to make the host PBX available to the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit.

Note: When the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit is in offline mode, you cannot use it to place or receive calls.

You can define up to eight entries per day, every day of the week for each Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit site. You can define each entry as online, offline, or undefined for each time period entered.

You can override the settings of the Online/Offline table if the table attempts to suspend access to the connection in the middle of a business call. You are alerted by a tone and a display message 30, 20, and 10 seconds before the connection is terminated. To override connection termination, you must enter the online SPRE (Special Prefix) code on the telephone.

You can configure an online/offline table for each remote site on the RLC. Refer to the *Reach Line Card Installation and Administration Guide* (NTP 555-8421-210) for configuration information.

Emergency service number

To make an emergency service call, you must use a PSTN telephone. The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit does not support emergency service calls.

ATTENTION!

You must place emergency service calls on a telephone that is directly connected to a PSTN line. If you place an emergency service call from a station that is connected to a Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit, the RLC routes the call through the host PBX. (The host PBX could be in a different city.)

Configuration Manager

After the initial configuration is complete, you can use Configuration Manager administration software to make configuration changes and administer the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit. Refer to Chapter 5, “Changing configuration settings using Configuration Manager”. The software is a Windows-based application that is installed on your PC.

Administration tasks include the following:

- viewing the system status
- performing upgrades, backups, or restores
- making configuration changes
- changing the administration password

Note: You must use the telephone set menu to configure the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit for the first time. Refer to “Before you begin” on page 54 for a detailed telephone menu description.

Power requirements

This section lists characteristics of the recommended power supplies for the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units.

Input specifications

Input specifications for the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units are as follows:

Characteristic	Rating
voltage	90 - 264 VAC
frequency	47 - 63 Hz
current	0.4A maximum

Output specifications

Output specifications for the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units are as follows:

Characteristic	Rating
voltage	24 VDC +/-5%
current	0.62A maximum
power	15W maximum

Chapter 2

Planning for installation

In this chapter

Physical environment	28
Administration PC	31
Network considerations	34
Deployment	36

Physical environment

This section provides the space, temperature, cabling, and mounting information you need to know before you install Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units.

Space

Insert the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter circuit card into the base of a digital telephone set. The dimensions for the circuit card are as follows:

- 16.5 cm (6.5 inches) wide
- 8.8 cm (3.5 inches) deep

Place the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit on a desk, or mount it on the wall. The dimensions for the unit are as follows:

- 18.2 cm (7.2 inches) wide
- 9.9 cm (3.9 inches) deep

Temperature

The table on the following page describes the temperature and humidity conditions that the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit can withstand without any performance degradation or damage.

Specification	Minimum	Maximum
Normal operation		
Recommended:		
■ Temperature	■ 0°C (32°F)	■ 65°C (149°F)
■ Relative humidity	■ 10%	■ 95% (non-condensing)
Absolute:		
■ Temperature	■ 0°C (32°F)	■ 70°C (158°F)
■ Relative humidity	■ 5%	■ 95% (non-condensing)
Short term (less than 72 hours):	0°C (32°F)	70°C (158°F)
Rate of change	0°C (32°F) to 60°C (140°F) per 3 minutes	
Storage		
Recommended temperature	-50°C (-58°F)	70°C (158°F)
Relative humidity	5%	95% RH (non-condensing)
Temperature shock		
In three minutes	-50°C (-58°F)	25°C (77°F)
In three minutes	70°C (158°F)	25°C (77°F)
Non-condensing	-40°C (-40°F)	70°C (158°F)
Power consumption		
Voltage	24VDC	
Current	0.62A	

Mounting options

Place the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit on a desk, or mount the unit on the wall. If mounting on the wall, make sure that the chosen location allows you to easily view the LEDs on the front panel.

ATTENTION!

Installation on the wall must be completed using standard telephony installation practices.

Cables included with the Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card

The Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter package includes a power cord and power supply.

Cables included with the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit

The Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter package includes the following cables:

- 1.83 meter (6-foot) RJ-11 telephone cord
- a power cord and power supply

Cables you must supply yourself

The following cables used to establish the network connections are industry-standard cables and are not provided in the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter package.

- Ethernet cable (CAT 5)
- telephone cable
- serial cable for the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit

You must obtain these cables from your local cable supplier.

Administration PC

This section describes the way that you can connect an administration terminal to the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit. It also describes the hardware and software requirements for using the Configuration Manager administration software.

Connection options

The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter system includes the Configuration Manager software that enables you to configure, administer, and upgrade the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit. You can connect to Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit with Telnet to use Configuration Manager, or using the digital telephone set menu.

You can access Configuration Manager using a 10BaseT Ethernet connection for ongoing administration and upgrade of Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units.

Note: Use the telephone set menu for first-time configuration of Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units.

Ethernet connection

Once you configure the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit with its IP interface information, the following can occur:

- You can establish communication between the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit and the RLC (that is, calls can be routed over the data link between the two).
- You can administer the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit over the data link between the unit and the RLC. For more information, refer to “Administering multiple nodes in the network,” on page 32.

Administering multiple nodes in the network

If you are responsible for administering one or more Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units and the RLC on the host PBX, you can access them and the RLC from anywhere on the network.

Note: You do not have to install separate administration PCs for the RLC and the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit(s). You can use one administration PC to administer all units in the RemoteOffice network.

Windows PC requirements

To use Configuration Manager, the administration PC must have the following characteristics:

- IBM-compatible
- Windows 95, Windows 98, or Windows Workstation NT 4.0 with the Microsoft Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) networking component installed
- CD-ROM drive
- a pointing device (mouse)
- 32 Mbytes of RAM for Windows 95 and 98, or 64 Mbytes of RAM for Windows Workstation NT
- 48 Mbytes of available storage for Windows 95 and 98, or 64 Mbytes of available storage for Windows Workstation NT

TFTP server

A Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP) server is required for performing firmware upgrades and configuration uploads. You can use any TFTP server application. TFTP server applications are available from the Internet.

Year 2000 compliance

The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit and Configuration Manager software are Year 2000 compliant. However, you must ensure that the administration PC is Year 2000 compliant by verifying that the Windows operating system is shown in this table:

Operating system	Year 2000 compliance requirement
Windows Workstation NT 4.0	Service Pack 5 or higher
Windows 95	Version 95b
Windows 98	OK as is

Network considerations

Refer to the *Remote Office Network Engineering Guidelines* (NTP 555-8421-103) for detailed information on planning and preparing your network for the addition of IP Adapter units. The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit communicates with the host PBX using the IP network. To use the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit in these networks, you must consider the issues described in this section.

IP addressing and routing

To place and receive calls over the IP network, you must:

- physically connect the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit to the IP network
- assign a unique IP address and a subnet mask to the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit, unless using Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP)

Note: Similarly, you must assign a subnet mask, gateway, and unique IP address to the RLC on the host PBX.

- have the ability to send and receive traffic to and from the RLC on the host PBX

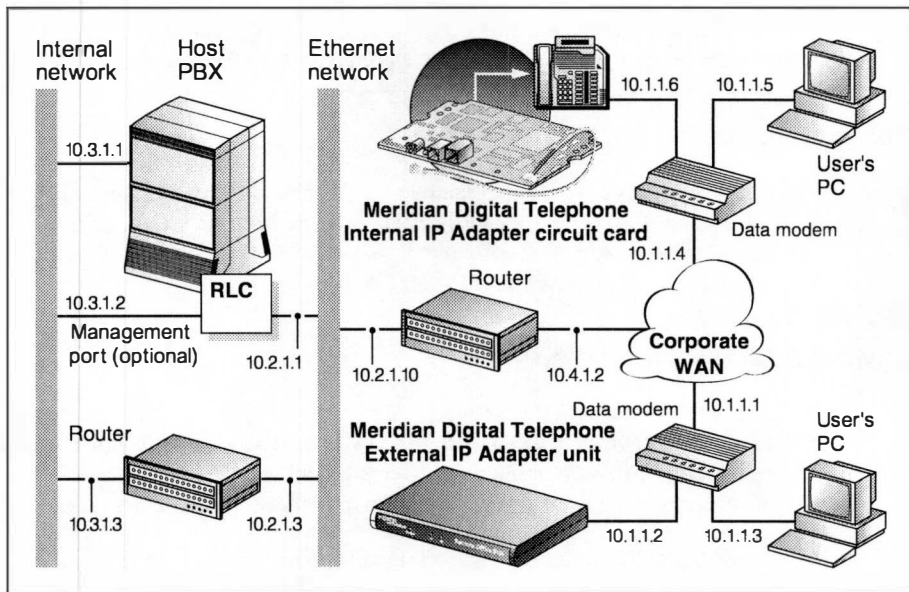
Determining DHCP Assigned IP Addresses

If you use DHCP at the remote location, determine the Remote Office Unit's IP address by checking the Network statistics for the RLC through Configuration Manager. Log onto Configuration Manager, choose the RLC as the Device Type, and then access Alarms/Stats/Logs → Network Statistics. Enter the Unit ID of the Remote Office unit that you want to review the statistics for. The DHCP assigned IP address displays at the top of the window.

Note: If you are using a Network Address Translation (NAT) router at the remote location, the IP address provided is a NAT address. To access the Remote Office unit using Telnet, ensure that the NAT router allows Telnet access to TCP port 23, and for upgrades, TCP port 69.

Network diagram

The following diagram shows the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's position in an IP network.



G101520IP

Deployment

This section presents the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit deployment models (options) that are supported by Nortel Networks.

Transport media

You can only configure the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit on the RLC to use the IP network. For further details on this configuration, refer to Priority under Remote Port Configuration in the *Reach Line Card Installation and Administration Guide* (NTP 555-8421-210).

Network Address Translation

Some network routers run the Network Address Translation (NAT) protocol that allows multiple devices in the IP network to share the same broadband IP address. An alternative to running the NAT protocol is to have the network administrator provide each device with its own broadband IP address.

Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units support NAT functionality, if this functionality is enabled on your network. You can only connect a single Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit behind a NAT router. You can connect multiple Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units behind a PNAT router. A PNAT router is a port number and network address translation router. If you are not sure whether yours is a NAT router or a PNAT router, check with your vendor.

You must configure your Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit for IP permanent allocation if it is connected behind a NAT router. You can assign a static IP address to your Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit, or you can use DHCP to obtain its IP address.

IP deployment

Before deploying your Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit, ensure that you engineer the IP network properly. You can configure a permanent (Model 1) or on-demand (Model 2) IP connection. The following guidelines describe requirements, conditions, and characteristics of each supported IP deployment option:

Model 1: IP permanent

If using DSL or a cable modem, configure an IP permanent connection.

- The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit re-establishes its TCP/IP signaling session to the RLC once per minute.
- The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit supports both static IP and, through DHCP, dynamic IP addressing
- Do not configure a remote IP address on the RLC.
- One virtual private network (VPN) supports multiple Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units.
- One Network Address Translation (NAT) router supports only one Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit.
- One Port number and Network Address Translation (PNAT) router supports multiple Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units.
- The RLC requires an IP address that the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit can access.

Model 2: IP on-demand

If your BRI routers incur toll charges, configure an IP on-demand connection.

- TCP/IP signaling sessions between the RLC and the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit close when calls end.
- Configure a static IP address for the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit on the RLC for best service.
- IP on-demand configuration supports VPNs.
- IP on-demand configuration does not support NAT or PNAT routers.
- Both the RLC and Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit require IP addresses that are accessible from the other unit.

Chapter 3

Installing the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit

In this chapter

Preparing for installation	40
Installing the Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card	42
Installing the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit	48

Preparing for installation

This section shows you how to prepare for the installation of the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit.

General Safety

The following is a list of general safety measures that should be considered when installing the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit.

- Do not ignore the warnings, in the guide, about the risks related to installing and handling hardware. For a description of the types of warnings this guide provides, refer to “Conventions used in this guide” on page xx in the Preface.
- Follow these safety precautions at all times to avoid damage or injury:
 - Plug the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit into a properly grounded power source to reduce the possibility of electric shock and damage to the unit or network.
 - Ensure that nothing rests on connection cables, and that cables cannot be tripped over or stepped on.
- Protect the equipment against Electrostatic discharge (ESD). ESD affects the performance and decreases the useful life of system components. ESD can seriously damage component parts such as circuit cards. Implement the following precautions that are recommended by computer and telephone equipment manufacturers:
 - Remove items that generate static charge from the installation site.
 - Use antistatic spray if the site is carpeted.
 - Ground yourself before handling any equipment.

Required hardware and software tools

The following is a list of required hardware and software installation tools:

- an antistatic ESD wrist strap (recommended)
- a Phillips-head screwdriver and two number eight wood screws (if you want to mount the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit on the wall)
- the Configuration Manager software installed on the administration PC (to make configuration changes or administer the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit). You can download the software by clicking on the Customer Support and Software Distribution links at the following website: **www.nortelnetworks.com**
- a TFTP server application installed on the PC (required for performing firmware upgrades)

If you do not have a TFTP server currently installed on the administration PC, you can obtain one from the Internet.

Unpacking and inspecting the equipment

Before you install the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit, ensure that the following package contents are all present and are not damaged:

- one Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter or Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter
- one power cord and power supply for each Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit
- one six-foot RJ-11 telephone cable for each Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit
- one installation kit for each Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card. Each installation kit includes the following:
 - two ferrite beads
 - one overlay
 - two mounting screws (used to attach the circuit card to the foot stand)
- the *Remote Office and RLC Release Notes* (NTP 555-8421-102)
- the *Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter Quick Start Guide*

Installing the Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card

Before you can install the Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card, you must first remove the footstand of the digital telephone. For more information about supported telephone footstands, refer to “Required footstand for Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter units” on page 19.

Note: You can only add the Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card to digital telephones that have an ATA/MCA footstand. To obtain an ATA/MCA footstand, contact your Nortel Networks distributor.

Removing the footstand of the digital telephone

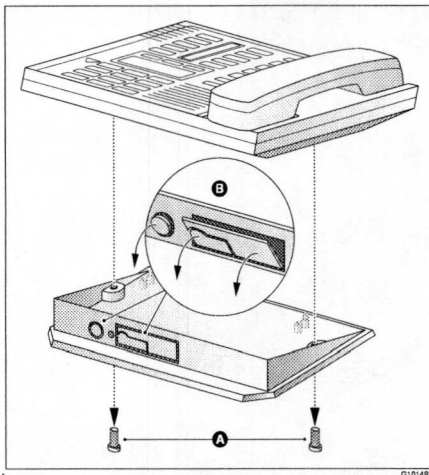
To remove the footstand of the digital telephone, complete the following procedure:

- 1 Disconnect the telephone-side connection of the RJ-11 TCM telephone cable. The other end of this cable connects to the wall jack.
- 2 Place the telephone on a flat surface with the keypad facing downward.

Note: Ensure that you are grounded with an approved ESD strap.

- 3 Unscrew and remove the footstand of the digital telephone.

Note: Refer to "A" in the following diagram.



- 4 Punch out the front panels in the footstand of the telephone to make the connections accessible when you install the Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card.

Note: Refer to "B" in the preceding diagram.

Inserting the Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card

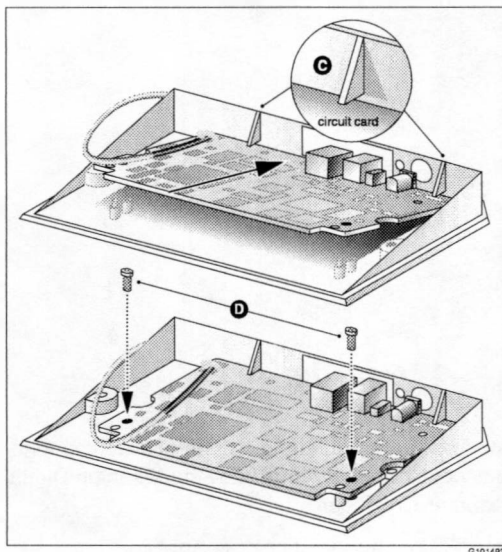
To insert the Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card into your digital telephone, complete the following procedure:

- 1 Remove the Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card from the antistatic bag.
- 2 Insert the leading edge of the Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card under the two brackets on the footstand.

Note: Refer to "C" in the following diagram for the location of the brackets.

- 3 Use both hands to push forward until the circuit card snaps into place under the brackets.

Note: Two holes on either side of the circuit card should now be aligned with the corresponding holes on the footstand.



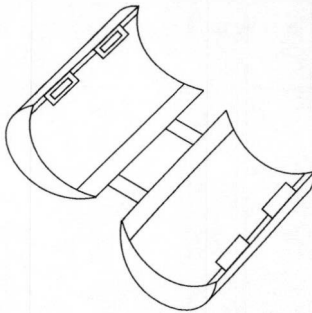
- 4 Attach the Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card to the footstand with the screws supplied in the Installation Kit.

Note: Refer to "D" in the diagram on page 44.

- 5 Plug the male RJ-11 connector on the loose end of the Meridian Line Cord attached to the Remote Office 9110 unit into the jack on the telephone.
- 6 Re-attach the footstand to the bottom of the telephone.
- 7 Apply the overlay identifying the power connection and the jack connecting your Ethernet for IP network connectivity.

Installing ferrite beads

The Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card installation kit contains two ferrite beads. Ferrite beads protect the Ethernet and power supply cable from electromagnetic interference (EMI). The two heavy pieces of ferrite come in a plastic-hinged cover that forms a block and has a hole in the middle for the cable to pass through. You must install the ferrite bead close to the plug that connects to the Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card.



To install the ferrite beads for both the Ethernet cable and the power supply cable:

- 1 Open the plastic latch at the side of the ferrite bead.

- 2 Lay a cable across the middle of the ferrite bead.

The ferrite bead must be close to the cable connector.

- 3 Loop the cable **tightly** around the ferrite bead.

There must be 2 loops of Ethernet cable around the ferrite bead (the Ethernet cable lays across the ferrite bead 3 times).

There must be 3 loops of power supply cable around the ferrite bead (the power supply cable lays across the ferrite bead 4 times).

- 4 Close and latch the ferrite bead.

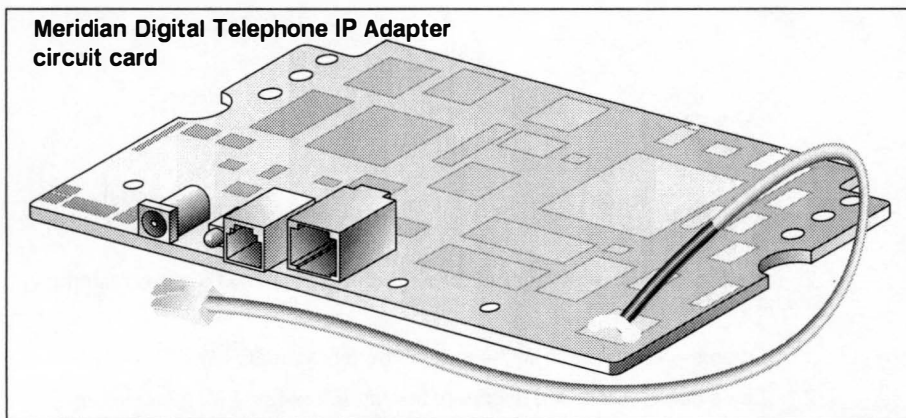
Note: You may need to adjust the cable loops to make them as tight as possible.

Connecting the Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card

Ensure that you have obtained the following telephone and Ethernet cables for your network:

- Ethernet cable

If you are connecting the Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card to a hub, you need a standard CAT5 unshielded twisted-pair (UTP) straight-through Ethernet cable. The cable should be no longer than 100 meters (325 feet).



G101482

Note: These cables are not supplied in the Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter package.

Complete the following procedure:

- 1 If you want to route calls over the IP network or administer the Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card with Configuration Manager, connect the circuit card to the Ethernet network by making the following connections:
 - a. Connect one end of the RJ-45 Ethernet cable to the ETHERNET connector on the Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card.
 - b. Connect the other end to either an Ethernet hub or network router.
- 2 Connect the Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card to the power source as follows:
 - a. Connect the appropriate cord on the power transformer to the power connector on the Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card.
 - b. Plug the power connector into an uninterruptible power supply (UPS) or wall outlet.

Powering up the Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card

As soon as you connect the Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card to the power source, the circuit card begins to power up.

During power-up, the Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card performs a self-test. The power LED flashes three times to verify all critical functionality.

If the Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card completes a successful self-test, the telephone display shows one of the following messages:

- A time and date, if connected to a PBX.
- **HOSTLESS MODE**, if not connected to a PBX.

Note: The ETHERNET TX and RX LEDs flash only in response to transmit and receive activity.

Installing the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit

You can install the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit on a desk or on the wall. The unit has the following dimensions:

- 18.2 cm (7.2 inches) wide
- 9.9 cm (3.9 inches) deep
- 2.544 cm (1 inch) high

Note: If you want to mount the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit on the wall, you must provide your own mounting hardware.

Installing the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit on a desk

To install the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit on a desk, complete the following procedure:

- 1 Turn the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit upside down.
- 2 Affix the rubber feet to the bottom of the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit.

Note: Ensure the rubber feet are securely fastened.

- 3 Place the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit in the desired location.

Installing the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit on the wall

You need the following tools:

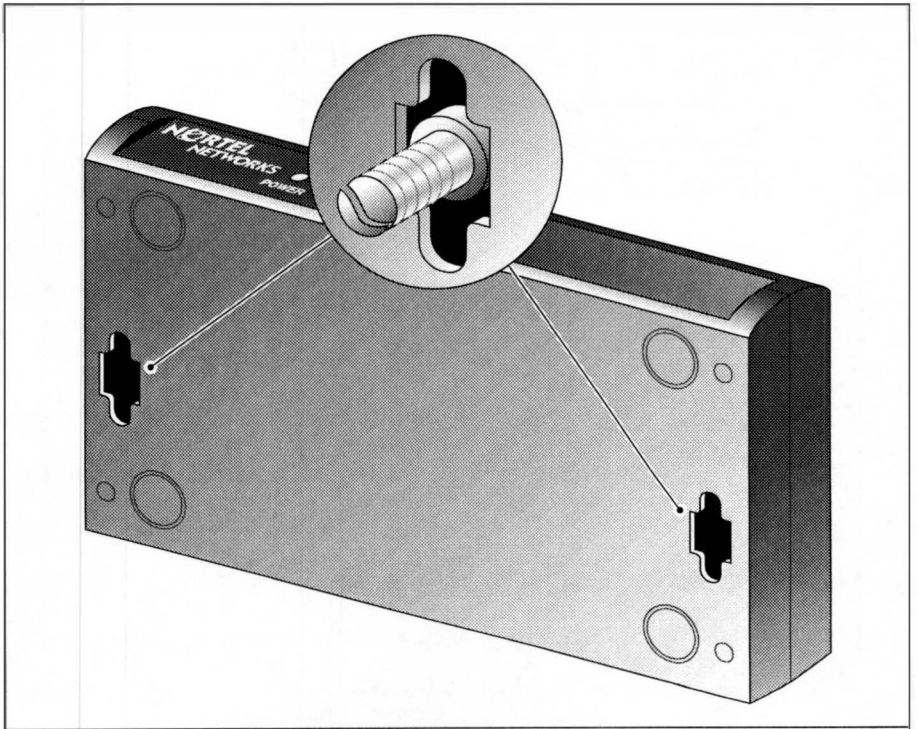
- a tape measure
- a screwdriver
- two long screws (to ensure the unit is securely mounted)

Note: Do not affix the rubber feet to the bottom of the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit. Otherwise, the unit cannot be mounted flush against the wall.

Ensure that your chosen location meets the following criteria:

- The LEDs on the front panel must be easily viewed.
- There must be enough space to accommodate the cables when they are connected to the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit.

Refer to the following diagram.



G023/P

Complete the following procedure:

- 1 Choose the location on the wall where you want to mount the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit.
- 2 Use the pre-drilled screw slots on the bottom of the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit as a guide to measure and mark the location on the wall for each mounting screw.

The measurements between the screw slots are as follows:

- from front to back panels: 2.54 cm (1 in.)
- from side to side: 15.8 cm (6.25 in.)

- 3 Mount the screws.

Note: Do not screw the screws all the way in. The heads should be screwed to about 5 mm (1/8 inch) from the wall.

- 4 Mount the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit on the screws, then gently pull it down so the screws slide into the narrow portion of the screw slots.

Note: Do not let go yet.

- 5 Make sure that the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit is securely mounted.



WARNING

Risk of equipment damage

Ensure that you fasten the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit securely to the wall. Falls can damage the unit.

Connecting the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit

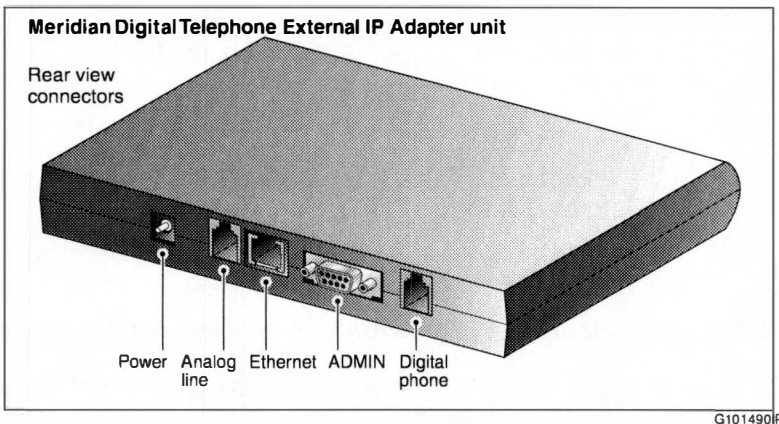
Obtain the following cables for your network. These cables are not supplied.

Note: Locate digital telephones no farther than 1230.7 meters (4000 feet) from the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit.

- Ethernet cable

If you are connecting the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit to a hub, you need a standard CAT5 unshielded twisted-pair (UTP), straight-through Ethernet cable. Ensure that this cable is no longer than 100 meters (325 feet) in length.

The following diagram shows the connections on the back panel of the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit.



Connecting the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit to the network

To connect the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit to the network, complete the following procedure:



WARNING

Risk of equipment damage

To prevent damage to the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit, ensure that the power source to the unit is turned off until you complete all connections.

- 1 Add the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit to your Ethernet network by making the following connections:
 - a. Connect one end of the Ethernet cable to the ETHERNET connector on the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit.

- b. Connect the other end to either an Ethernet hub or a network router.
- 2 Connect the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit to the power source as follows:
 - a. Connect the appropriate plug on the power transformer to the power connector on the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit.
 - b. Plug the power connector into an uninterruptible power supply (UPS) or wall outlet.
- 3 Connect the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit to the digital telephone as follows:
 - a. Connect one plug of the telephone cable supplied with the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit to the jack marked DIGITAL PHONE on the rear panel of the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit.
 - b. Plug the other end of this cable to the jack on the digital telephone.

Powering up the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit

As soon as you connect the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit to the power source, the unit begins to power up.

During power-up, the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit performs a self-test. The power LED flashes three times to verify all critical functionality, including:

- RAM memory test
- flash checksum validation

If the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit completes a successful self-test, the telephone display shows one of the following messages:

- A time and date, if connected to a PBX.
- **HOSTLESS MODE**, if not connected to a PBX.

Note: The ETHERNET TX and RX LEDs flash only in response to transmit and receive activity.

Chapter 4

Configuring the IP Adapter unit using the telephone menu

In this chapter

Before you begin	54
Running the telephone menu script	57

Before you begin

To complete initial configuration of the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit, you must use the telephone menu. After initial configuration, you can use Configuration Manager for changes, administration, and firmware upgrades. For a more detailed description of Configuration Manager, refer to the *Reach Line Card Installation and Administration Guide* (NTP 555-8421-210).

Note: You cannot access the telephone menu and Configuration Manager at the same time. You must use one or the other. If you want to use Configuration Manager to configure the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit, refer to Chapter 5, “Changing configuration settings using Configuration Manager”.

Information you need to know before configuring

Before you start configuring the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit, you should have the following information available:

- the unit ID for the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit
- the online and offline SPRE codes
- the registration and deregistration SPRE codes
- an IP address, including subnet mask and the IP address of the IP Gateway, if applicable

The network administrator can provide the above information to the end-user by filling out and delivering the Telephone Menu - Configuration Values form in Appendix A, “Planning forms”.

Accessing the telephone menu

You can access the telephone menu by quickly pressing the **Release** key four times within a three second time span. Refer to "Running the telephone menu script" on page 57.

Telephone menu key function

Key name	Key label	911x telephone menu key function
DIGIT	1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 0	user name/password entry, numeric entry
ALPHA	2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9	user name/password entry
YES	1	request menu, enable feature
NO	2	skip menu, disable feature
RELEASE	Rls, R, Goodbye (depending on your telephone set)	enter configuration mode, return to previous menu, exit system
ENTER	Hold	accept selection, move to next menu prompt
PERIOD	*	period (.), delimiter for IP addresses
BACKSPACE	#	backspace with delete

Backing up while in the telephone menu

If, at any time while working with the telephone set menu, you make a mistake, you can return to the previous level in the menu system by pressing the **Release** (Rls, R, or Goodbye depending on your telephone set) key once.

Exiting the system using the Release key

To exit the system at any time using the release key, complete the following procedure:

- 1 Press the **Release** key to move up in the menu one level at a time until you reach the top level.

Note: The **Confirm Exit?** message indicates that you have reached the top level of the menu.

- 2 The telephone display asks you to confirm your request to exit the configuration menu, similar to the following:

Confirm Exit?
[1-Yes 2-No]

IF you wish to	THEN do the following:
continue working,	a. Press 2. b. Press the Hold key. Result: The telephone display continues, as though you had entered a "No" response to the most recent option you had on the menu.
stop working with the telephone menu,	a. Press 1. b. Press the Hold key. Result: The following screen confirms that you have left Remote Office configuration. You are logged out.

Note: If you exit the system without saving any changes you have made, your changes will stay in active memory until the next system restart/reboot. After this, your changes are lost.

Running the telephone menu script

After installing and powering up the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit, complete the following procedure:

- 1 Press the release key four times within three seconds to access the telephone menu.

Result: The telephone display prompts you for a user name, similar to the following:

Enter User Name

Press the Rls key to exit.

- 2 Enter the digits **48378 (GUEST)** and then press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display prompts you for a password, similar to the following:

Enter Password

Press the Rls key to exit.

- 3 Enter the digits **48378123 (GUEST123)**, the default password, or the current password if you have customized the password and then press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display asks if you want to display shows:

Display Local IP?

[1-Yes 2-No]

IF you want to THEN do the following:

display read-only
IP parameters,

- a. Press 1.
- b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display shows the remote site's current IP address, similar to the following:

IP Address
192.168.142.102

- c. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display shows the remote site's current IP subnet mask, similar to the following:

IP Subnet Mask
255.255.255.0

- d. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display shows the remote site's current IP gateway, similar to the following:

IP Gateway
192.168.142.254

- e. Press the **Hold** key.
- f. Proceed to step 4 on page 59.

not display IP
parameters,

- a. Press 2.
 - b. Press the **Hold** key.
-

- 4 The telephone display asks if you want to restore default values, similar to the following:

Restore Default Values?

[1-Yes 2-No]

IF you want to	THEN do the following:
----------------	------------------------

retain current configuration settings for this Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit,

- Press **2**.
- Press the **Hold** key.
- Proceed to step 5 on page 60.

revert Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit configuration settings to their factory-set default values,

- Press **1**.
- Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display asks you to confirm your decision, similar to the following:

Confirm?

[1-Yes 2- No]

- Press **1** to confirm your decision, or press **2** to retain current settings.
 - Press the **Hold** key.
-

- 5 The telephone display asks if you want to modify the unit ID of the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit, similar to the following:

Modify Unit ID?

[1-Yes 2-No]

IF you want to	THEN do the following:
----------------	------------------------

modify the Unit ID of the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit,

- a. Press **1**.
- b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display prompts you for the new Unit ID and displays the current Unit ID, similar to the following:

Enter Unit ID of 911x

1

- c. Press the digit(s) of the new Unit ID.
- d. Press the **Hold** key.
- e. Proceed to step 6 on page 61.

retain current Unit ID of the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit,

- a. Press **2**.
 - b. Press the **Hold** key.
-

- 6 The telephone display asks if you want to modify the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's setting for the difference in the time at the local site and the remote site, similar to the following:

Modify Time Offset?

[1-Yes 2 - No]

Note: The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit derives the time on its telephone display from the time maintained by the host PBX. The *time offset* is the number of minutes that the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit must add to, or subtract from the host-site time (to account for different time zones, for example) to calculate the remote-site time.

IF you want to	THEN do the following:
-----------------------	-------------------------------

modify the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's current time offset between the host site and the remote site,

- a. Press **1**.
- b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display prompts you to indicate if the time at the remote site is later or earlier than the time at the host site, similar to the following:

Enter Sign [1-Add 2 -Sub]

- c. Press **1** if the time at the remote site is later than the time at the host site. This is the case when the remote site is located east of the host site.
- d. Press **2** if the time at the remote site is earlier than the time at the host site. This is the case when the remote site is located west of the host site.
- e. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display prompts you for the number of minutes in the time offset. The telephone display also shows the current time offset, similar to the following:

Enter Offset in Minutes

0

- f. Enter the number of minutes of the time offset. For example, if the time offset is 2 hours, press **1**, **2**, and **0** (for 120 minutes).
- g. Press the **Hold** key.
- h. Proceed to step 8 on page 63.

IF you want to THEN do the following:

retain the current time offset between the PBX at the host site and the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit at the remote site,	a. Press 2 . b. Press the Hold key.
---	--

- 7 The telephone display asks if you want to modify the emergency code, similar to the following:

Modify Emergency Code?

[1-Yes 2-No]

This step does not apply to Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units. Press **2** and continue to step 8 on page 63.

- 8 The telephone display asks if you want to modify the SPRE code that you must dial to go online manually, similar to the following:

Modify Online SPRE?

[1-Yes 2-No]

IF you want to THEN do the following:

modify the number that you must dial to go online with the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit in the absence of an online command in the Online/Offline Table,

a. Press 1.

b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display prompts you for a new online SPRE code. The telephone display also shows the current online SPRE code, similar to the following:

Enter Online SPRE

#99

c. Press the digits of the new online SPRE code.

Note: All SPRE codes begin with a pound sign (#). It is not necessary to press the # key when modifying a SPRE code. However, when you actually use a SPRE code, you *must* press the # key for the host PBX to recognize the digits as a SPRE code.

d. Press the **Hold** key.

e. Proceed to step 9 on page 64.

retain the current online SPRE code,

a. Press 2.

b. Press the **Hold** key.

- 9 The telephone display asks if you want to modify the SPRE code that you must dial to go offline manually, similar to the following:

Modify Offline SPRE?

[1-Yes 2-No]

IF you want to	THEN do the following:
----------------	------------------------

modify the number that you must dial to go offline with the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit in the absence of an offline command in the Online/Offline Table,

- Press 1.
- Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display prompts you for a new offline SPRE code. The telephone display also shows the current offline SPRE code, similar to the following:

Enter Offline SPRE
#98

- Press the digits of the new offline SPRE code.

Note: Refer to the Note on page 63 for information on pound signs (#) in SPRE codes.

- Press the **Hold** key.
- Proceed to step 10 on page 65.

retain the current offline SPRE code,

- Press 2.
 - Press the **Hold** key.
-

- 10 The telephone display asks if you want to modify the SPRE code that you must dial to register for, or begin a work session, the registration SPRE code, similar to the following:

Modify Re9. SPRE?

[1-Yes 2-No]

IF you want to	THEN do the following:
-----------------------	-------------------------------

modify the number that you must dial to begin a work session (in an ACD environment, for example),

- a. Press **1**.
- b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display prompts you for a new registration SPRE code. The telephone display also shows the current registration SPRE code, similar to the following:

Enter Re9. SPRE Code

#97

- c. Press the digits of the new registration SPRE code.

Note: Refer to the Note on page 63 for information on pound signs (#) in SPRE codes.

- d. Press the **Hold** key.
- e. Proceed to step 11 on page 66.

retain the current registration SPRE code,

- a. Press **2**.
 - b. Press the **Hold** key.
-

- 11 The telephone display asks if you want to modify the SPRE code that you must dial to deregister from, or end a work session, the Deregistration SPRE code, similar to the following:

Modify Dereg. SPRE?

[1-Yes 2-No]

IF you want to	THEN do the following:
-----------------------	-------------------------------

modify the number that you must dial to end a work session (in an ACD environment, for example),

- Press 1.
- Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display prompts you to enter a new deregistration SPRE code. The telephone display also shows the current deregistration SPRE code, similar to the following:

Enter Dereg. SPRE Code
#96

- Press the digits of the new deregistration SPRE code.

Note: Refer to the Note on page 63 for information on pound signs (#) in SPRE codes.

- Press the **Hold** key.
- Proceed to step 12 on page 67.

retain the current deregistration SPRE code,

- Press 2.
 - Press the **Hold** key.
-

- 12 The telephone display asks if you want to modify the IP parameters, similar to the following:

Modify IP Parameters?

[1-Yes 2-No]

IF you want to THEN do the following:

retain the current
IP parameters
configured for this
Meridian Digital
Telephone IP
Adapter unit,

- a. Press 2.
- b. Press the **Hold** key.
- c. Proceed to step 13 on page 70.

modify the IP
parameters
configured for this
Meridian Digital
Telephone IP
Adapter unit,

- a. Press 1.
- b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display asks if you want to enable Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP), similar to the following:

Enable DHCP?

[1-Yes 2-No]

allow a DHCP
server to
dynamically
assign an IP
address to this
Meridian Digital
Telephone IP
Adapter unit each
time someone logs
on with this unit,

- a. Press 1.
- b. Press the **Hold** key.
- c. Proceed to Enable DiffServ? [1-Yes 2-No] on page 69.

Note: Refer to the *Reach Line Card Installation and Administration Guide* (NTP 555-8421-210) for more information on DiffServ Codepoint and 802.1p mapping.

IF you want to	THEN do the following:
manually enter static IP information for this Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit,	a. Press 2. b. Press the Hold key. Result: The telephone display prompts you for the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's new, permanent IP address. The telephone display also shows the current setting, similar to the following: Enter IP Address 0.0.0.0 c. Press the digits of the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's permanent IP address. Use the * key for the IP address delimiter. (Refer to the table on page 55.) d. Press the Hold key. Result: The telephone display prompts you for the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's new, permanent IP subnet mask. The telephone display also shows the current setting, similar to the following: Enter IP Subnet Mask 255.0.0.0 e. Press the digits of the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's permanent IP subnet mask. f. Press the Hold key. Result: The telephone display asks if you want to modify the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's IP gateway, similar to the following: Modify IP Gateway? [1-Yes 2-No]

Note: Assigning static IP addressing to a Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit allows you to use the address information to identify the unit on the IP network. This makes the unit more accessible for online administration and maintenance.

IF you want to THEN do the following:

manually enter static IP information for this Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit, (continued)

g. Press **2** and proceed to **Enable DiffServ?** [1-Yes 2-No], below, to leave the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's IP gateway as it is. Press **1** to modify the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's IP gateway.

h. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display prompts you for the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's new, permanent IP gateway. The telephone display also shows the current setting, similar to the following:

Enter IP Gateway
0.0.0.0

i. Press the digits of the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's permanent IP gateway. Use the * key for the IP address delimiter. (Refer to the table on page 55.)

j. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display asks if you want to enable DiffServ, similar to the following:

Enable DiffServ?
[1-Yes 2-No]

enable prioritizing of voice packets in the IP header (DiffServ),

a. Press **1**.

b. Press the **Hold** key.

c. Proceed to **Enable 802.1p Mapping?** [1-Yes 2-No] on page 70.

Note: Refer to the *Reach Line Card Installation and Administration Guide* for information on DiffServ Codepoint and 802.1p mapping.

IF you want to	THEN do the following:
not enable prioritizing of voice packets in the IP header,	a. Press 2. b. Press the Hold key. Result: The telephone display asks if you want to enable 802.1p mapping, similar to the following: Enable 802.1p Mapping? [1-Yes 2-No]
enable prioritizing of voice packets in the IEEE Media Access Control layer (802.1p),	a. Press 1. b. Press the Hold key. c. Proceed to step 13, below.
not enable prioritizing of voice packets in the IEEE Media Access Control layer,	a. Press 2. b. Press the Hold key.

- 13** The telephone display asks if you want to modify RLC Parameters, similar to the following:

Modify RLC Parameters?
[1-Yes 2-No]

IF you want to	THEN do the following:
retain the current RLC settings,	a. Press 2. b. Press the Hold key. c. Proceed to step 18 on page 76.

IF you want to THEN do the following:

modify the current a. Press **1**.

RLC settings,
(continued)

b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display prompts you to enter the RLC port number that you want to process this Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's traffic. The telephone display also shows the RLC port number currently configured to handle this traffic, similar to the following:

Enter Port # of RLC

7

c. Press the digit(s) of the new port number.

d. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display prompts you to enter the security level that you want to assign to this Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit. The telephone display also shows the current security level, similar to the following:

Enter Security Level

1

allow unrestricted
access to the
Meridian Digital
Telephone IP
Adapter unit and
the RLC,

a. Press **1** to select No security.

b. Press the **Hold** key.

c. Proceed to Enable IP? [1-Yes 2-No] on page 72.

IF you want to	THEN do the following:
restrict access to the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit according to a ten digit security code maintained by the security ID of the qualified callers,	- Press 2 to select Provisioned Security. - Press the Hold key. Result: The telephone display prompts you for the RLC's Inbound Security ID, similar to the following: Inbound Security ID - Enter the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's 10-digit inbound security ID. - Press the Hold key. Result: The telephone display prompts you for the RLC's outbound security ID, similar to the following: Outbound Security ID - Enter the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's 10-digit outbound security ID. - Press the Hold key. Result: The telephone display asks if you want to enable the IP connection to the RLC from this Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit, similar to the following: Enable IP? [1-Yes 2-No]

IF you want to THEN do the following:

enable IP
connection to the
RLC from this
Meridian Digital
Telephone IP
Adapter unit,

- a. Press **1**.
- b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display prompts you to enter an IP address for the RLC and shows the current value it has for this address, similar to the following:

Enter RLC IP Address
192.68.243.254

- c. Press the digits of the new RLC IP address.
- d. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display prompts you for the IP Signaling setting for this Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit and displays the current setting, similar to the following:

IP Signaling
1-Permanent 2-OnDemand:2

- e. Choose from the options presented.
- f. Press the **Hold** key.
- g. Proceed to step 14 , below.

disable IP
connection to the
RLC from this
Meridian Digital
Telephone IP
Adapter unit,

- a. Press **2**.
- b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: Proceed to step 19 on page 77.

- 14** The telephone display asks if you want to modify the local calling settings on this Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit, similar to the following:

Modify Local Calling?
[1-Yes 2-No]

This step does not apply to Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units. Press **2** and continue to step 15 on page 74.

- 15** The telephone display asks if you want to modify the current analog localization setting for this Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit, similar to the following:

Modify Localization?

[1-Yes 2-No]

This step does not apply to Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units. Press **2** and continue to step 16, below.

- 16** The telephone display asks if you want to modify the current modem tones setting for this Remote Office 911x series unit, similar to the following:

Modify Modem Tones?

[1-Yes 2-No]

This step does not apply to Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units. Press **2** and continue to step 17 on page 75.

- 17 The telephone display asks if you want to configure the type of telephone set attached to this Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit, similar to the following:

Configure Set Type?
[1-Yes 2-No]

IF you want to THEN do the following:

modify the
current telephone
set type
configuration for
this Meridian
Digital Telephone
IP Adapter unit,

- a. Press 1.
b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display asks what type of telephone set is connected to the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit, similar to the following:

Is this a M2006?
[1-Yes 2-No]

- c. If the telephone display does not show the model of your telephone set, press 2.
d. Press the **Hold** key.

Note: The telephone display repeats this question until it receives an affirmative answer with the following set types: M2008, M2216, M2616, M2616CT, M3310, M3820, M3902, M3903, M3904, M3905, or OTHER. Choose OTHER if you are using a Nortel Networks digital telephone set with a display that is not included in the preceding list.

- e. When the telephone display shows the model of your telephone set, press 1 and the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display asks you to confirm your identification of your telephone set type, similar to the following:

Are you sure?
M2616?-[1-Yes 2-No]

IF you want to THEN do the following:

- | | |
|---|---|
| modify the
current telephone
set type
configuration for
this Meridian
Digital Telephone
IP Adapter unit,
(continued) | f. If this is not the correct model number of your telephone set, press 2 and return to step e, above.
g. If this is the correct model number of your telephone set, press 1 .
h. Press the Hold key.
i. Proceed to step 18, below. |
| not modify the
current telephone
set type
configuration for
this Meridian
Digital Telephone
IP Adapter unit, | a. Press 1 .
b. Press the Hold key. |
-

- 18** The telephone display asks if you want to save the configuration you have just entered, similar to the following:

Save Configuration?
[1-Yes 2-No]

IF you want to THEN do the following:

- | | |
|--|---|
| discard your most
recent
configuration
changes, | a. Press 2 .
b. Press the Hold key.

Result: The telephone display asks if you want to reboot the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit, similar to the following:
Reboot Unit?
[1-Yes 2-No] |
| | c. Proceed to step 19 on page 77. |

IF you want to THEN do the following:

retain your most recent configuration changes,

- a. Press **1**.
- b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display asks you to confirm your instruction to overwrite current configuration settings with your latest configuration changes, similar to the following:

Confirm?

[1-Yes 2-No]

revert to the previous configuration settings,

- a. Press **2**.
- b. Proceed to step 19, below.

keep your most recent configuration changes as system settings,

- a. Press **1**.
 - b. Proceed to step 19, below.
-

Note: Do not interrupt the power to the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit during the save process.

- 19** The telephone display asks if you want to reboot the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit, similar to the following:

Reboot Unit?

[1-Yes 2-No]

IF you want to THEN do the following:

not reboot the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit,

- a. Press **2**.
- b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: Return to Display Local IP? [1-Yes 2-No] on page 57.

IF you want to THEN do the following:

reboot the
Meridian Digital
Telephone IP
Adapter unit,

- a. Press 1.

Result: Press the **Hold** key.

The telephone display asks if you want to shut the system down or restart the system, similar to the following:

0-Shut Down 1-Restart

restart the
Meridian Digital
Telephone IP
Adapter unit,

- a. Press 1.

- b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: The telephone display asks you to confirm your decision to restart the system, similar to the following:

Confirm?

[1-Yes 2-No]

abort your
instruction to
restart the
Meridian Digital
Telephone IP
Adapter unit,

- a. Press 2.

- b. Press the **Hold** key.

Result: Return to Display Local IP? [1-Yes 2-No] on page 57.

IF you want to	THEN do the following:
confirm your instruction to restart the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit,	a. Press 1 to restart the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit. b. Press the Hold key. Result: The telephone display informs you that it is restarting the system, similar to the following: Restarting the System Please Wait... c. When the system restarts, the telephone display returns to its normal state, showing the time and date, similar to the following: JAN 01 12:13 P d. If the telephone is connected to a PBX, it is ready to send and receive telephone calls as normal. e. If the telephone is not connected to a PBX, the telephone display shows a message similar to the following:
shut down the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit, thereby disabling all functionality on the unit,	HOSTLESS MODE a. Press 0. b. Press the Hold key. Result: The telephone display asks you to confirm your instruction to shut down the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit, similar to the following: Confirm? [1-Yes 2-No] Note: Only choose the shut down option when you have physical access to the remote unit. You must be able to disconnect then reconnect power to the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit to be able to access the unit again.

IF you want to	THEN do the following:
abort your instruction to shut down the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit,	a. Press 2. b. Press the Hold key. Result: Return to Display Local IP? [1-Yes 2-No] on page 57.
confirm your instruction to shut down the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit,	a. Press 1. b. Press the Hold key. Result: The telephone display prompts you to turn off the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit, similar to the following: Please remove System Power

Chapter 5

Changing configuration settings using Configuration Manager

In this chapter

Before you begin	82
Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit system configuration	83
IP configuration	88
RLC connection configuration	91

Before you begin

This section describes the configuration settings that apply to Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units. If you need remote serial access to Configuration Manager, use a remote management software application.

Note: Nortel Networks recommends that you use the telephone menu set to perform the initial configuration for the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit. Refer to Chapter 4, “Configuring the IP Adapter unit using the telephone menu.” Once configured, you can then use the Configuration Manager for changes, administration, and firmware upgrades. For a more detailed description of Configuration Manager, refer to the *Reach Line Card Installation and Administration Guide* (NTP 555-8421-210).

Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit system configuration

This section describes the settings that apply to the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit system.

Note: The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit configuration follows the same configuration property sheets in Configuration Manager as the Remote Office 911x unit. To configure the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit, choose View → Device Type → 911x. Help information for Remote Office 911x series units applies to Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units, unless otherwise stated.

Getting there 911x → Configuration Manager → 911x System Configuration

Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit System Configuration property sheet

SYSTEM CONFIGURATION

Unit ID: Node Name:

DSP Gain: dB

Time Offset: Emergency Activation Code:

SPRUE Codes:

Online	Offline	Registration	DeRegistration
# 99	# 90	# 97	# 96

Local Call:

Status: ☐ Enable ☒ Disable Local Calling Key Position: Autohold: ☐ Enable ☒ Disable

Local DN: Analog Localization: Modem Tones: ☐ Enable ☒ Disable

Phone Type: Add on Module Type:

OK Default Send Retrieve Help

Configuring the system settings

To configure the system settings, complete the following procedure:

- 1 Complete the fields as described in the "Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter System Configuration field descriptions", on page 85.
- 2 Click on the **OK** button to save the information in the temporary work file.
- 3 Click on the **Send** button to update the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit with the new information.

IF you are**THEN**

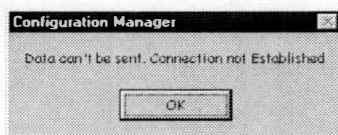
logged on to the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit,

the changes are written into the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's buffer.

To save the changes in flash memory, choose Upload/Download › Save to Flash from the Menu Bar.

not logged on to the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit,

the Confirmation Manager dialog box displays, similar to the following:



Do one of the following:

- a. Log on to the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit and then click on the **Send** button.
 - b. Save the changes to a file on your administration PC using the File -> Save As command.
-

Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter System Configuration field descriptions

Field	Description
Unit ID	Assign a number between 1 and 20 to the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit that you are configuring. This number: ■ must be different from numbers assigned to other units connected to the same RLC ■ must be consistent with the configuration on the RLC for this unit ID
Node Name	Enter your site name. The node name identifies this Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit in the remote network.
DSP Gain	Select the number of decibels (dB) that you want to add to, or subtract from, the strength of the incoming signal before the DSP processes it. Valid options are: 9, 6, 3, 0, -3, -6, -9, -12, and -15. Note: Change this setting at the remote site to address a problem with signal strength at the host site.
Time Offset	Click on the up or down arrows to change the time zone difference from the host PBX. Note: The time can be changed in 15-minute intervals only.
Emergency Activation Code	This setting does not apply to Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapters.

Field	Description
SPRE Codes: Online	Enter the SPRE code (maximum seven digits) that is used to place your site into online mode, or accept the default. The default is #99. Note: The SPRE code is automatically prefixed with the pound sign. This means users must dial # before the SPRE code when going into online mode.
SPRE Codes: Offline	Enter the SPRE code (maximum seven digits) that is used to put your site into offline mode, or accept the default code. The default is #98. Note: The SPRE code is automatically prefixed with the pound sign. This means users must dial # before the SPRE code when going into offline mode.
SPRE Codes: Registration	Enter the SPRE code (maximum seven digits) that engages the user's telephone with a multi-user or dynamic port, or accept the default code. The default is #97. Note: The SPRE code is automatically prefixed with a pound sign (#). This means users must dial # before the SPRE code when registering for a port.
SPRE Codes: DeRegistration	Enter the SPRE code (maximum seven digits) that disengages the user from a multi-user or dynamic port, or accept the default code. The default is #96. Note: The SPRE code is automatically prefixed with a pound (#) sign. This means users must dial # before the SPRE code when disengaging from a port.
Local Call: Status	This setting does not apply to Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapters.
Local Call: Local Calling Key Position	This setting does not apply to Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapters.

Field	Description
Local Call: Autohold	This setting does not apply to Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapters.
Local DN	This setting does not apply to Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapters.
Analog Localization	This setting does not apply to Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapters.
Modem Tones	This setting does not apply to Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapters.
Phone Type	Select the type of digital telephone that the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit attaches to, using the drop down list box. Valid options are: M2008, M2216, M2616, M2616CT, M3310, M3820, M3902, M3903, M3904, M3905, and OTHER.
Addon Module Type	Select the type of addon module attached to the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's telephone, if the telephone is an M3904 or M3905 telephone. Valid options are: DBA, KBA, and Not Configured.

IP configuration

This section explains how to change the IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway for the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit.

Getting there 911x → Configuration Manager → IP Configuration

IP Configuration property sheet

IP CONFIGURATION

Automatic DHCP Configuration

☒ Obtain IP Address from Server

☐ Configure IP Address

IP Address

IP Network Mask

IP Gateway

DHCPv6 CodePoint

☐ Enable

☒ Disable

802.1p Mapping

☐ Enable

☒ Disable

OK

Default

Send

Retrieve

Help

88

Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter Installation and Administration Guide

Configuring IP information

To change the IP information, complete the following procedure:

- 1 Complete the fields of the IP Configuration property sheet as described in "IP Configuration field descriptions", on page 90.
- 2 Click on the **OK** button to save the information in the temporary work file.
- 3 Click on the **Send** button to update the **Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit with** the new information.

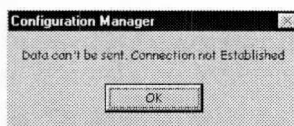
IF you are**THEN**

logged on to the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit,

the changes are written into the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's buffer.
To save the changes in flash memory, choose Upload/Download › Save to Flash from the Menu Bar.

not logged on to the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit,

the Configuration Manager dialog box displays, similar to the following:



Do one of the following:

- a. Log on to the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit, then click on the **Send** button again.
- b. Save the changes to a file on your administration PC.

-
- 4 Restart the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit.

Note: To restart a Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit, use the procedure found under "Restarting the system", on page 147.

IP Configuration field descriptions

Field	Description
Automatic DHCP Configuration	■ Click on the Obtain IP Address from Server option button to allow the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit to use an IP address dynamically assigned by a DHCP server on the IP network. Result: Configuration Manager disables the IP Address, IP Network Mask, and IP Gateway fields. ■ Click on the Configure IP Address option button to manually configure a static IP address for the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit. Result: Configuration Manager enables the IP Address, IP Network Mask, and IP Gateway fields.
Address Information—IP Address, IP Network Mask, IP Gateway	If you clicked on the Configure IP Address option button, enter the IP address, IP network mask, and IP gateway in the appropriate fields.
DiffServ CodePoint	■ Click on the Enable option button if you want to allow DiffServ prioritizing in the IP header. ■ Click on the Disable option button if you do not want to allow DiffServ prioritizing.
802.1p Mapping	■ Click on the Enable option button, if you want to allow 802.1p prioritizing in the IEEE Media Access Control layer. ■ Click on the Disable option button, if you do not want to allow 802.1p prioritizing.

RLC connection configuration

This section shows you how to change the RLC connection information needed by the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit to establish connections with the RLC on the host PBX.

Getting there 911x → Configuration Manager → RLC Connection Configuration

RLC Connection Configuration property sheet

RLC CONNECTION CONFIGURATION

Unit ID: RLC Port Number:

IP Connection: ☐ Enable ☒ Disable

IP Address:

IP Signaling: ☒ Permanent ☐ On Demand

PSTN Connection: ☐ Enable ☒ Disable

PSTN Number to Connect to RLC:

Security Level:

Security Id:

Outbound Security ID:

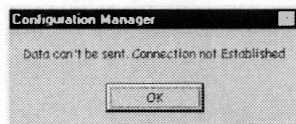
Inbound Security ID:

Configuring the RLC connection information

To change the RLC connection information, complete the following procedure:

- 1 Complete the fields of the RLC Connection property sheet as described in "RLC Connection configuration field descriptions" on page 93.
- 2 Click on the **OK** button to save the information in the temporary work file.
- 3 Click on the **Send** button to update the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit with the new information.

IF you are	THEN
logged on to the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit,	the changes are written into the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's buffer. To save the changes in flash memory, choose Upload/Download › Save to Flash.
not logged on to the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit,	the Configuration Manager dialog box displays, similar to the following:



Do one of the following:

- a. Log on to the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit, then click on the **Send** button again.
- b. Save the changes to a file on your administration PC.

RLC Connection configuration field descriptions

Field	Description
Unit ID	The RLC's non-configurable unit ID of 254.
RLC Port Number	Enter the RLC voice port number designated for the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit on the RLC Remote connection configuration property sheet.
IP Connection	Click on the Enable option button, if you want to route calls over your IP network. Click on the Disable option button, if you do not want to route calls over your IP network.
IP Connection: IP Address	Enter the RLC's IP address. The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit uses this IP address to connect to the RLC over the IP network.
IP Connection: IP Signaling	Click on the Permanent option button to configure this port's IP connection to be up at all times. Click on the On Demand option button to configure this port's IP connection to be up only when needed. Refer to "Deployment", on page 36 for help in determining which setting to configure.
PSTN Connection	This setting does not apply to Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapters.
PSTN Connection: PSTN Number to Connect to RLC	This setting does not apply to Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapters.

Field	Description
Security Level	Select No Security from the drop down list box if you do not want the RLC to perform a security check. Select Provision ID from the drop down list box to require the RLC to perform a security check every time a user tries to log on to a remote unit. This action enables the Security ID fields.
Security ID: Outbound Security ID	Enter the 10-digit Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit security identifier.
Security ID: Inbound Security ID	Enter the 10-digit RLC security identifier.

Chapter 6

Using the digital telephone

In this chapter

Modes of operation	96
Placing and receiving calls	98
Indicator updates	100
Display messages	101
Telephone features operation	103
Going online and offline	105

Modes of operation

Digital telephones at your Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit site can operate in the following modes:

- host-controlled
- online to host PBX
- offline from host PBX

Host-controlled mode

Host-controlled mode means that the host PBX controls the following:

- some display messages that appear on your telephone
- indicator updates such as the message waiting indicator
- calls that you receive from or place to someone at the host PBX site

In host-controlled mode, a voice path is established to the host PBX and signaling messages are passed between the host PBX and the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit.

Online mode

When in online mode, calls initiated on the host calling key are directed through the host PBX. The display on your digital telephone set shows **Online Mode**.

Offline mode

When in offline mode, you cannot place or receive calls through the host PBX. The display on all digital telephone sets show **Offline Mode**.

What controls the online and offline modes

The online and offline modes can be controlled by one or both of the following:

- online/offline schedule configured for your site on the RLC at the host PBX

- special prefix (SPRE) codes configured on the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit at your site

For more information, refer to “SPRE Codes: Online” on page 86 and “SPRE Codes: Offline” on page 86.

Placing and receiving calls

Place outgoing calls by pressing the calling key to receive an outgoing line.

Receiving incoming calls

A Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit receives host-controlled incoming calls over the IP network.

Methods for placing outgoing calls

You can place an outbound call from a Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit station in one of the following ways:

- method 1: Lift the telephone handset.
This method automatically initiates a host-controlled call.
- method 2: Press the calling key.
Pressing the host calling key initiates a host-controlled call.

Placing a host-controlled call

To place a host-controlled call, complete the following procedure:

- 1 Lift the telephone handset or press the host calling key.

Result: You hear a dial tone over a connection with the host PBX.

Note: If a connection to the host PBX cannot be established within a time-out period or no resources are available to carry the call, you hear a reorder dial tone (fast busy signal), and one of the following messages appears on the telephone display:

- Release and Try Again
- Bandwidth Limit
- DSP Limit

Bandwidth limit indicates that there was not enough bandwidth available in the system to complete the requested task.

DSP limit indicates that there were not enough available DSP resources in the system to complete the requested task.

- 2 Dial the number of the party you want to call.

Result: The host PBX receives and processes the dialed digits, and rings the called party.

To call another station at your site—host-controlled mode

Station-to-station calls should be attempted through the host PBX to allow all stations configured as multiple appearance DN (MADNs) to ring and provide access to voice mail, if the call is not answered.

If a connection cannot be established through the host PBX, you can use the local calling key to place the station-to-station call.

- 1 Lift the telephone handset or press the host calling key.

Result: A connection is established with the host PBX and you hear a dial tone. The indicator beside the host calling key lights up.

- 2 Dial the extension of the party you wish to reach.

Result: The host PBX receives and processes the dialed digits, and rings the station as well as any other stations that include the dialed DN as an MADN key.

Note: The MADN stations could be located at another site (such as the host PBX site). If the call is answered by a MADN station at another site, a voice path to the host PBX is established and the call proceeds.

Indicator updates

Digital telephone indicators reflect the current status of the telephone. For example, they identify when calls are waiting, active, on hold, or (if your office has voice mail) that messages are waiting.

The host PBX updates indicators when a connection between the host PBX and Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit is active.

Host-controlled indicator updates

The host PBX automatically updates indicators for host-controlled features each time any of the following occur:

- the host PBX receives an incoming call from your site
- the host PBX processes an outgoing call from your site
- the host PBX sends a message waiting indicator (MWI) update

Note: When online with a permanent connection to the host PBX, a remote site receives constant telephone indicator updates.

Display messages

This section describes the messages that can appear on your digital telephone display.

Message descriptions

Message	Description
Going Offline in 30 Secs Going Offline in 20 Secs Going Offline in 10 Secs	This message warns you that all digital telephones at this site are about to go offline in the number of seconds indicated. If any calls are active, they disconnect when the offline mode activates. To override, enter the online SPRE code.
Hostless Mode	The connection to the host PBX cannot be established. The host PBX may be temporarily unavailable. Note: If Hostless Mode persists, contact your system administrator.
Logged In	If this message appears on your station, your station participates in a multi-user or dynamic pool port on the RLC. Your station is logged on. Note: This message only displays for approximately 10 seconds.
Offline Mode	This means you cannot place calls through the host PBX. Notes: ■ If you need to place a call through the host PBX while in offline mode, enter the online SPRE code. Refer to “SPRE Codes: Online” on page 86 for further details. ■ The Offline Mode message is not persistent on the M3903 telephone display. This message sometimes does not appear for the entire Offline period.

Message	Description
Online Mode	This means you can place and receive calls through the host PBX.
Port Already in Use	If this message appears on your station, your station participates in a multi-user or dynamic pool port on the RLC. This message appears if the port that you are attempting to log on to is already being used by someone else.
Port Not Logged In	If this message appears on your station, your station participates in a multi-user or dynamic pool port on the RLC. Your station is logged off.
Release and Try Again	There are not enough DSP resources to process the call. Try again at a later time. Note: Ensure to initiate calls from the appropriate calling key according to the following parameters: ■ Use the host calling key to call someone at the host PBX site.
Bandwidth Limit	There is not enough bandwidth to complete the requested action.
DSP Limit	There were not enough DSP resources to complete the requested action.

Telephone features operation

This section describes how to use the following digital telephone features in host-controlled modes:

- call forward
- call transfer
- call waiting
- conference
- emergency service calls
- hold

Emergency service calls

Do not place an emergency service call, for instance a call for police, fire department, or ambulance help, using a telephone connected to a Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit.

Hold

When you press the Hold key on a host-controlled call, the holding party receives the Hold treatment defined on the host PBX. For example, if the host PBX is configured to play music for the holding parties, then the holding party hears music. You can press the local calling key to place a new call.

Call Waiting

Since the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit does not use host-controlled indicators, there are never any indicator conflicts when a call is presented to the station.

The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit always checks the status of your station before ringing it. If your station is busy with a call, the alert tone is sounded instead.

How Call Waiting works in host-controlled mode

If you are busy with a host-controlled call, incoming calls are handled as follows:

- An incoming host-controlled call is directed to the call waiting key by the host PBX.
- An incoming locally controlled call flashes the local calling key indicator and sounds the alert tone.

Call Transfer

To transfer a call, complete the following procedure:

- 1 Press the **Transfer** key.

Result: The active call is placed on hold and you hear dial tone.

- 2 Dial the number that you want to transfer the call to.

- 3 Press the **Transfer** key again to complete the transfer.

Note: You can press the Transfer key while the call is still ringing, or after the called party answers.

Going online and offline

Your Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit site can operate in either online mode or offline mode. This is controlled by one or both of the following:

- SPRE codes to manually toggle between online and offline modes.
- An online/offline schedule on the host PBX to automatically toggle your site between online and offline modes.

For a description of the online and offline modes, refer to “Modes of operation” on page 96.

Using the SPRE code to place your unit in online mode

To use the SPRE code to place your unit in online mode, complete the following procedure:

- 1 Lift the telephone handset, or press the local calling key.
- 2 Press the pound (#) key followed by the online SPRE code.

Note: Contact your system administrator for the online SPRE code.

Result: The connection to the host PBX is initiated and negotiated with the host PBX. During this negotiation period (up to five seconds), you cannot place host-controlled calls. When negotiation is completed and connection to the host PBX has been established, Online Mode appears on the telephone display and the system is ready to place and receive host calls.

Using the SPRE code to place your unit in offline mode

To use the SPRE code to place your unit in offline mode, complete the following procedure:

- 1 Dial the pound (#) key followed by the offline SPRE code.

Note: Contact your system administrator for the online SPRE code.

Result: Offline Mode appears on the telephone display.

Overriding an automatic offline event from the host PBX

If the host PBX attempts to process an offline event while you are on a host-controlled call, you are alerted by both an audible alert and a display message indicating that you are about to go offline in 30, 20, or 10 seconds. If you ignore this warning, your call disconnects.

To prevent your call from being disconnected, enter the online SPRE code. You can do this without putting your call on hold first. The online SPRE code cancels the offline event, leaving your telephone online until the next offline event occurs.

Chapter 7

Administration

In this chapter

Changing the administration password	108
Creating a backup configuration file	110
Restoring the configuration	113
Display logs	118
Statistics screens	122
Verifying the firmware and software version	139
Obtaining the latest upgrade file	141
Extracting upgrade files from the download file	142
Performing a firmware upgrade	144
Restarting the system	147
Performing a software upgrade	148

Changing the administration password

Two layers of password security protect the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's configuration. If you want to secure the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's configuration, then change the following items:

- Configuration Manager password
This password prevents unauthorized users from performing offline configuration changes.
- Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's password
This password prevents unauthorized users from performing online changes of the configuration residing in the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's flash memory.

Note: Make sure that you record the password and store it in a safe, secure location. If you forget or lose the password, contact your Nortel Networks customer support representative.

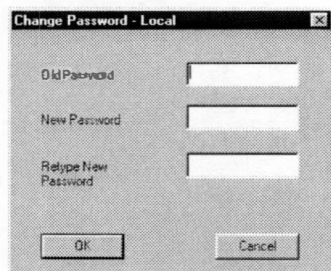
Getting there 911x → Configuration Manager

Changing the Configuration Manager password

To change the Configuration Manager password, complete the following procedure:

- 1 From the Menu Bar, choose Connect → Change Password → Local.

Result: The Change Password dialog displays, similar to the following:



- 2 Complete the fields in the Change Password - Local dialog box.
- 3 Click on the **OK** button.

Changing the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's password

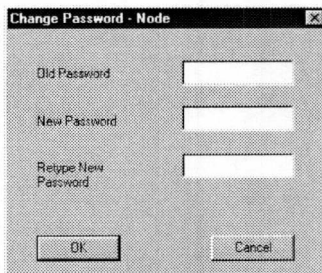
To change the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's password, complete the following procedure:

ATTENTION

Do not change the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's password until the system is up and working.

- 1 From the Menu Bar, choose Connect → Change Password → Node.

Result: The Change Password dialog box displays, similar to the following:



- 2 Complete the fields in the Change Password - Node dialog box.
- 3 Click on the **OK** button.

Creating a backup configuration file

Create a backup copy of the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's configuration by downloading the configuration flash memory to a text file on your administration PC. Nortel Networks recommends that you create a backup of your configuration file whenever you make configuration changes or after you perform a firmware upgrade.

Storing backup configuration files

The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit is an extension of the telecommunications and data network. It is extremely important that you keep a backup copy of the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's configuration. If the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's flash memory or configuration becomes corrupted or is lost, you can easily restore it.

Store the configuration file in a safe, secure location, such as on backup tape or other media that is stored offsite.

Nortel Networks recommends that you keep the backup files indefinitely.

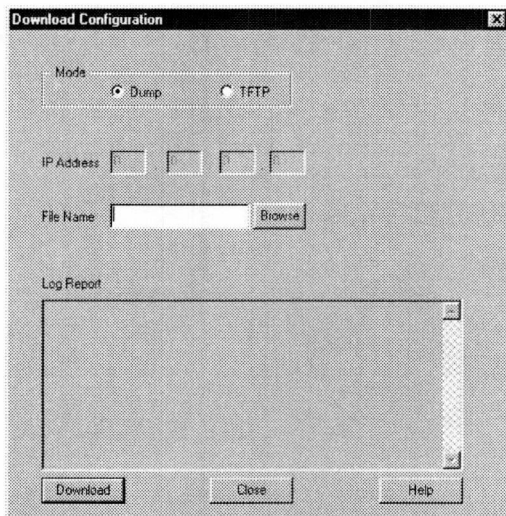
Getting there 911x → Configuration Manager

Creating the backup file

To create the backup file:

- 1 From the Menu Bar, choose Upload/Download → Download Config.

Result: The Download Configuration dialog box displays, similar to the following:



- 2 Choose the mode you want to use for the file transfer according to the following table:

IF you wish to save the configuration file to	THEN do the following:
the administration PC,	Click on the Dump option button.
a different location on the IP network,	1 Click on the TFTP option button. Result: This enables the IP Address fields. 2 Enter the IP address of the PC that you want to save the configuration file on.

- 3 Click on the **Browse** button and navigate to the folder where you want to keep the configuration text file.

- 4 Enter a name for the file in the File name field.

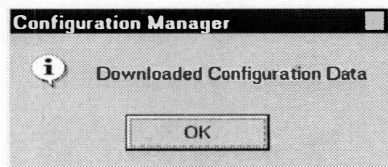
Note: This configuration file becomes your backup file, so ensure the file name is meaningful. The file name's extension must be .TXT.

- 5 Click on the **Download** button.

Result: The Download configuration dialog box closes, and the following message displays in the status bar at the bottom of the screen:

Downloading Config From Board

When the download is complete, the Downloaded Configuration Data dialog box displays, similar to the following:



- 6 Click on the **OK** button.

Restoring the configuration

Restore the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's configuration in flash memory by uploading a configuration text file from your administration PC.

Perform the upload over the IP network using the TFTP protocol. You must have a TFTP server application running on your administration PC. The TFTP server's base directory must point to the directory that contains the configuration file you want to upload.

Before you begin

Before you can upload the configuration file to the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit, you must complete the following steps:

- 1 Start the TFTP server application.
- 2 Ensure the TFTP base directory points to the location of the configuration file.

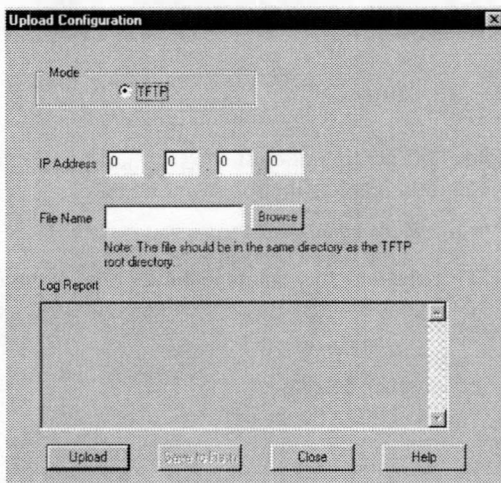
Getting there 911x → Configuration Manager

Uploading a configuration file over the IP network

To upload a configuration file over the IP network, complete the following procedure:

- 1 Navigate to the location of the configuration file.
- 2 From the Menu Bar, choose → Upload/Download → Upload Config.

Result: The Upload Configuration dialog box displays, similar to the following..



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Upload Configuration". It contains the following elements:

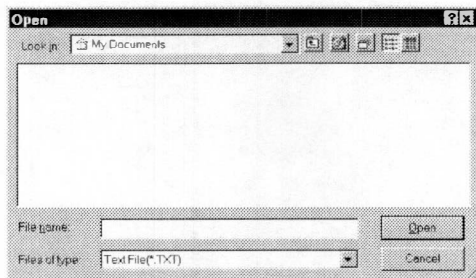
- Mode:** A radio button labeled "TFTP" is selected.
- IP Address:** Four input fields, each containing the digit "0".
- File Name:** A text input field followed by a "Browse" button.
- Note:** A text note stating "Note: The file should be in the same directory as the TFTP root directory."
- Log Report:** A large, empty rectangular area for displaying logs.
- Buttons:** At the bottom, there are four buttons: "Upload", "Save Defaults", "Close", and "Help".

- 3 Enter the IP address of the TFTP server in the IP Address fields.

Note: Since the TFTP server application is running on your administration PC, this is the IP address of that PC.

- 4 Click on the **Browse** button.

Result: The Open dialog box displays, similar to the following:

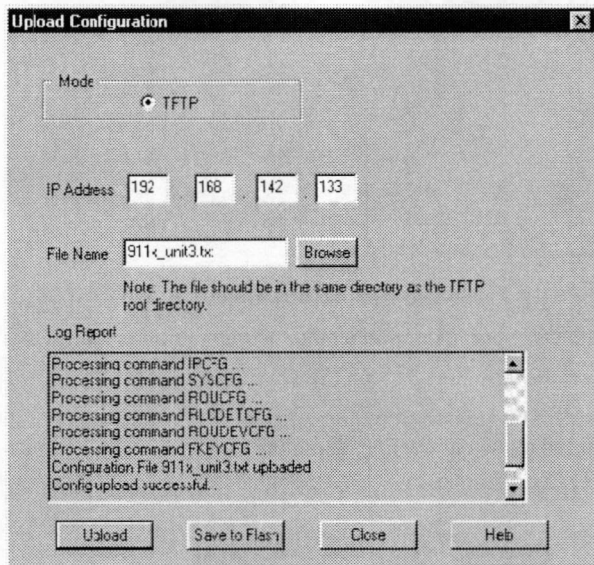


- 5 Ensure the Files of type list drop down box shows Text File (*.TXT)
- 6 Navigate to the folder containing the configuration file.
- 7 Select the file, then click on the **Open** button.

Result: The Upload Configuration dialog box displays with the file you selected shown in the File Name field.

- 8 Click on the **Upload** button.

Result: The middle of the Upload Configuration dialog box displays status messages relating to the upload. The following is an example.



CAUTION

Risk of incorrect operation due to partial configuration

Do not interrupt the configuration upload. If you interrupt the configuration upload, this results in an incomplete configuration in the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's database.

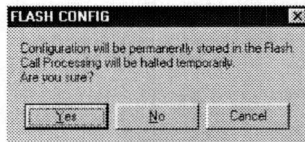
If the configuration upload is interrupted, repeat this procedure immediately.

IF the upload was	THEN
successful,	the following message displays: CONFIG UPLOAD SUCCESSFUL... USE SAVECFG TO UPDATE FLASH.
not successful,	the following message displays in the middle of the Upload Configuration dialog box: CONFIG UPLOAD FAILED For further instructions, refer to Chapter 8, "Troubleshooting".

Note: Do not ignore error messages in Save to Flash process. If Save to Flash fails, retry uploading and saving to Flash. If the problem persists, check the file being uploaded and report the problem to Nortel Networks.

- 9 From the Upload Configuration dialog box, click on the **Save to Flash** button.

Result: The FLASH CONFIG dialog box displays, similar to the following:



- 10 Click on the **Yes** button.

Result: The following message displays in the status bar at the bottom of the screen:

Saving to Flash in Progress

When the save is finished, the following message displays in the middle of the Upload Configuration dialog box:

CONFIGURATION IS UPDATED INTO FLASH...

- 11 Click on the **Close** button.
- 12 Restart the RLC.

Note: For instructions, refer to "Restarting the system" on page 147.

Display logs

The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit keeps track of system performance through the maintenance of display logs. Each line, or display log, represents a separate action completed by the unit.

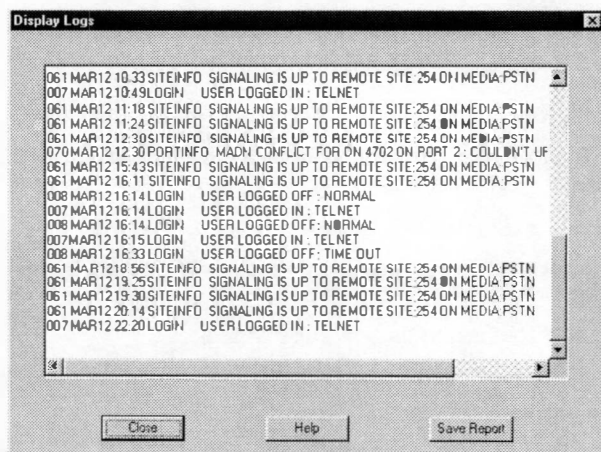
Use the display logs when troubleshooting system problems. Click on the **Save Report** button if you need to print the display logs to a text file. Refer to Configuration Manager Help for a complete listing of all display logs and the condition indicated by each.

Getting there 911x → Configuration Manager

Viewing display logs

From the Menu Bar, choose Alarms/Stats/Logs → Display Logs.

Result: The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit lists the display logs it maintains in a window similar to the following. You can use the scroll bar to browse through the display logs.



Printing the display logs to a file

If you request technical support, your support representative can ask you to provide a copy of the display logs. To recreate the log in a file on your administration PC, use the following procedure:

- 1 After listing the display logs using the procedure explained under "Viewing display logs" on page 118, click on the **Save Report** button on the Display Logs window.

Result: The Save As dialog box displays, similar to the following:



- 2 Enter a name for the configuration in the File name field.

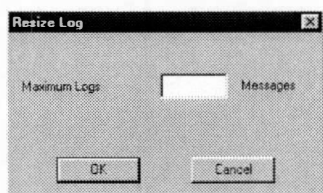
Result: Configuration Manager saves the display logs to a text file in the location indicated in the Save As dialog box.

Changing the number of display logs retained by the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit

A Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit retains a maximum of 1000 display logs, each requiring one line of text. When the unit's display logs reach 1000 lines, new display logs overwrite existing display logs on a first in, first out basis. If you want to change the number of display logs retained by the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit, complete the following procedure:

- 1 From the Menu Bar, choose Alarms/Stats/Logs → Resize Logs.

Result: The Resize Log dialog box displays, similar to the following:



Note: "Maximum logs" refers to the number of text lines, or messages, maintained by the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit. The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit currently retains a maximum of 1000 text lines.

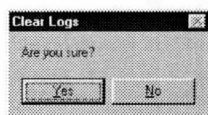
- 2 Enter the maximum number of text lines you want maintained by the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit in the Maximum Logs field.
- 3 Click on the **OK** button.

Clear logs

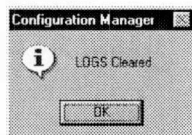
The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit allows you to delete unneeded information by clearing the display logs. To discard or clear display logs that are no longer useful, complete the following procedure:

- 1 From the Menu Bar, choose Alarms/Stats/Logs → Clear Logs.

Result: The CLEAR LOGS dialog box displays, similar to the following:



IF you select	THEN
No,	the Clear logs dialog box closes and the retained display logs remain as they are.
Yes,	■ the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit deletes its stored display logs. ■ the LOGS cleared dialog box displays, similar to the following:



Click on the **OK** button.

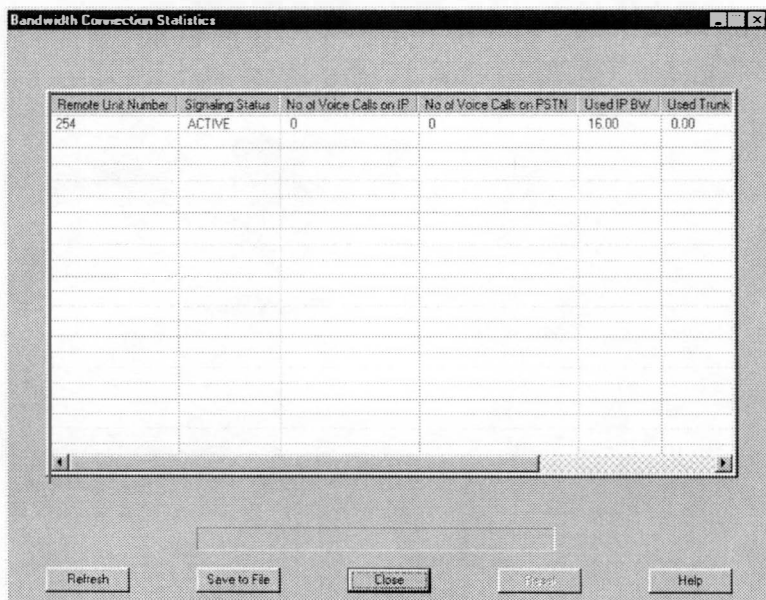
Statistics screens

All statistics screens provided by the Alarms/Stats/Logs menu, function primarily to help you obtain information to provide to technical support personnel, upon request.

Getting there 911x → Configuration Manager

Bandwidth Connection Statistics

Bandwidth Connection Statistics, similar to the following, allow you to see the amount of bandwidth that the logged-on Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit has available to it. Use the Bandwidth Connection Statistics to help you determine if you need to add more bandwidth on the IP network connection.



To display the Bandwidth Connection Statistics screen, refer to “Displaying the Bandwidth Connection Statistics screen”, as follows. To obtain the definitions for the statistics presented on the Bandwidth Connection Statistics screen, refer to “Bandwidth Connection Statistics field descriptions” on page 124.

Displaying the Bandwidth Connection Statistics screen

Choose Alarms/Stats/Logs → BW Connection Statistics from the Menu Bar to display the Bandwidth Connection Statistics screen.

Result: Configuration Manager gathers statistics from the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit and displays the Bandwidth Connection Statistics screen, similar to the example on page 122.

IF you want to	THEN click
update the statistics with the latest information,	on the Refresh button.
create a text file containing these statistics,	on the Save to File button.
close the Trunk Connection Statistics screen,	on the Close button.
obtain descriptions of the statistics in the Trunk Connection Statistics screen,	on the Help button.

Bandwidth Connection Statistics field descriptions

The following table describes the statistics on the Bandwidth Connection Statistics screen:

Statistic	Description
Remote Unit Number	Identifies the remote unit that initiated the call.
Signaling Status	Identifies whether a connection is up on this unit. Valid options are: Active and Idle.
No of Voice Calls on IP	Identifies the number of calls in progress on this unit's IP connection.
No of Voice Calls on PSTN	Note: PSTN statistics do not apply to Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units.
Used IP BW	Identifies the IP bandwidth in use on this unit.
Used Trunk BW	Note: Trunk bandwidth statistics do not apply to Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units.
Total Up Trunk BW	Note: Trunk bandwidth statistics do not apply to Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units.
IP QoS Status	Note: QoS statistics do not apply to Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units.

Caller Information Statistics

Caller Information (Info) Statistics, similar to the following, allow you to see the type of call being made. Use the Caller Information Statistics to help you determine if the bandwidth used by the logged-on Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit.

[illegible]

To display the Caller Info Statistics screen, refer to “Displaying the Caller Info Statistics screen” on page 126. To obtain the definitions for the statistics presented on the Caller Info Statistics screen, refer to “Caller Info Statistics field descriptions” on page 127.

Displaying the Caller Info Statistics screen

Choose Alarms/Stats/Logs → Caller Info Statistics from the Menu Bar to display the Caller Info Statistics screen.

Result: Configuration Manager gathers the statistics from the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit and displays the Caller Info Statistics screen, similar to the example on page 125:

IF you want to	THEN click
update the statistics with the latest information,	on the Refresh button.
create a text file containing these statistics,	on the Save to File button.
close the Trunk Connection Statistics screen,	on the Close button.
obtain descriptions of the statistics in the Trunk Connection Statistics screen,	on the Help button.

Caller Info Statistics field descriptions

The following table describes the statistics on the Caller Info Statistics screen:

Statistic	Description
Connection ID	Identifies the serial number of this call through the lifetime of the logged on unit.
Remote ID	Identifies the unit ID of the involved remote unit.
Current Media	PSTN statistics do not apply to Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapters.
Type	Identifies the type of call. Valid options are: Signaling, Voice, and Local.
Priority	PSTN statistics do not apply to Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapters.
Call BW	Identifies the amount of bandwidth used by the call.
Start Time	Identifies the time that the connection initiated.
Transitions to PSTN	Transition statistics do not apply to Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapters.
Transitions to IP	Transition statistics do not apply to Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapters.
Last Transition to PSTN	Transition statistics do not apply to Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapters.
Last Transition to IP	Transition statistics do not apply to Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapters.

Digital Signal Processor (DSP) Statistics

Digital Signal Processor (DSP) Statistics, similar to the following, show information about the DSP devices on the logged-in Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit. Use this screen to determine the type of DSP on the unit and the functionality and performance of that DSP.

[illegible]

To display the DSP Statistics screen, refer to “Displaying the DSP Statistics screen” on page 129. To obtain the definitions for the statistics presented on the DSP Statistics screen, refer to “DSP Statistics field descriptions” on page 130.

Displaying the DSP Statistics screen

Choose Alarms/Stats/Logs → DSP Statistics from the Menu Bar to display the DSP Statistics screen.

Result: Configuration Manager gathers statistics from the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit and displays the DSP Statistics screen, similar to the example on page 128.

IF you want to	THEN click
update the statistics with the latest information,	on the Refresh button.
create a text file containing these statistics,	on the Save to File button.
close the Trunk Connection Statistics screen,	on the Close button.
obtain descriptions of the statistics in the Trunk Connection Statistics screen,	on the Help button.

DSP Statistics field descriptions

The following table describes the statistics on the DSP Statistics screen:

Statistic	Description
Single Digit Device ID	Identifies an internal sequence number for indexing this DSP device among all others on the RLC linked to the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit.
Module Number	Identifies this DSP Application Module's module number on the RLC linked to the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit. Valid options are: 0, 1, 2, 3, and 4.
Device Number	Identifies the DSP device that processed the call.
In Service	Identifies any voice channels operating on this DSP application module.
Total MIPS	Identifies the total millions of instructions per second (MIPS) capacity for this DSP device.
Available Mips	Identifies the millions of instructions per second (MIPS) currently available on this DSP device.
Total Channels	Identifies the total channel capacity for this DSP device.
Total Voice Channels	Identifies the total voice channel capacity for this DSP device.
Available Voice Channels	Identifies the number of unused voice channels on this DSP device.
Total Modem Channels	Identifies the number of channels on this DSP device that can transmit modem calls.

Statistic	Description
Available Modem Channels	Identifies the number of unused channels on this DSP that can transmit modem calls.
Total Flex Channels	Identifies the number of channels on this DSP that can provide multiple functionalities.
Available Flex Channels	Identifies the number of channels on this DSP currently available to provide multiple functionalities.
Total Tones Channels	Identifies the number of channels on this DSP that can transmit tones.
Total Reserved Channels	Identifies the number of special purpose channels on this DSP reserved for internal use.
Name	Identifies the name of the DSP load, that is, the combination of DSP algorithms, on the DSP module.

Ethernet Interface Statistics

Ethernet Interface Statistics, similar to the following, list information about the connection between the IP network and the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit that is achieved over the unit's Ethernet interface.

[illegible]

To display the Ethernet Interface Statistics screen, refer to “Displaying the Ethernet Interface Statistics screen” on page 133. To obtain the definitions for the statistics presented on the Ethernet Interface Statistics screen, refer to “Ethernet Interface Statistics field descriptions” on page 134.

Displaying the Ethernet Interface Statistics screen

Choose Alarms/Stats/Logs → Ethernet Interface Statistics from the Menu Bar to display the Ethernet Interface Statistics screen.

Result: Configuration Manager gathers statistics from the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit and displays the Ethernet Interface Statistics screen, similar to the example on page 132.

IF you want to	THEN click
update the statistics with the latest information,	on the Refresh button.
create a text file containing these statistics,	on the Save to File button.
close the Trunk Connection Statistics screen,	on the Close button.
obtain descriptions of the statistics in the Trunk Connection Statistics screen,	on the Help button.

Ethernet Interface Statistics field descriptions

The following table describes the statistics on the Ethernet Interface Statistics screen:

Statistic	Description
Channel	Identifies the Ethernet device that the statistics on that line apply to. Valid option is: 1
LAN Drv	Identifies the LAN driver used by the call.
Admin	Identifies the desired state of the port.
Oper	Identifies the actual state of the port.
IfcType	Identifies the interface type used by the call.
IfcNo	Identifies the Ethernet interface used by the call. Valid options are: 0 (ELAN) and 1 (CLAN).
MTUlen	Identifies the Maximum Transmission Unit for this interface.
Speed	Identifies the data rate of this interface.
In - Octet	Identifies the number of inbound bytes.
UPkts	Identifies the number of inbound packets sent only to this recipient.
MPkts	Identifies the number of inbound packets sent to multiple recipients.
Disc	Identifies the number of packets discarded by the interface.
Err	Identifies the number of error packets received by the interface.
Out - Octet	Identifies the number of outbound bytes.
UPkts	Identifies the number of outbound packets sent only to this recipient.

Statistic	Description
MPkts	Identifies the number of outbound packets sent to multiple recipients.
Disc	Identifies the number of outbound packets discarded by the interface due to resource problems.
Err	Identifies the number of outbound packets discarded due to errors.
QLen	Identifies the number of bytes in the interface's outbound queue.

Network Statistics

Network Statistics allow you to see the performance of the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit in terms of the transmission and reception of frames and packets during the last 24 hours. Use this log to identify periods when other network activity can adversely affect Remote Office system performance.

Network Statistics

Remote Unit Number = 1

Hour	Tx Frames	Rx Frames	Rx Error	Rx Dropped	Error %	BroadCast Packet	Tx U/CastPkt	Tx DiscPkt	F
0	0	0	0	0	0.00	0	173	0	
1	0	0	0	0	0.00	0	303	0	
2	0	0	0	0	0.00	0	222	0	
3	0	0	0	0	0.00	0	209	0	
4	0	0	0	0	0.00	0	217	0	
5	0	0	0	0	0.00	0	213	0	
6	0	0	0	0	0.00	0	214	0	
7	0	0	0	0	0.00	0	216	0	
8	0	0	0	0	0.00	0	220	0	
9	0	0	0	0	0.00	0	219	0	
10	0	0	0	0	0.00	0	219	0	
11	0	0	0	0	0.00	0	218	0	
12	0	0	0	0	0.00	0	436	0	
13	816	698	0	1	0.14	0	1086	0	
14	1499	1376	0	0	0.00	0	1857	0	
15	1068	2183	0	0	0.00	0	1976	0	
16	0	122	0	0	0.00	0	4674	0	
17	0	0	0	0	0.00	0	2706	0	
18	0	0	0	0	0.00	0	1849	0	
19	0	0	0	0	0.00	0	1750	0	

Refresh Close Help

To display the Network Statistics screen, refer to “Displaying the Network Statistics screen” on page 137. To obtain the definitions for the statistics presented on the Network Statistics screen, refer to “Network Statistics field descriptions” on page 138.

Displaying the Network Statistics screen

Choose Alarms/Stats/Logs → Network Statistics from the Menu Bar to display the Network Statistics screen.

Result: Configuration Manager gathers statistics from the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit and displays the Network Statistics screen, similar to the example on page 136.

IF you want to	THEN click
update the statistics with the latest information,	on the Refresh button.
create a text file containing these statistics,	on the Save to File button.
close the Trunk Connection Statistics screen,	on the Close button.
obtain descriptions of the statistics in the Trunk Connection Statistics screen,	on the Help button.

Network Statistics field descriptions

The following table describes the information on the Network Statistics screen:

Statistic	Description
Hour	Identifies the hour that the statistics on that line apply to. These numbers refer to the most recent 24 hours, such that "1" refers to one hour ago, "2" refers to two hours ago, and so on.
Tx Frames	Identifies the number of frames transmitted in the given hour.
Rx Frames	Identifies the number of frames received in the given hour.
Rx Error	Identifies the number of frames received in the given hour with an error.
Rx Dropped	Identifies the number of received frames that the Remote Office system dropped in the given hour.
Error %	Identifies the percentage of frames received in the given hour with an error.
BroadCast Packet	Identifies the number of packets broadcast, or sent to all addresses on the network, by this unit in the given hour.
Tx UCastPkt	Identifies the number of packets unicast, or sent to one specific address, by this unit in the given hour.
Tx DiscPkt	Identifies the number of packets discarded by this unit in the given hour.
Rx MultiPkt	Identifies the number of packets received by this unit that were sent to multiple addresses in the given hour.
Rx UCastPkt	Identifies the number of packets received by this unit that were sent only to this unit in the given hour.
Rx DiscPkt	Identifies the number of received packets that were discarded by this unit in the given hour.

Verifying the firmware and software version

This section describes how to determine the version of firmware and software currently installed.

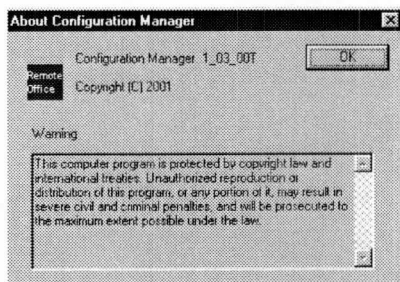
Before you perform a firmware or software upgrade, you should determine what version is currently installed. This ensures that you do not replace the installed firmware or software with an older version.

Verifying the software version

To verify the software version on your Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit, complete the following procedure:

- 1 From the Menu Bar, choose Help → About Configuration Manager.

Result: The About Configuration Manager dialog box displays, similar to the following:



- 2 Review the About Configuration Manager dialog box. This identifies the version of software installed on the unit.
- 3 Click on the **OK** button.

Verifying the firmware version

To verify the firmware version on your Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit, complete the following procedure:

- 1 From the Menu Bar, choose System Information → System Data.
- 2 The System Configuration Details dialog box displays, similar to the following:

System Configuration Details

Unit Id	2	Site Name	UNIT
Unit Type	911X	Unit Version	1_03_001.7 911X
Database Version	1.20	Date	MAR 22 2001
		Time	18:26
IP Address	192.168.143.102	Mac Address	00:50:D7:00:12:04

Application Module Information

Successfully Read System Configuration Data

Close Help

- 3 Review the Unit Version box. This identifies the version of firmware installed on the unit.
- 4 Click on the **Close** button.

Determining the current firmware and software versions

To determine what the current firmware and software versions are, refer to the *Remote Office and RLC Release Notes* (NTP 555-8421-102).

Obtaining the latest upgrade file

If you need to upgrade the firmware or software, you can obtain the latest upgrade files by clicking on the Customer Support and Software Distribution links at the following website:

www.nortelnetworks.com

Nortel Networks provides upgrade files in self-extracting executable files. You must extract the upgrade files before you can perform the upgrade.

Types of upgrades

There are two types of upgrades that can be performed for your Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit:

1. Configuration Manager software upgrade

You use the Configuration Manager software to configure or administer the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit.

2. Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit firmware upgrades

The firmware contains the code necessary for operating the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit.

Downloading the upgrade file

To download the upgrade file, complete the following procedure:

- 1 With your web browser, connect to the Nortel Networks website at:
www.nortelnetworks.com/remotefice
- 2 Click Software and Documentation Distribution Center.
- 3 Locate the software and firmware you need.
- 4 Download the files into a temporary location on your PC.
- 5 Double-click on the **.exe** file to extract the files into a temporary location on your PC.
- 6 Continue with "Extracting upgrade files from the download file" on page 142.

Extracting upgrade files from the download file

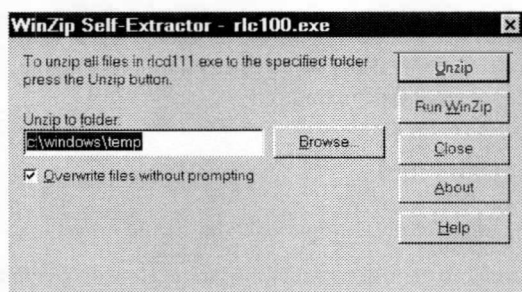
Before you perform an upgrade, ensure you have obtained the latest upgrade files from your Nortel Networks distributor. The upgrade files are enclosed in self-extracting executable files. You must extract the upgrade files before you can perform the upgrade.

Performing the extraction using Windows

To perform the extraction using Windows, complete the following procedure:

- 1 Navigate to the directory that contains the .exe file you received from Nortel Networks.
- 2 Double-click on the .exe file.

Result: The WinZip Self-Extractor dialog box displays, similar to the following:



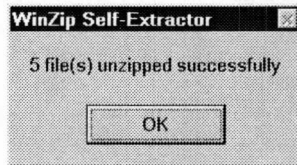
- 3 Review the information presented and make changes as necessary.

Notes:

- Nortel Networks recommends that you extract the files into a temporary directory.
- If you specify a directory that does not exist, the WinZip Self-Extractor creates it.

- 4 Click on the **Unzip** button.

Result: The file extraction begins. A status bar shows the extraction progress. When completed, an "unzipped successfully" message displays, similar to the following:



- 5 Click on the **OK** button.
Result: The WinZip Self-Extractor dialog box reappears.
- 6 Click on the **Close** button.

Performing a firmware upgrade

This section describes how to perform a firmware upgrade on your Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit. You perform the upgrade over the IP network using the TFTP protocol.

You must have a TFTP server application running on the administration PC. The TFTP server's base directory must point to the directory that contains the upgrade files.

When to perform a firmware upgrade

Perform a firmware upgrade if you have determined that you are using out-of-date firmware. For instructions on determining if you need to perform an upgrade, refer to "Verifying the firmware and software version" on page 139.

About firmware upgrades and configuration files

Each time you perform a firmware upgrade, the configuration database is also converted (if necessary) to a format that is compatible with the new firmware. Configuration settings are not affected by the conversion.

Nortel Networks recommends that, each time you perform a firmware upgrade, you create a backup copy of the converted configuration file, and store it in a safe secure location.

Before you begin

It is important to complete the procedures described under "Obtaining the latest upgrade file" on page 141 before performing a firmware upgrade. Then you must complete the following steps:

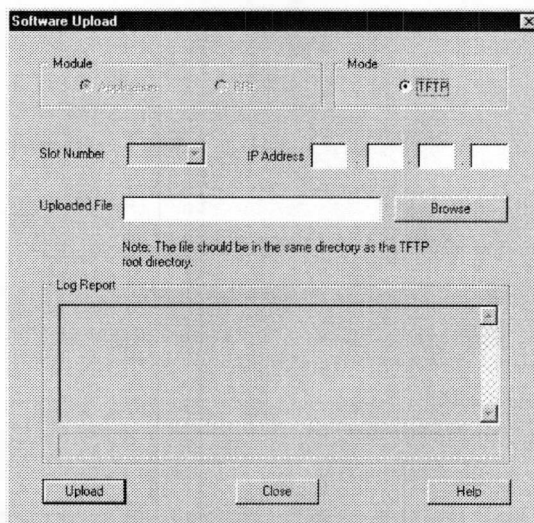
- 1 Start the TFTP server application.
- 2 Ensure the TFTP base directory reflects the directory where the firmware upgrade file you want to use resides.

Getting there 911x → Configuration Manager**Upgrading the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit firmware**

To upgrade the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit firmware, complete the following procedure:

- 1 From the Menu Bar, choose Upload/Download → Upload S/W.

Result: The Software Upload dialog box displays, similar to the following:



The image shows a 'Software Upload' dialog box with the following fields and controls:

- Module:** Two radio buttons, 'Application' (selected) and 'Firmware'.
- Mode:** A radio button labeled 'TFTP'.
- Slot Number:** A dropdown menu.
- IP Address:** Four text input fields.
- Uploaded File:** A text input field with a 'Browse' button to its right.
- Note:** A text label stating 'Note. The file should be in the same directory as the TFTP root directory.'
- Log Report:** A large text area for displaying logs.
- Buttons:** 'Upload', 'Close', and 'Help' at the bottom.

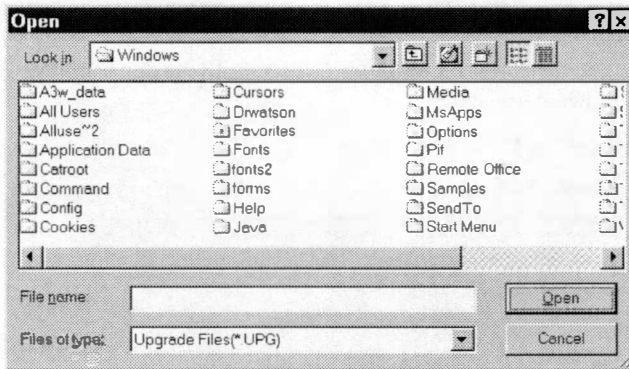
Note: In the Module section, the Application option button is the default selection.

- 2 Enter the IP address of the TFTP server into the IP Address fields.

Note: Since the TFTP server application is running on your administration PC, this is the IP address of the administration PC.

- 3 Click on the **Browse** button.

Result: The Open dialog box displays, similar to the following:



- 4 Ensure the Files of type drop down box shows Upgrade Files (*.UPG).
- 5 Navigate to the folder where the firmware file is located.
- 6 Select the file, and then click on the **Open** button.

Example: For Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit firmware, select 911X.upg, and click on the **Open** button.

Result: The Software Upload dialog box reappears. The file you selected is shown in the Uploaded File box.

- 7 Click on the **Upload** button.

Wait until the file uploads completely before entering any other commands. The Log Report window displays a confirmation message when the upgrade is completed.

Note: Configuration Manager prompts you to restart the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit after upgrading the firmware. To do this, follow the procedure on page 147.

Restarting the system

After a firmware upgrade or a configuration change, it is often necessary to restart the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit. Use the following procedure to restart the unit using Configuration Manager.

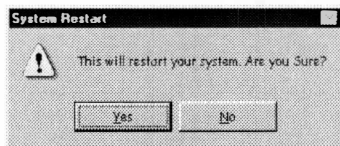
Note: After you restart the system, wait 7–10 seconds before placing a call.

Getting there 911x → Configuration Manager

To restart the unit

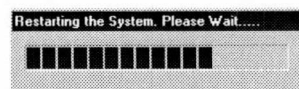
- 1 From the Menu Bar, choose Connect → System Reset → Restart.

Result: The System Restart dialog box displays, similar to the following:



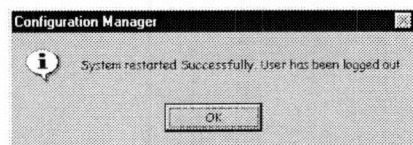
- 2 Click the **Yes** button.

Result: The Restarting the System. Please Wait.....progress bar displays indicating that Configuration Manager is restarting the system, similar to the following:



- 3 When the restart is complete, the system logs off the user.

Result: The Configuration Manager dialog box displays notifying you of the successful restart, similar to the following:



- 4 Configuration Manager then displays the User Authentication dialog box, so that you can resume Configuration Manager activities.

Performing a software upgrade

Perform a software upgrade if you have determined that you are using out-of-date software. For instructions on determining if you need to perform an upgrade, refer to “Verifying the firmware and software version” on page 139.

Upgrading the Configuration Manager software

To upgrade the Configuration Manager software, complete the following procedure:

- 1 Navigate to the directory that contains the upgrade files you extracted.
- 2 Double-click on the **setup.exe** file.
- 3 Follow the prompts on the screen.

ATTENTION

Do not ignore any warning messages that the InstallShield displays about versions of files (such as DLL files) that already exist on your PC. If you overwrite these files, you may inadvertently cause other applications on your PC to stop working.

Result: The InstallShield installs the software, overwriting the previous version.

Chapter 8

Troubleshooting

In this chapter

Before you begin	150
Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit LEDs	152
Digital telephone	153
Network connectivity	159
Software problems	162
Using Configuration Manager's PING	163
Recovering from a catastrophic failure	166
Repair and warranty information	167

Before you begin

The questions listed in this section can help you determine the proper course of action for addressing your problem.

Identifying why a problem occurred

If you experience problems in setting up or running your Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit, identify the problem first, using the table provided below.

Question	IF you answered	THEN do the following
Is this a new installation?	yes	1 Perform troubleshooting in the sequence presented in this chapter. 2 PING the unit to confirm that it is accessible on the network. Refer to “Using Configuration Manager’s PING,” on page 163.
	no	Answer the next question.
Did the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit work, then suddenly stop working?	yes	Answer the next question.
	no	1 Perform troubleshooting in the sequence presented in this chapter. 2 PING the unit to confirm that it is accessible on the network. Refer to “Using Configuration Manager’s PING,” on page 163.

Question	IF you answered	THEN do the following
Did you modify the configuration or change any hardware components?	yes	1 Verify that changes were completed correctly. 2 Check the hardware components to ensure they are in working order. 3 Perform troubleshooting for the specific component.
	no	Contact your telecom or data network administrator. There may be a problem with the network.

Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit LEDs

During the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit power-up cycle, watch the front panel of the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter unit, or the rear panel of the digital telephone housing the Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter circuit card. The LEDs should behave as follows:

- The Power LED should light up and remain lit.
- The remaining LEDs flash whenever there is network activity.

If the LEDs do not display correctly:

- Ensure that the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit is connected to a power source.
- If you are using an uninterruptible power supply (UPS), ensure the UPS is powered on.
- Verify that the AC power source is operational.

Digital telephone

This section identifies some problems that can occur on the digital telephone, and describes what to do to resolve them.

Symptom descriptions

If you are having trouble with digital telephones, perform troubleshooting as described in the following tables, according to whether this is a first-time installation.

Symptom	What to do
There is no dial tone when pressing either the host calling or local calling keys and this is a first-time installation	1 Ensure that the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit completed its power-up cycle successfully. If it did, the Status LED remains lit. 2 Verify the connections between the telephone network and the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit. 3 Use Configuration Manager to verify that the following configuration is correct on the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit: ■ IP address ■ subnet mask ■ IP gateway ■ RLC's IP address 4 Verify the security IDs of both the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit and the RLC, if a security ID is required to authenticate connection attempts.

Symptom

There is no dial tone when pressing either the host calling or local calling keys and this is a first-time installation.

(continued)

What to do

- 5** Use Configuration Manager to verify that the following configuration is correct on the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit, as appropriate:

- station configuration, to ensure that the telephone you are using has the calling capabilities needed to complete the tests (that is, verify that the station is correctly configured as local only, remote only, or both local and remote)

Note: For instructions on using Configuration Manager, refer to Chapter 5, “Changing configuration settings using Configuration Manager”.

- 6** Work with the administrator at the host PBX site to ensure the following:
- The RLC is enabled and working in its PBX slot (restart the RLC, if necessary).
 - The configuration of the IP address, telephone number, and security ID on the RLC port are correct (if these items are used).
 - Both the telecom and data networks are routing voice calls as expected (that is, calls are not being blocked in any way).

IF Symptom**THEN What to do**

There is no dial tone when pressing either the host calling or local calling keys.

- 1** Check the IP network to ensure the following:
 - The IP network is not down.
 - Traffic is being routed between the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit and RLC on the host PBX.
- 2** Contact your telecom administrator. There might be problems at the host PBX.

Lamps or indicators are not lit after completion of a Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit power cycle.

- 1** Check all cable connections to and from the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit to ensure that they are all securely connected.
- 2** Check the IP network and ensure that:
 - it is not down
 - traffic is being routed between the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit and RLC on the host PBX
- 3** PING the RLC from the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit to verify IP network connectivity.

Lamps or indicators do not reflect the true status of the telephone.

It is possible that there is a synchronization error between the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit and the host PBX. Contact your telecom network administrator.

IF Symptom

THEN What to do

The display is blank (that is, the time and date are not displayed).

- 1** Take the digital telephone handset off hook and dial the online SPRE code. The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit attempts to connect to the host PBX. When the connection is established, the time and date appear.
- 2** Check the IP network and ensure that:
 - it is not down
 - traffic is being routed between the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit and RLC on the host PBX
- 3** PING the RLC from the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit to verify IP network connectivity.
- 4** Restart the RLC, wait one minute, and then restart the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit.
- 5** Ensure that the RLC is enabled in its host PBX slot.

In overlay 32 on the host PBX, check the status of the RLC, disable and enable it, or reseal it if necessary.
- 6** Contact your telecom administrator. There might be problems at the host PBX.

IF Symptom**THEN What to do**

There are noticeable gaps or poor quality when a voice call is active on the IP network.

Contact your network administrator to conduct a traffic study on your voice and IP network traffic patterns as described in the *Remote Office Network Engineering Guidelines* (NTP 555-8421-103). (This NTP is available from your Nortel Networks distributor.) It is possible that your IP network capacity cannot accommodate the additional voice data, especially during High Day Busy Hour (HDBH) periods. Make adjustments to your network as required.

Incoming calls are not being received from the host PBX.

- 1** Ensure your telephone is not on call forward.
- 2** Ensure that the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit is not in offline mode by entering the online SPRE code at a digital telephone.
- 3** Ensure that the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit is powered up. It cannot receive calls from the host PBX if it is not powered up.
- 4** The network administrator should ensure the RLC is correctly configured with your Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's IP address, telephone number, and security ID (if they are used).

IF Symptom	THEN What to do
Incoming calls are not being received from the host PBX. (continued)	5 The network administrator should check the IP network (if it is being used) and ensure that: ■ it is not down ■ traffic is being routed between the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit and RLC on the host PBX 6 The network administrator should PING the RLC from the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit to verify IP network connectivity. 7 If the problem persists, contact your telecom administrator or Nortel Networks distributor.
A call in progress was suddenly disconnected.	1 Does your telephone display "Offline Mode?" If so, enter the online SPRE code to go back online. 2 Contact your telecom and data network administrators. Perhaps network problems caused the call to disconnect.

Network connectivity

This section identifies some problems that can occur on the data network, and describes what to do to resolve them.

System descriptions

If you are not able to establish or maintain data network connectivity, perform troubleshooting as described in the following table:

Symptom	What to do
You cannot establish a connection from your administration PC to the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit.	1 Ensure that you entered the IP address correctly when trying to establish the connection.
	2 Ensure that you entered the logon ID and password correctly when trying to establish the connection.
	3 Ensure the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's IP address, network mask, and default gateway are correctly configured in the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit.
	4 PING the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit to see if it responds. Refer to "Using Configuration Manager's PING," on page 163 for proper procedure.
	5 PING the gateway to see if it responds.
	6 If the PING still does not work, contact your data network administrator.

Symptom

10060 TELNET CONNECTION FAILED appears when attempting to connect to the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit.

What to do

The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit cannot be reached on the IP network.

- 1 Check the configuration of network devices and ensure that Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit can be reached.
- 2 Verify that the Ethernet cable is connected at both ends (Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit and Internet Access Device).
- 3 Check the Ethernet cable and ensure it is good.
- 4 Ensure the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit is powered up.
- 5 Power the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit off, then back on.
- 6 PING the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit.
- 7 Contact your Nortel Networks distributor. There may be a hardware problem.

Symptom**What to do**

The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit does not send or receive Ethernet traffic.

- 1** Ensure the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit is powered up. The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit cannot send or receive traffic if it is not powered up.
- 2** Check the Ethernet cable between the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit and the network and ensure it is good.
- 3** Ensure the Ethernet cable is connected.
- 4** If the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit still does not send or receive traffic, contact your data network administrator.
- 5** Data network administrator: Ensure other network devices are configured to allow traffic to and from the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit.

An attempt to log out from the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit does not work.

It is possible that communication has been lost between the administration PC and the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit. Close the Configuration Manager, then restart it.

Software problems

This section identifies some problems that can occur with the Configuration Manager software, and describes what to do to resolve them.

Symptom descriptions

If you are not able to complete a task with the Configuration Manager, perform troubleshooting as described in the following table.

Symptom	What to do
10060 TELNET CONNECTION FAILED appears when attempting to connect to the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit.	It is possible that communication has been lost between the administration PC and the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit. Close the Configuration Manager, then restart it.
The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit does not send or receive Ethernet traffic.	It is possible that communication has been lost between the administration PC and the node you were logged on to. Close the Configuration Manager, then restart it.

Display Logs definitions

You can locate Display Logs definitions in Configuration Manager Help.

Using Configuration Manager's PING

PING, or Packet InterNet Groper, is a protocol and program to test that a device is accessible on a network. This section explains how to use the PING option provided in the Configuration Manager to verify network connectivity. Use this test as a troubleshooting tool to determine if you can reach the RLC, another remote unit, or any other device on the network.

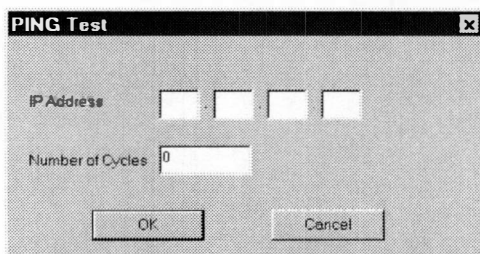
Getting there 911x → Configuration Manager

Performing a Configuration Manager PING

To perform a Configuration Manager PING, complete the following procedure:

- 1 From the Menu Bar, choose Tests → PING.

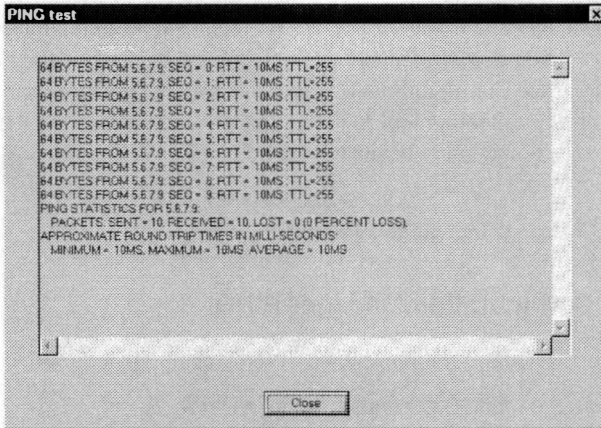
Result: The PING Test dialog box displays, similar to the following:



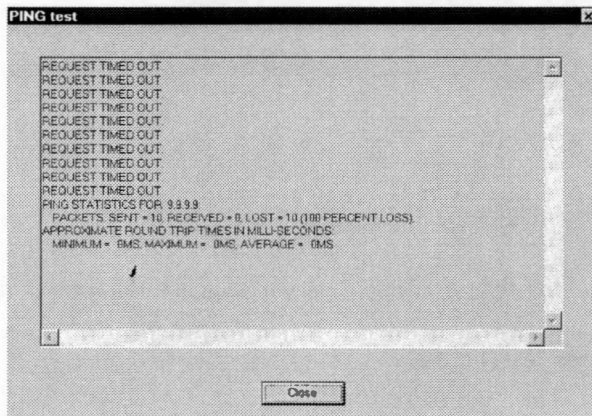
- 2 Enter the IP Address of the unit you want to PING in the IP Address field.
- 3 Enter the number of times you want to PING the unit in the Number of Cycles field (1 to 100).

- 4 Click on the **OK** button.

Result: The PING test window displays, showing the PING results. The following is an example of a successful PING.



The following is an example of an unsuccessful PING.



- 5 Click on the **Close** button.

Result: The PING test window closes.

Unsuccessful PING options

If the PING was unsuccessful, answer these questions:

- 1 Did you enter the IP address correctly?
- 2 Are the subnet mask and default gateway configured properly at your site?
(Confirm this by checking the IP Configuration property sheets for the involved units.)
- 3 Are the subnet mask and default gateway configured properly at the site that you are PINGing? (Confirm with the site's network administrator.)
- 4 Does the gateway respond to a PING?

If you are able to answer “Yes” to the questions above and the PING still does not work, the problem lies somewhere in the network between the involved sites.

Recovering from a catastrophic failure

Catastrophic failure is defined as a failure of the equipment to operate after review of all troubleshooting information and implementation of appropriate procedures.

Should your Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit fail to operate after thorough review of the troubleshooting information in this and related Guides, consult your Nortel Networks distributor for hardware replacement.

Repair and warranty information

The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit contains no user-serviceable components. If the problem experienced with your Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit persists after you have used all the appropriate procedures in this chapter, refer to the following contact information for repair and warranty help, depending upon your location:

Canada

Nortel Networks Service Selection Center
30 Norelco Drive
Weston, ON
M9L 2X6
Canada

Telephone: 1-888-977-9444

United States

Nortel Networks
Product Service Center
640 Massman Drive
Nashville, TN 37210
USA

Telephone: 1-800-251-1758

Europe

Nortel Networks (NI) Ltd.
FAO: Irish Express Cargo (IEC)
Raheen Industrial Estate
Raheen, Limerick
Ireland

Telephone: +33 4 9296 1568
Fax: +33 4 9296 1598

Asia/Pacific

Nortel Distribution Center
c/o ACCO Transport
21 South St. Unit#2
Rydalmere, NSW
2116 Australia

CALA

Note: When you need warranty and repair service in Central American and Latin American countries, you must first get an RR (repair and return) number from your Nortel Networks distributor before shipping to the Nortel CALA Repair Center.

Nortel c/o Wesbell
4019 S.W. 30th Avenue
Fort Lauderdale, FL 33312
USA
Notify: Receiving Department
RR no.:

Telephone:
Normal Service Hours (Monday to Friday 8:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. Central Time)
1-954-851-8841
After Normal Hours (weekends and holidays)
1-888-594-8474

Appendix A

Planning forms

In this appendix

IP Adapter Network Connections	170
IP Adapter Configuration Information—Dialing Plans	171
IP Adapter telephone menu— Configuration Values	172

Note: You can locate electronic Remote Office Planning forms on the Nortel Networks website at:

www.nortelnetworks.com

IP Adapter Network Connections

Security level:		☐ No security	☐ Provisioned security
Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter site identification			
Node number:		Node name:	
IP address:			
Subnet mask:			
Default gateway:			
If the security level is <i>provisioned security</i> , what is the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's security identifier?			
		Inbound	
		Outbound	
Connection to RLC information			
IP address to reach the host PBX (for IP network):			
If security level is <i>provisioned security</i> , what is the RLC's security code?		Inbound	
		Outbound	

IP Adapter Configuration Information—Dialing Plans

Notes:

- The pound sign (#) is mandatory and is automatically preconfigured in Configuration Manager. The pound sign prevents conflicts with the dialing plan on the host PBX.

Description	Default code	Your code (maximum of 3 digits)
Online SPRE code	#99	#
Offline SPRE code	#98	#
Registration SPRE code (for multi-user or dynamic pool ports only)	#97	#
Deregistration SPRE code (for multi-user or dynamic pool ports only)	#96	#

IP Adapter telephone menu— Configuration Values

Use the values shown below to configure the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit using the telephone menu.

Configuration Value Description	Value
User Name	GUEST (48378)
Password	
Unit ID (Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit)	
Time Offset	
Emergency Code	
Online SPRE Code	
Offline SPRE Code	
Registration SPRE Code	
Deregistration SPRE Code	
Enable DHCP	Y / N (circle one)
IP Address	
IP Subnet Mask	
IP Gateway	
Enable Diffserve	Y / N (circle one)
Enable 802.1p Mapping	Y / N (circle one)
Port # (RLC)	

Configuration	Value	Description	Value
		Security Level (RLC)	_____
		Enable IP (Voice over IP)	Y / N (circle one)
		RLC IP Address	_____
		IP Signaling	_____
		Modem Tones	_____
		Set Type	_____

Appendix B

Connection pin-out tables

In this appendix

RJ-45 ethernet connector	176
Admin (serial) connector pin-out table	177
Power connector pin-out table	178

RJ-45 ethernet connector

Pin #	Signal
1	RX+
2	RX-
3	TX+
4	NC
5	NC
6	TX-
7	NC
8	NC

Admin (serial) connector pin-out table

Pin number	Signal name	I/O	Description
1			
2	MMI-RXD	I	MMI RS-232C Receive Data
3	MMI-TXD	O	MMI RS-232C Transmit Data
4			
5	Ground	I	Logic Ground
6			
7			
8			
9			

Power connector pin-out table

Pin number	Signal name	I/O	Current	Description
1	Ground	I		Logic Ground
2	+24VAC	I	1.5 A	+24VAC

Appendix C

Equipment attachment notices

In this appendix

Industry Canada

180

Industry Canada

NOTICE: The Industry Canada label identifies certified equipment. This certification means only that the equipment meets telecommunications network protective, operational, and safety requirements as prescribed in the appropriate Terminal Equipment Technical Requirements document(s). The Department does not guarantee that the equipment operates to the user's satisfaction.

Before installing this equipment, users should ensure that it is permissible to be connected to the facilities of the local telephone company. The equipment must also be installed using an acceptable method of connection. The customer should be aware that compliance with the above conditions may not prevent degradation of service in some situations.

Repairs to certified equipment should be coordinated by a representative designated by the supplier. Any repairs or alterations made by the user to this equipment, or equipment malfunctions may give the telecommunications company cause to request the user to disconnect the equipment.

Users should ensure for their own protection that the electrical ground connections of the power utility, telephone lines, and internal metallic water pipe system, if present, are connected. This precaution may be particularly important in rural areas.

Caution: Users should not attempt to make such connections themselves, but should contact the appropriate electric inspection authority, or electrician, as appropriate.

Appendix D

Safety and regulatory information

In this appendix

International safety compliance	182
Electromagnetic compatibility	183
Electromagnetic immunity	184
Electrostatic discharge	185
FCC requirements	186

International safety compliance

The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit and the Remote Office system comply with international safety regulations as listed on this page.

Underwriters Laboratory (UL)

The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit complies with and is listed under UL 1950, Third Edition, including revisions based on the Fourth Amendment to IEC 950, Second Edition.

Canadian Standards Association (CSA)

The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit complies with and is listed under CSA C22.2, No. 950-95.

Europe

The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit complies with and is listed under EN60950: 1992, incorporating amendments 1, 2, 3, 4 & 11.

Australia

The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit complies with and is listed under TS001\AS 3260.

Other Countries Deviations Assessed

Refer to Nemko Test Report # 2000 29173.

Electromagnetic compatibility

The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit does not interfere with operation of other licensed communications systems according to the standards set forth by Australia, the United States, and Canada.

The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit does not adversely effect the compliance of the Meridian 1 system to:

- AS 3548 Class B (Australia)
- Class A of FCC Part 15, Subpart J
- CSPR B requirements.

The margin is at least 2 dB better than the specified limit.

Electromagnetic immunity

The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit resists electromagnetic interference.

The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit performs correctly when subjected to narrow band radiated fields in frequency range 500 kHz to 1 GHz (field strength up to 10 V/m, 1 kHz, 50% modulated AM signal) per IEC 1000-4-3.

Electrostatic discharge

The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit is immune to electrostatic discharges typical for an office environment (carpeted floors, low humidity) according to the test method specified by IEC 1000-4-2.

No damage or malfunction occurs when the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit is exposed to up to $\pm 8\text{kV}$ of direct discharge. An indirect discharge of up to $\pm 16\text{kV}$ does not result in malfunction of the system (to adjacent equipment or connected cabling).

The requirements for both “closed door” and “open door” have been met.

FCC requirements

Information in the following paragraphs pertains to FCC-required information. These paragraphs describe where to locate details concerning the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's compliance to FCC regulations, as well as these regulations' effects on the use of the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit.

Part 68

The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units comply with Part 68 of the FCC rules. A label on the underside of the enclosure contains, among other information, the FCC certification number and ringer equivalence number (REN) for the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit. If requested, you must provide this information to the telephone company.

Class B

This equipment passes tests for compliance with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy. If not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, this equipment can cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee against interference in a particular installation. You can determine whether this equipment causes harmful interference to radio or television reception by turning the equipment off and on. The user can try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and the receiver.
- Connect the equipment to an outlet on a circuit different from the outlet that the receiver connects to when producing the interference.
- Consult your Nortel Networks dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by Nortel Networks can void your right to operate Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit equipment.

Telephone network plug and jack

The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's package contains an FCC-compliant telephone cord and modular plug. The Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit's design calls for it to be connected to the telephone network or premises wiring using a Part 68-compliant modular jack. Refer to Chapter 3, "Installing the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit," for complete details on proper installation of the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit.

Equipment harmful to the telephone network

If the Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit causes harm to the telephone network, the telephone company notifies the customer in advance that temporary discontinuance of service may be required. But, if advance notice isn't practical, the telephone company notifies the customer as soon as possible. The customer also receives notification of their right to file a complaint with the FCC if the customer believes a complaint is necessary.

Party lines

Connection to party line service is subject to state tariffs. Contact the state public utility commission for information.

Glossary

10BaseT Ethernet

The Ethernet standard for baseband local area networks using twisted-pair cable carrying 10 megabits per second (Mbps) in a star topology.

A

A-law

A companding technique used in encoding and decoding audio signals in 30-channel pulse code modulated (PCM) systems. A-law companding is the primary method used in Europe. *See also* Mu-law.

adapter

Hardware required to support a particular device. For example, network adapters provide a port for the network wire. Adapters can be expansion boards or part of the computer's main circuitry.

administrator

A user who is responsible for maintaining the RLC or its associated remote units.

agent

A person who is responsible for handling customer calls.

analog

The type of signal used by most telephone connections. A modem converts a digital (computer) signal to analog, and vice versa, so that the signal can travel through telephone lines.

API

See application program interface.

application

A program that runs on a computer.

application program interface

A set of routines, protocols, and tools that programmers use to develop software applications. APIs simplify the development process by providing commonly used programming procedures.

Asynchronous Transfer Mode

A network technology that uses start bits and stop bits (identifying the beginning and end of digital code) to facilitate data transfer. ATM equipment can transmit video, audio, and computer data over the same network, ensuring that no single type of data dominates the line.

ATM

See Asynchronous Transfer Mode.

Automatic Call Distribution (ACD) applications

A separate system or built-in feature of a PBX that equally distributes incoming calls to agents. As calls come in, they are placed into a queue (or a waiting line) for the next available agent. The RLC and its associated remote units support all of Nortel Networks' ACD applications.

B**bandwidth**

The amount of data that the network can transmit, usually expressed in Mbytes per second.

baseboard

See motherboard.

Basic Input/Output System

Flash ROM-based code that runs the Power-On Self-Test (POST) and bootstrap loader. BIOS contains low-level access routines for hardware that can be called from DOS.

basic rate interface

An ISDN subscriber service that uses two B (64Kbps) channels and one D (64 Kbps) channel to transmit voice, video, and data signals.

BIOS

See Basic Input/Output System.

bit

Short for binary digit, the smallest unit of information on a machine. A single bit can hold only one of two values: 0 or 1.

Boolean logic

A logic system that enables a computer to use electricity to make complex decisions. The basic logic gates (And, Or, and Not) determine the flow of electricity through the computer's circuitry and whether specific computing functions are carried out.

boolean

A value that can only be true or false.

branch station

A Meridian Digital Telephone set located at the Remote Office 9110, 9115, or 9150 site.

BRI

See basic rate interface.

bridge

A protocol-independent device that connects two LANs or two segments of the same LAN. Bridges are faster (and less versatile) than routers because they forward packets without analyzing and rerouting messages.

bridge port

Bridge ports are configured on the Remote Office 9150 unit and are used to connect branch office trunks through the host PBX to accommodate conference calls, remote station to remote station calls, and so on.

bus

A collection of wires that connects the microprocessor and main memory to internal computer components. All buses consist of an address bus that transfers data and a data bus that transfers information about where the data should go.

In a network, the bus (also called the backbone) is the main cable that connects all devices on a LAN.

byte

Abbreviation for binary term, a unit of storage capable of holding a single character. On almost all modern computers, a byte is equal to eight bits. Large amounts of memory are indicated in terms of kilobytes (1024 bytes), megabytes (1 048 576 bytes), and gigabytes (1 073 741 824 bytes).

C**cache**

A temporary storage area in computer memory.

call on demand

A call connection that is opened only when a connection to the host PBX is required. This is different from a permanent connection, that is open all the time.

call treatment

A method of handling applied to a call while it is waiting to be answered or serviced.

caller ID

Caller ID is used on the RLC to identify the number of the caller requesting access to one of its ports. It is also used on remote units to authenticate incoming calls from the RLC.

calling line identification

An optional service that identifies the telephone number of the caller. This information can then be used to route the call to the appropriate agent or skillset. The caller's telephone number can also be displayed on a phoneset.

card

A thin, rectangular plate that chips and other electronic components are placed on. Examples of cards include motherboards, expansion boards, daughterboards, controller boards, network interface cards, and video adapters.

central processing unit

This is the system unit that holds a PC's essential components.

CBT

See computer-based training.

CD-ROM

A type of optical disk capable of storing large amounts of data (up to 1 Gbyte), although the most common size is 630 Mbytes. A single CD-ROM has the storage capacity of 700 floppy disks and is particularly well-suited to information that requires large storage capacity.

chip

The small flake of silicon crystal that makes up the microprocessor. 2. A type of controller.

CLAN

See customer local area network.

CLID

See calling line identification.

client

The part of a client/server architecture that runs on a personal computer or workstation and relies on a server to perform some operations. For example, an e-mail client is an application that enables you to send and receive e-mail.

COD

See call on demand.

codec

An acronym for COder-DECoder. A device that codes analog signals into digital signals for transmission and decodes digital signals into analog signals for receiving.

COM or COMM

Communications port. This usually refers to the Logical Device name of PC serial ports as defined by DOS.

computer-based training

A type of education that students learn by running special training programs on a computer. CBT is especially effective for training people to use computer applications, because the CBT program can be integrated with the applications.

Configuration Manager

The software application used to configure and administer remote units and the RLC port that they are connected to.

controller board

A special type of expansion board that contains a controller for a peripheral device. When you attach new devices to a computer, such as a disk drive, often a controller board must also be added.

CPU

See central processing unit.

CPU clock

The clock that regulates the execution of instructions inside a computer. *See also* real-time clock.

crash

A serious computer failure whereby the computer stops working or a program closes unexpectedly. A crash indicates a hardware malfunction or a serious software bug.

customer local area network

The LAN that your corporate services and resources connect to. The RLC and its associated remote units both connect to the CLAN.

D**daughterboard**

Usually used as a synonym for an expansion board, a daughterboard is any printed circuit board that connects directly or indirectly to a motherboard.

DB9 connector

A 9-pin connector labeled ADMIN that provides the RS-232 serial port interface. This serial port connection can be used to configure a Remote Office 9150 unit that is directly connected to a PC.

DB25 connector

The DB25 connector on the RLC Multi-I/O cable--Enhanced is for future use.

DC

See direct current.

DHCP

See dynamic host configuration protocol.

digital linear tape

A high-capacity 1/2-inch streaming tape cartridge format.

digital signal processor

A special type of coprocessor that manipulates analog data, such as sound or photographs, that has been converted to digital form.

DIMM

See dual in-line memory module.

direct current

DC, the electrical power used by computers, comes from a single source (such as a battery) that provides a single voltage that stays at a constant level. AC, the power provided by utility companies, must be converted to DC before it can be used in computer systems.

directory number

The number that identifies a phoneset on a switch. The directory number (DN) could be a local extension (local DN), a public network telephone number, or an automatic call distribution directory number (ACD-DN).

DIP

A type of protective packaging for silicon memory chips that provides a safe and convenient means of installing and removing the chip.

DIP switch

A series of tiny switches built into circuit boards that enables you to configure a circuit board for a particular type of computer or application. DIP switches are always toggle switches. This means that they have two possible positions: on or off (or 1 or 0).

direct memory access

DMA speeds up system performance by moving blocks of memory around inside the computer (typically between I/O devices and memory). This process enables the microprocessor to spend its time performing other functions.

DLL

See dynamic link library.

DLT

See digital linear tape.

DMA

See direct memory access.

DN

See directory number.

driver

A program that controls a device. Every device, whether it is a printer, disk drive, or keyboard, must have a driver program. A driver acts like a translator between the device and programs that use the device.

DSP

See digital signal processor.

dual in-line memory module

The protective packaging for microprocessor chips that provides a safe and convenient means of installing and removing the chip.

dynamic host configuration protocol

A protocol for dynamically assigning IP addresses to devices on a network.

dynamic link library

A library of executable functions or data that can be used by a Windows application. Typically, a DLL provides one or more particular functions and a program accesses the functions by creating either a static or dynamic link to the DLL. A DLL can be used by several applications at the same time.

dynamic port pool

A RLC feature that is similar to multiuser ports in that multiple stations can share ports on the RLC. However, users sharing ports from a dynamic pool are assigned to the first available port on the RLC.

E**ECC**

See error correction code.

ECP

See extended capabilities port.

EEPROM

See electronically erasable programmable read-only media.

EIDE

See enhanced IDE.

EISA

See extended industry standard architecture bus.

ELAN

See embedded local area network.

electronically erasable programmable read-only media

A memory chip that needs only a higher than normal voltage and current to erase its contents. An EEPROM chip can be erased and reprogrammed without taking it out of its socket. An EEPROM chip gives a computer and its peripherals a means of storing data without the need for a constant supply of electricity.

electrostatic discharge

Discharge of a static charge on a surface or body through a conductive path to ground. Can be damaging to integrated circuits.

embedded local area network

This is the network connection from the host PBX to the RLC. It is an Ethernet LAN that is segmented from the rest of the Ethernet network and enables signaling and administration access to the RLC. Nortel Networks recommends the following:

- IP traffic should not be routed between the main network and the ELAN.
- An IP route should not be established between the two LANs.

Emergency Service Number

The Remote Office 9150 unit allows you to program an emergency service number (such as 911).

EMI

Electro-magnetic interference. Interference in signal transmission or reception caused by the radiation of electrical and magnetic fields.

enhanced IDE

An IDE hard disk interface enhanced with hardware and firmware changes to support disks larger than 540 Mbytes, four disks instead of two, and faster transfer rates. *See also* IDE.

enhanced parallel port

A parallel port standard for PCs that supports bidirectional communication between the PC and attached devices (such as a printer).

EPP

See enhanced parallel port.

error correction code

A scheme that can detect and fix single-bit memory errors without crashing the system. Also known as Error Detection and Correction (EDAC).

ESD

See electrostatic discharge.

Ethernet

A widely used LAN protocol that uses a bus topology and supports data transfer rates of 10 Mbps.

event

An occurrence or action on the RLC or remote unit, such as the sending or receiving of a message, the opening or closing of an application, or the reporting of an error. Some events are for information only, while others can indicate a problem.

expansion board

Any board that plugs in to one of the computer's expansion slots. Expansion boards include controller boards, LAN cards, and video adapters.

expansion bus

Enables expansion boards to access the microprocessor and memory. *See also* bus.

expression

A building block of a script, used to test for conditions, perform calculations, or compare values within scripts. *See also* logical expression, mathematical expressions, and relational expression.

extended capabilities port

A parallel-port standard for PCs that supports bidirectional communication between the PC and attached devices (such as a printer).

extended industry standard architecture bus

A 32-bit bus that accommodates ISA PC boards.

F**first-level threshold**

The value that represents the lowest value of the normal range for a given field in a threshold class. The system tracks how often the value for the field falls below this value.

G

G.711

G.711 is the international standard for encoding telephone audio on a 64 Kbps channel. It is a pulse code modulation (PCM) scheme operating at an 8 kHz sample rate, with 8 bits per sample. According to the Nyquist theorem, that states that a signal must be sampled at twice its highest frequency component, G.711 can encode frequencies between 0 and 4 kHz. Telcos can select between two different variants of G.711: A-law and μ -law. A-law is the standard for international circuits.

G.726

G.726 is a standard ADPCM algorithm specified by the International Telecommunication Union (ITU) for reducing the 64 kbps A-Law or μ -law logarithmic data of a normal telephone line to 16, 24, 32, or 40 kbps.

G.729

G.729 is a voice compression International Telecommunications Union (ITU) standard that can be used in a wide range of applications including wireless communications, digital satellite systems, packetized speech, and digital leased lines. G.729 provides 8 Kbps bandwidth for compressed speech at toll quality (equivalent to G.726 32 Kbps ADPCM under clean channel condition).

gateway

A device that functions as a node on two or more networks, forwarding packets from one network to addresses in the other networks. In a Remote Office context, the gateway is the device on the network that directs traffic to and from the Remote Office 9150 unit or RLC.

Gbyte

See gigabyte.

general protection fault

A computer condition that causes a Windows application to crash. GPFs usually occur when one application attempts to use memory assigned to another application.

gigabyte

1 073 741 824 bytes. One Gbyte is equal to 1024 Mbytes.

GPCP

General purpose computing platform

GPF

See general protection fault.

graphical user interface

The information displayed on the monitor when a Windows application (or another non-command-based application) runs. A graphical user interface uses features such as pointers, icons, I-beams, and menus to make the program easier to use.

GUI

See graphical user interface.

H**handshaking**

A process involved in establishing a valid connection or signal between two pieces of hardware or communications software.

host call appearance key

An assigned key on the telephone set at the remote site that is used to establish a connection with the host PBX or to receive incoming calls from the host PBX.

host-controlled call mode

When a call is placed to someone at the host site, or when someone from the host site calls the remote site, the call is in host-controlled call mode. Calls in host-controlled mode are routed through the host PBX.

host station

A telephone set located at the host PBX site.

hub

A common connection point for all 10BaseT cables connected to a small network. A hub enables data to go from one device to another.

I**icon**

A small picture that represents an object or program in a graphical user interface.

IDE

Commonly used to describe the AT attachment design, the dominant hard disk interface. IDE is a cost-effective interface technology for mass storage devices that the controller is integrated into the disk or CD-ROM drive in.

idle timer

Identifies the maximum length of time that an ISDN connection should remain idle before it can be closed. Idle means that a voice connection does not exist, and buttons are not being pressed on the digital telephone.

Industry Standard Architecture

A 16-bit standard interface for add-in cards.

input/output

Refers to any operation, program, or device that enters data into a computer or extracts data from a computer.

integrated services digital network

A worldwide digital communication protocol that permits telephone networks to carry data, voice, and other source material. There are two kinds of ISDN lines—Primary Rate Interface (PRI) and Basic Rate Interface (BRI). *See also* BRI.

internet protocol

The protocol within TCP/IP that governs the breakup of data messages into packets, the routing of the packets from sender to destination network, and the reassembly of the packets into the original data messages at the destination.

I/O

See input/output.

IP

See internet protocol.

IP address

Internet Protocol address. An identifier for a computer or device on a TCP/IP network. Networks use the TCP/IP protocol to route messages based on the IP address of the destination. The format of an IP address is a 32-bit numeric address written as four numbers separated by periods. Each number can be 0–255. For example, 1.160.10.240 could be an IP address.

IPX

Internetwork Packet Exchange. A networking protocol used by the Novell NetWare operating systems.

ISA

See Industry Standard Architecture.

ISDN

See integrated services digital network.

J**jumper**

A metal bridge that closes an electrical circuit. Typically, a jumper consists of a plastic plug that fits over a pair of protruding pins. Jumpers are sometimes used to configure expansion boards. By placing a jumper plug over a different set of pins, you can change a board's parameters.

K**Kbyte**

See kilobyte.

kilobyte

1024 bytes. Roughly the amount of information in half a typewritten page.

L**LAN**

See local area network.

LCD

Liquid crystal display. An alphanumeric display using liquid crystal sealed between two pieces of glass.

LED

Light emitting diode. A semiconductor diode that emits light when a current is passed through it.

local area network

A computer network that spans a relatively small area. Most LANs connect workstations and personal computers and are confined to a single building or group of buildings.

local call

A call that originates at your site.

local station

A telephone set located at a remote site.

logical expression

A symbol used in scripts to test for different conditions. Logical expressions are AND, OR, and NOT. *See also* mathematical expressions and relational expression.

M**M1**

Meridian 1 PBX

MAT

Meridian Administration Tools. This is a Nortel Networks software application that is used to administer the Meridian 1 PBX.

mathematical expressions

The expressions used in scripts to add, subtract, multiply, and divide values. Mathematical expressions are addition (+), subtraction (-), division (/), and multiplication (*). *See also* logical expression, relational expression.

Mbyte

See megabyte.

megabyte

A unit of measurement for data storage equal to 1 048 576 bytes.

megahertz

One million cycles per second.

MHz

See megahertz.

RLC

An abbreviation for Reach Line Card. The RLC is installed on the host PBX and relays voice and signaling information from the digital telephones connected at a remote site to the host PBX.

motherboard

The principal board that has connectors for attaching devices to the bus. Typically, the motherboard contains the CPU, memory, and basic controllers for the system. On PCs, the motherboard is often called the system board.

MTBF

Mean time between failures.

Mu-law

A companding method for encoding and decoding audio signals in 24-channel pulse-code-modulated (PCM) systems. Mu-law is the method used in North America and Japan *See also* A-law.

multiuser ports

A Remote Office 9150 unit port feature that allows multiple stations to time-share a single port on the host PBX. All stations that use a multiuser port are always assigned to the same port number (TN) on the host PBX.

N**NetBeui**

See NetBIOS enhanced user interface.

NetBIOS

See Network Basic Input Output System.

NetBIOS enhanced user interface

An enhanced version of the NetBIOS protocol used by network operating systems such as LAN Manager, LAN Server, Windows for Workgroups, Windows 95 and Windows NT.

Network Basic Input Output System

An application programming interface (API) that augments the DOS BIOS by adding special functions for local-area networks (LANs). Almost all LANs for PCs are based on the NetBIOS. Some LAN manufacturers have even extended it, adding additional network capabilities.

network interface card

An expansion board that enables a PC to be connected to a local area network (LAN).

NIC

See network interface card.

node

A device connected to the network capable of connecting to other network devices. For example, the RLC and each remote unit are nodes on the network.

NPA

See Number Plan Area.

Number Plan Area

Area code

NVRAM

Non-Volatile Random Access Memory. RAM that doesn't lose its memory when you shut the electricity off to it.

O**OA&M**

Operations, administration, and maintenance

object linking and embedding

A compound document standard that enables you to create objects with one application and then link or embed them in a second application.

ODBC

See Open Database Connectivity.

OEM

Original Equipment Manufacturer. The maker of equipment marketed by another vendor, usually under the name of the reseller. The OEM may only manufacture certain components, or complete computers, that are then often configured with software and/or other hardware, by the reseller.

OLE

See object linking and embedding.

online/offline table

The online/offline table is configured on the RLC. It allows you to schedule times that the host PBX connection is made available to the remote site and the times all telephones at the remote site can use only the local telephone service.

The online/offline table is used for controlling ISDN BRI costs.

Open Database Connectivity

A Microsoft-defined database application program interface (API) standard.

Open System Interconnection

A worldwide communications standard that defines a framework for implementing protocols in seven layers.

OS

Operating Standard

OSI

See Open System Interconnection.

P

packetized voice

Digital signal processors (DSPs), located in the Remote Office 9150 unit and RLC, convert analog voice into digital data. The data is constructed as a UDP/IP voice packet for transmission over an IP network.

parity

The quality of being either odd or even. The fact that all numbers have parity is commonly used in data communications to ensure the validity of data.

parallel port

A type of interface used to connect an external device such as a printer to a PC. Most personal computers have both a parallel port and at least one serial port.

PBX

See private branch exchange.

PC

Personal computer. A computer with an architecture that is compatible with the IBM PC.

pegging

The action of incrementing statistical counters to track system events.

pegging threshold

A threshold used to define a cut-off value for statistics such as short call and service level. Pegging thresholds are used in reports and historical statistics.

personal directory number

A DN that an agent can be reached directly on, usually for private calls.

phoneset

The physical device, connected to the switch, calls are presented to.

PING

Packet Internet Groper. A protocol that can be used to test the Ethernet connection to devices on the network (such as the RLC and its associated remote units).

position ID

A unique identifier for a phoneset, used by the switch to route calls to the phoneset.

POST

See power-on self-test.

power-on self-test

Initializes and performs rudimentary tests on baseboard hardware, including CPU, floating point unit, interrupts, memory, real-time clock, video, and auto-initializing PCI and EISA bus.

private branch exchange

A telephone switch, typically used by a business to service its internal telephone needs. A PBX usually offers more advanced features than are generally available on the public network. Users of the PBX share a certain number of outside lines for placing telephone calls external to the PBX.

protocol

A standard format used for communication between two devices. The protocol determines the type of error checking to be used, the data compression method (if any), how the sending device will indicate that it has finished sending a message, and how the receiving device will indicate that it has received a message.

PSTN

See public switched telephone network.

public switched telephone network

Any common carrier network that provides circuit switching between public users. The term is usually applied to the public telephone network.

R

RAM

Random Access Memory. This is the most common type of memory found in computers and other devices, such as printers. The term RAM is usually synonymous with main memory, the memory available to programs. For example, a computer with 8 Mbytes of RAM has approximately 8 million bytes of memory that programs can use.

RAS

Remote Access Server. A host on the local area network that is equipped with modems to enable users to connect to the network over telephone lines.

real-time clock

A clock that keeps track of the time even when the computer is turned off. *See also* CPU clock.

recorded announcement route

A resource installed on the switch that offers a recorded announcement to callers.

relational expression

An expression used in scripts to test for different conditions. Relational expressions are less than (<), greater than (>), less than or equal (<=), greater than or equal (>=), and not equal (<>). *See also* logical expression and mathematical expressions.

Remote Access Services

A feature built into Windows NT and Windows 95 that enables users to log in to an NT-based LAN using a modem, X.25 connection, or WAN link. Also known as Dial Up Networking.

remote station

A telephone set located at the Remote Office 9150 or Remote Office 911x series site.

RJ-11 Connector

A six-conductor modular jack that is typically wired for four conductors. The RJ-11 jack is the most common telephone jack in the entire world.

RJ-45 Connector

An eight position, eight conductor modular jack used for data transmission over a standard telephone wire. The RJ-45 jack provides the 10BaseT Ethernet connection.

ROM

Read-Only Memory. This is the computer memory that data has been prerecorded on and cannot be removed from.

router

A device that connects two LANs. Routers are similar to bridges but provide additional functionality, such as the ability to filter messages and forward them to different places based on various criteria.

RTC

See real-time clock.

S**SCA**

See single connector architecture.

second-level threshold

The value used in display thresholds that represents the highest value of the normal range for a given statistic.

security identifier

The remote unit sends the branch office security identifier (password) to the RLC for each connection request. The RLC matches the identifier configured for the RLC port. When it finds a match, it grants access to the port and allows the call to proceed.

sequenced packet exchange

A transport layer protocol (layer 4 of the OSI Model) used in Novell Network networks. The SPX layer sits on top of the IPX layer (layer 3) and provides connection-oriented services between two nodes on the network. SPX is used primarily by client/server applications.

serial port

A general-purpose interface that can be used for almost any type of device, including modems, mice, and printers (although most printers are connected to a parallel port). Most serial ports on personal computers conform to the RS-232C or RS-422 standards.

server

A computer or device on a network that manages network resources. Examples of servers include file servers, print servers, network servers, and database servers.

service

A process that adheres to a Windows NT structure and requirements. A service provides system functionality.

Service Control Manager

A Windows NT process that manages the different services on the PC.

service profile identifier

When you order an ISDN line, your phone company provides you with a SPID for every phone number you have.

silence suppression

A feature that prevents packet transmission during periods when there is no voice data present.

SIMM

Single In-line Memory Module. Used on Macs and PCs. A form of chip packaging where leads (pins) are arranged in a single row protruding from the chip.

simple network management protocol

A set of protocols for managing complex networks. SNMP works by sending messages, called protocol data units (PDUs), to different parts of a network and then analyzing the responses.

single connector architecture

A method for supplying power and data lines in one connector on hard disks. Provides hot-swap capability.

single-user ports

A RLC port that supports one remote station.

Small Computer System Interface

A standard for connecting and controlling mass storage devices such as CD-ROMS, tape drives, and hard disks.

SNMP

See simple network management protocol.

SPID

See service profile identifier.

SPRE code

A Special Prefix code that is used to initiate use of a host PBX feature. In a Remote Office context, SPRE codes are used to

- toggle a remote site between online and offline modes
- use the paging feature
- switch an analog or ATA equipped station from host-controlled mode to locally controlled mode so that local calls can be made
- register a Remote Office 9150 unit for a multiuser or dynamic port

SPX

See sequenced packet exchange.

SRAM

Static Random Access Memory. A form of RAM that retains its data without the constant refreshing that DRAM requires.

station

A telephone or fax machine located at a remote site.

stop bit

In asynchronous communications, a bit that indicates a byte has just been transmitted. Every byte of data is preceded by a start bit and followed by a stop bit.

subnet mask

A subnet mask is the part of the IP address used to represent a subnetwork within a network. A typical IP address might be 192.210.34.144. Each part of this address is made up of eight bits. The subnet mask identifies to the RLC or remote unit what portion of the IP address represents the network (and subnetwork) and what portion represents the host.

SVGA

Super Video Graphics Adapter. An extension of the VGA video standard.

switch

In a telecommunications network, a switch is the hardware that receives phone calls and provides connections to telephone sets. The switch allows a connection to be established as necessary and terminated when there is no longer a session to support it.

In networks, a device that filters and forwards packets between LAN segments. Switches operate at the data link layer (layer 2) of the OSI Reference Model and therefore support any packet protocol. LANs that use switches to join segments are called switched LANs or, in the case of Ethernet networks, switched Ethernet LANs.

switch resource

A device that is configured on the switch.

T**TAPI**

See telephone application programming interface.

TCP/IP

Transport Control Protocol/Internet Protocol. The communication protocol used to connect devices on the Internet. TCP/IP is the standard for transmitting data over networks.

telephone application programming interface

A term that refers to the Windows Telephony API. TAPI is a changing (i.e. improving) set of functions supported by Windows that allow Windows applications to program telephone-line based devices such as single and multi-line phones (both digital and analog), modems and fax machines in a device-independent manner.

telephony

The science of translating sound into electrical signals, transmitting them, and then converting them back to sound. The term is used frequently to refer to computer hardware and software that perform functions traditionally performed by telephone equipment.

TFTP

See trivial file transfer protocol.

threshold

A value for a statistic that system handling of the statistic changes at.

threshold class

A set of options that specifies how statistics are treated in reports and real-time displays. *See also* pegging threshold.

Token Ring

A PC network protocol developed by IBM. A Token Ring network is a type of computer network whereby all the computers are arranged schematically in a circle.

trivial file transfer protocol

A simplified version of FTP that transfers files but does not provide password protection or user-directory capability. It is associated with the TCP/IP family of protocols. TFTP depends on the connectionless datagram delivery service, UDP.

trunk

A communications link between a PBX and the public central office, or between PBXs. Various trunk types provide services such as Direct Inward Dialing (DID), ISDN, and central office connectivity.

trunk access digits

Trunk access digits are numbers that are used by the remote unit to determine the trunk to use when routing a call. For example, 9 is a common trunk access digit used to obtain an outside line.

trunk groups

A trunk group consists of one or more trunk lines that are logically grouped. You can configure up to eight trunk groups on the Remote Office 9150 unit.

U**uninterruptible power supply**

A power supply that includes a battery to maintain power in the event of a power outage. Typically, a UPS keeps a computer running for several minutes after a power outage, enabling you to save data that is in RAM and to shut down the computer safely.

UPS

See uninterruptible power supply.

utility

A program that performs a specific task, usually related to managing system resources. Operating systems contain a number of utilities for managing disk drives, printers, and other devices.

V**V.35**

An ITU-T standard describing a synchronous, physical layer protocol used for communications between a network access device and a packet network. V.35 is most commonly used in the United States and in Europe, and is recommended for speeds up to 48 Kbps. In practice, V.35 is used for synchronous transmission up to 2.048 Mbps.

V.35 interface

A Frame Relay network technology used to carry the voice conversation and telephone set control signals over:

- a Frame Relay Access Device to send the voice and signal packets to the Remote Office 9150 unit via a Frame Relay Network

- a Channel Service Unit/Data Service Unit (CSU/DSU) to access a switched 56K line service

voice compression

Prior to transmission, the voice data is compressed; after transmission, the data is converted back to voice data at the destination. Voice compression means that voice consumes less bandwidth, leaving more bandwidth for data or other voice or fax communications.

voice jitter attenuation

A feature that removes the variable delays from the voice packets sent across the IP network, thus avoiding awkward-sounding speech.

Voice over Internet Protocol (VoIP)

Technology that uses the IP data network to carry the voice conversation and telephone set control signals between a remote site and the host PBX.

W**WAN**

Wide area network. A computer network that spans a relatively large geographical area. Typically, a WAN consists of two or more local area networks (LANs). The largest WAN in existence is the Internet.

Fields Index

Symbols

802.1p Mapping 90

A

Addon Module Type 87

Address Information

IP Address 90

IP Gateway 90

IP Network Mask 90

Analog Localization 87

Autohold 87

Automatic DHCP Configuration 90

Available Flex Channels 131

Available MIPS 130

Available Voice Channels 130, 131

B

Bandwidth (BW) Connection Statistics

IP QoS Status 124

No of Voice Calls on IP 124

No of Voice Calls on PSTN 124

Remote Unit Number 124

Signaling Status 124

Total Up Trunk BW 124

Used IP BW 124

Used Trunk BW 124

BroadCast Packet 138

Browse

Upload Configuration 115

Browse (button)

Software Upload 146

C

Call BW 127

Caller Info Statistics

Call BW 127

Connection ID 127

Current Media 127

Last Transition to IP 127

Last Transition to PSTN 127

Priority 127

Remote ID 127

Start Time 127

Transitions to IP 127

Transitions to PSTN 127

Type 127

Connection ID 127

Current Media 127

D

Device Number 130

DiffServ CodePoint 90

DSP Gain 85

DSP Statistics

Total Voice Channels 130

DSP statistics

Available Flex Channels 131

Available MIPS 130

Available Voice Channels 130, 131

Device Number 130

In Service 130

Module Number 130

Name 131

Single Dig Dev ID 130

Total Channels 130

Total Flex Channels 131

Total MIPS 130
Total Modem Channels 130
Total Reserved Channels 131
Total Tones Channels 131

E

Emergency Activation Code 85
Error % 138
Ethernet Interface Statistics
 UPkts 134

H

Hour 138

I

In Service 130
Inbound Security ID 94
IP Address 90
 Software Upload 145
 Upload Configuration 114
IP Connection 93
 IP Address 93
 IP Signaling 93
IP Gateway 90
IP Network Mask 90
IP QoS Status 124

L

Last Transition to IP 127
Last Transition to PSTN 127
Local Call
 Autohold 87
 Local Calling Key Position 86
Local DN 87

M

Messages 120
Modem Tones 87
Module Number 130

N

Name 131
Network statistics
 BroadCast Packet 138
 Error % 138
 Hour 138
 Rx DiscPkt 138
 Rx Dropped 138
 Rx Error 138
 Rx Frames 138
 Rx MultiPkt 138
 Rx UCastPkt 138
 Tx DiscPkt 138
 Tx Frames 138
 Tx UCastPkt 138
No of Voice Calls on IP 124
No of Voice Calls on PSTN 124
Node Name 85

O

Outbound Security ID 94

P

Phone Type 87
Priority 127
PSTN Connection 93
 PSTN Number to Connect to RLC 93

R

registration 86
Remote ID 127

Remote Unit Number 124
Resize Logs
 Messages 120
RLC Port Number 93
Rx DiscPkt 138
Rx Dropped 138
Rx Error 138
Rx Frames 138
Rx MultiPkt 138
Rx UCastPkt 138

S

Security ID
 Inbound Security ID 94
 Outbound Security ID 94
Security Level 94
Signaling Status 124
Single Dig Dev ID 130
SPRE Codes
 DeRegistration 86
 Offline 86
 Online 86
 registration 86
Start Time 127
statistics
 Bandwidth (BW) Connection Statistics
 IP QoS Status 124
 No of Voice Calls on IP 124
 No of Voice Calls on PSTN 124
 Remote Unit Number 124
 Signaling Status 124
 Total Up Trunk BW 124
 Used IP BW 124
 Used Trunk BW 124
 Caller Info Statistics
 Call BW 127
 Connection ID 127
 Current Media 127
 Last Transition to IP 127
 Last Transition to PSTN 127
 Priority 127

Remote ID 127
Start Time 127
Transitions to IP 127
Transitions to PSTN 127
Type 127
Caller Info Statistics field descriptions 127
DSP statistics
 Available Flex Channels 131
 Available MIPS 130
 Available Voice Channels 130, 131
 Device Number 130
 In Service 130
 Module Number 130
 Name 131
 Single Dig Dev ID 130
 Total Channels 130
 Total Flex Channels 131
 Total MIPS 130
 Total Modem Channels 130
 Total Reserved Channels 131
 Total Tones Channels 131
 Total Voice Channels 130
Ethernet Interface Statistics
 UPkts 134
Network statistics
 BroadCast Packet 138
 Error % 138
 Hour 138
 Rx DiscPkt 138
 Rx Dropped 138
 Rx Error 138
 Rx Frames 138
 Rx MultiPkt 138
 Rx UCastPkt 138
 Tx DiscPkt 138
 Tx Frames 138
 Tx UCastPkt 138
Resize Logs
 Messages 120

T

Time Offset 85
Total Channels 130
Total Flex Channels 131
Total MIPS 130
Total Modem Channels 130
Total Reserved Channels 131
Total Tones Channels 131
Total Up Trunk BW 124
Total Voice Channels 130
Transitions to IP 127

Transitions to PSTN 127

Tx DiscPkt 138

Tx Frames 138

Tx UCastPkt 138

Type 127

U

Unit ID 85, 93

UPkts 134

Used IP BW 124

Used Trunk BW 124

Index

Numerics

- 10BaseT Ethernet
 - connection options 11
 - description 2

A

- ACD features
 - features
 - ACD features 20
- Admin 134
- Admin connector 177
- Automatic Call Distribution (ACD)
 - applications 21

B

- backup
 - creating a backup configuration file 111
 - introduction 110
 - restoring the configuration 113
 - storing configuration files 110
- bandwidth
 - measuring with Bandwidth Connection Statistics 122
- Bandwidth Connection Statistics screen 122
- bandwidth limit 98
 - display message 102

C

- cable connectors
 - RJ-11 7
 - RJ-45 7
- cable modem 10
- cables

- included 30
 - not included 30
- cabling
 - cables included with the External IP Adapter unit 30
 - cables included with the Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter 30
 - cables you must supply 30
 - Internal IP Adapter
 - TCM 7
- call forward feature 20
- call modes
 - host-controlled 13
- call transfer 104
- call waiting 20, 103
 - host-controlled mode 103
- call waiting feature
 - features
 - call waiting 20
- Caller Information Statistics
 - displaying 126
- Caller Information Statistics screen 125
- QoS Transitioning Technology 125
- calls
 - call transfer feature 104
 - call waiting feature 103
 - conference feature 105
 - display messages 101
 - emergency service calls feature 103
 - hold feature 103
 - host-controlled indicator updates 100
 - host-controlled mode 96
 - incoming 13
 - methods for placing outgoing calls 98
 - offline mode 96
 - online mode 96
 - online/offline modes
 - putting unit in online mode 105
 - outgoing 13

- placing a host-controlled call 98
 - bandwidth limit 98
 - DSP limit 98
- Canadian Standards Association
 - CSA C22.2, No 950 182
- Canadian Standards Association (CSA) 182
- Channel 134
- computer telephony integration applications 20
- conference 105
- conference feature 20
- configuration
 - default values
 - restoring 58, 59
 - deregistration SPRE code 66
 - emergency code 62
 - IP information 57
 - offline SPRE code 64
 - online SPRE code 63
 - registration SPRE code 65
 - telephone menu 57
 - default password 57
 - display local IP 57
 - modify deregistration SPRE code 66
 - modify emergency code 62
 - modify offline SPRE code 64
 - modify online SPRE code 63
 - modify registration SPRE code 65
 - modify unit ID 60
 - restore default values 58, 59
 - time offset 61
 - user name 57
 - time offset 61
 - unit ID 60
- Configuration Manager
 - Help
 - Display Logs definitions 162
- configuring the unit using the telephone menu
 - accessing the telephone menu 55
 - before you begin 57
 - information you need 54
 - running the telephone menu script 57
 - telephone menu key function 55
- configuring the unit with Configuration Manager
 - IP addresses
 - configuring 88

- RLC connection information
 - configuring 91
- system settings
 - configuring 83
 - field descriptions 85
 - system identification information 82
- connection options
 - 10BaseT Ethernet 11
 - administration PC 31
 - introduction 11
- CSA C22.2, No. 950 182

D

- DB-9 connector
 - Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter 7
- deployment
 - IP options 37
 - on-demand 37
 - permanent 37
 - media 36
 - NAT 36
 - PNAT 36
- deployment options
 - introduction 36
 - Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter 36
- deregistration 86
 - SPRE code 66
- digital telephones
 - display messages
 - introduction 101
 - message descriptions 101
 - going online and offline
 - introduction 105
 - overriding an automatic offline event 106
 - using the SPRE code for online mode 105
 - indicator updates
 - host-controlled indicator updates 100
 - introduction 100
 - modes of operation
 - controlling online and offline modes 96
 - host-controlled mode 96
 - introduction 96
 - offline mode 96

- online mode 96
- placing and receiving calls
 - methods for placing outgoing calls 98
 - placing host-controlled calls 98
- supported sets 19
- telephone features
 - introduction 103
- troubleshooting 153
- Disc 134, 135
- Display Logs
 - definitions 162
- display messages
 - bandwidth limit 102
 - going offline 101
 - hostless mode 101
 - offline mode 101
 - online mode 102
 - port already in use 102
 - port not logged in 102
 - release and try again 102
- documents
 - related xxii
- DSP
 - DSP Statistics screen 128
- DSP application modules
 - Hardware Statistics 128, 132
- DSP limit 98
 - display message
 - display messages
 - DSP limit 102
- DSP Statistics screen 128

E

- electromagnetic compatibility 183
 - AS 3548 Class B (Australia) 183
 - Class A of FCC Part 15, Subpart J 183
 - CSPR B requirements 183
 - margin 183
- electromagnetic immunity 184
- electrostatic discharge 185
- emergency
 - service number description 23
- emergency calls
 - placing 103

- emergency code 62
- emergency service calls 103
- emergency service calls feature 103
- EN90650 182
- equipment
 - equipment attachment notices 179
- equipment attachment notices 179
 - Industry Canada 180
- Err 134, 135
- Ethernet
 - Ethernet Interface Statistics screen 132
- Ethernet Interface Statistics
 - Admin 134
 - Channel 134
 - Disc 134, 135
 - Err 134, 135
 - Ifc Type 134
 - IfcNo 134
 - In - Octet 134
 - LAN Drv 134
 - MPkts 134, 135
 - MTU Len 134
 - Oper 134
 - Out - Octet 134
 - QLen 135
 - Speed 134
 - UPkts 134
- Ethernet Interface Statistics screen 132
- extracting upgrade files from the download file 142

F

- features
 - call forward 20
 - call transfer 104
 - call waiting 20, 103
 - host-controlled mode 103
 - conference 20, 105
 - hold 20
 - transfer 20
- firmware
 - extracting upgrade files 142
 - upgrade
 - downloading files 141

performing 144

G

going offline
display message 101

H

Hardware Statistics
introduction 128, 132
Help
Display Logs definitions 162
hold 20, 103
hold feature 20
host-controlled calls
placing 98
bandwidth limit 98
DSP limit 98
host-controlled mode
indicator updates 100
overview 96
hostless mode
display message 101

I

Ifc Type 134
IfcNo 134
In - Octet 134
incoming calls 13
Industry Canada notice 180
installation
External IP Adapter unit
powering up 52
general safety 40
Internal IP Adapter unit
connecting 46
Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP
Adapter unit
powering up 47
removing the base of the digital telephone
42
Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter 40

unpacking and inspecting the equipment 41
international safety compliance 182
Australia 182
Canadian Standards Association 182
EN90650 182
Underwriters Laboratory (UL) 182
Internet Access Device
description 10
IP
addressing and routing 34
PSTN and IP network diagram 12
remote unit 57
IP deployment 37
IP on-demand 37
IP permanent 37
IP on-demand 37
IP permanent 37
ISDN Basic Rate Interface (BRI) router 10

L

LAN Drv 134
LEDs
description 5
Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter 152
Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit
LED display diagrams 6
troubleshooting 152
logs
clearing
introduction 121
displaying
introduction 118
viewing 118

M

media 36
Meridian Communication Adapters (MCA) 20
Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter
cables included 30
universal power supply 9
Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter
unit
cables included 30

- Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter
 - universal power supply 8
- Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter
 - cable connections 7
 - cable connectors 7
 - cables you must supply 30
 - configuring using the telephone menu 53
 - deployment options 36
 - installing 40
 - LEDs 152
 - network considerations 34
 - password 108
 - physical environment 28
 - using the digital telephone 95
- Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units
 - power requirements 25
- mounting options
 - Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter 30
- MPkts 134, 135
- MTU Len 134

N

- NAT 36
- network address translation (NAT) 36
- network considerations
 - introduction 34
 - IP addressing and routing 34
- no security 18
- notices
 - equipment attachment 179
 - Industry Canada 180

O

- offline 86
- offline mode
 - display message 101
- offline SPRE code 64
- online 86
- online mode
 - display message 102
- online SPRE code 63
- online/offline table

- configuration 22
- how the table works 22
- introduction 22
- offline mode 96
- online mode 96
- Oper 134
- Out - Octet 134
- outgoing calls 13

P

- password
 - Configuration Manager password 108
 - default 57
 - Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter password 108
- PC administration
 - administering multiple nodes 32
 - connection options 31
 - Ethernet connection 31
- PC requirements 32
- PING
 - using 163
- pin-out tables
 - connector
 - Admin 177
 - Power 178
 - RJ-45 ethernet connector 176
- placing calls
 - host-controlled 98
 - bandwidth limit 98
 - DSP limit 98
- PNAT 36
- port already in use
 - display message 102
- port not logged in
 - display message 102
- port number and network address translation (PNAT) 36
- Power
 - connector 178
- power requirements
 - Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units 25
- preinstallation preparation

unpacking and inspection 41

Q

QLen 135

QoS Transitioning Technology

Caller Information Statistics 125

R

Reach Line Card (RLC)

description 3

registration

registration SPRE code 65

related documents xxii

release and try again

display message 102

restoring

introduction 113

uploading a configuration file 114

RJ-11 connector 7

routers

NAT routers 36

PNAT routers 36

S

safety and regulatory information 181

electromagnetic compatibility 183

AS 3548 Class B (Australia) 183

Class A of FCC Part 15, Subpart J 183

CSPR B requirements 183

margin 183

electromagnetic immunity 184

electrostatic discharge 185

international safety compliance 182

Australia

TS001AS 3260 182

CSA C22.2, No. 950 182

EN90650 182

UL 1950 182

security

no security 18

security identifier 18

security identifier 18

software

upgrades

performing 148

Speed (statistic) 134

SPRE code

deregistration

modifying 66

offline

modifying 64

online

modifying 63

registration

modifying 65

SPRE codes 63–66

deregistration 86

offline 86

online 86

registration 86

statistics

Bandwidth Connection Statistics screen 122

Caller Information Statistics screen 125

QoS Transitioning Technology 125

DSP Statistics screen 128

Ethernet Interface Statistics

Admin 134

Channel 134

Disc 134, 135

Err 134, 135

Ifc Type 134

IfcNo 134

In - Octet 134

LAN Drv 134

MPkts 134, 135

MTULen 134

Oper 134

Out - Octet 134

QLen 135

Speed 134

UPkts 134

Ethernet Interface Statistics screen 132

T

TCM 7

- telephone features
 - emergency service calls 103
 - hold 103
 - introduction 103
 - telephone menu 57
 - accessing 55
 - default password 57
 - IP 57
 - display local IP 57
 - modify deregistration SPRE code 66
 - modify emergency code 62
 - modify offline SPRE code 64
 - modify online SPRE code 63
 - modify registration SPRE code 65
 - modify unit ID 60
 - password
 - default 57
 - restore default values 58, 59
 - time offset 61
 - user name 57
 - telephones
 - supported digital telephones 19
 - supported features 20
 - supported telephone modules 19
 - TFTP
 - and upgrades 144
 - defined 32
 - time offset 61
 - transfer 20
 - transfer feature 20
 - transport media 36
 - troubleshooting
 - before you begin 150
 - recovering from a catastrophic failure 166
 - using PING 163
 - TS001AS 3260 182
- ## U
- UL 1950 182
 - Underwriters Laboratory (UL.) 182
 - UL 1950 182
 - unit ID
 - modifying 60
 - universal power supply
 - Meridian Digital Telephone External IP Adapter 9
 - Meridian Digital Telephone Internal IP Adapter 8
 - upgrades
 - performing 142
 - firmware upgrade 144
 - obtaining the latest file 141
 - software upgrade 148
 - upgrades and configuration files 144
 - verifying the firmware and software versions 139
 - when to perform 144
 - UPkts 134
 - user name 57

Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter

Installation and Administration Guide

Copyright © 2001 Nortel Networks, All Rights Reserved.

Printed in Canada.

All information contained in this document is subject to change without notice. Nortel Networks reserves the right to make changes to equipment design or program components, as progress in engineering, manufacturing methods, or other circumstances may warrant.

*Nortel Networks, the Nortel Networks logo, the Globemark, and Unified Networks, Meridian 1, MSL-100, and Succession Communication Server for Enterprise 1000 are trademarks of Nortel Networks.

MICROSOFT, MS-DOS, WINDOWS, and WINDOWS NT are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Publication number: 555-8421-220

Product release: 1.3

Document release: Standard 1.1

Date: October 2001



Remote Office Network Engineering Guidelines

Standard 1.2

September 2001

Copyright © 2000–2001 Nortel Networks, All Rights Reserved.

Printed in Canada.

All information contained in this document is subject to change without notice. Nortel Networks reserves the right to make changes to equipment design or program components, as progress in engineering, manufacturing methods, or other circumstances may warrant.

*Nortel Networks, the Nortel Networks logo, the Globemark, Meridian 1, MSL-100, and Succession Communication Server for Enterprise 1000 are trademarks of Nortel Networks.

PacketShaper is a trademark of Packeteer Inc.

iSurf is a trademark of amplify.net Inc.

MICROSOFT, MS-DOS, WINDOWS, WINDOWS 95, WINDOWS 98, WINDOWS 2000, and WINDOWS NT are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

NORTEL
NETWORKS™



Contents

In this document

About this document	4
Understanding your network	5
Implementing Remote Office in your network - LAN/WAN	6
Testing your network	11
Bandwidth usage table	12
Quality of service issues	13
Ordering ISDN Lines	21

About this document

The *Remote Office Network Engineering Guidelines* (NTP 555-8421-103) is written for individuals who are responsible for the installation, configuration, and day-to-day management of the Remote Office series units and the Reach Line Card (RLC).

This document describes the network engineering guidelines for the Remote Office 9150 unit, Remote Office 911x series unit (9110 and 9115), Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter unit (internal and external), and the RLC.

This document provides:

- a clearer understanding of how you should plan your network
- a detailed description of Nortel Networks' patented QoS Transitioning Technology
- background information on Differentiated Services (DiffServ)
- instructions on how to order ISDN lines

Terminology

Throughout this document, the term “host PBX” refers to the following Nortel Networks PBXs:

- Meridian 1
- MSL-100
- Succession Communication Server for Enterprise 1000

Unless otherwise specified, the term “Remote Office units” refers to the following products:

- Remote Office 9110 unit
- Remote Office 9115 unit
- Remote Office 9150 unit
- Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter (Internal and External) unit

Understanding your network

A good design of the Remote Office network begins with an understanding of voice and data traffic, and the underlying network that transmits the traffic.

Your network grows and changes over time. Although you may be satisfied with the design of your network today, your needs can change quickly. You must always monitor and evaluate your network on a regular basis to make sure it is serving your needs.

Before you implement Voice over IP (VoIP) on your network, do the following:

- Measure the type, protocols, broadcast-to-unicast ratio, and overall amount of traffic currently being transmitted over your existing LAN and/or WAN. Consider the quality of your existing traffic routes and identify bottlenecks. Refer to “Implementing Remote Office in your network - LAN/WAN” on page 6.
- For Remote Office 9150 units, Remote Office 911x series units, and Meridian Digital IP Adapter units, perform tests to determine if the network is capable of supporting VoIP. Refer to “Testing your network” on page 11.
- For Remote Office 9150 units and RLCs, estimate LAN and WAN bandwidth usage per Remote Office port. Refer to the “Bandwidth usage table” on page 12.
- For Remote Office 9150 units, understand the importance of QoS on your network. Refer to “Quality of service issues” on page 13.
- For Remote Office 9150 units and Remote Office 911x series units, understand how QoS transitioning works. Refer to “Quality of service issues” on page 13.

ATTENTION

This document is a guide only. Implementing VoIP on your network and achieving good voice quality largely depend on the type and volume of traffic being transmitted over your network.

Implementing Remote Office in your network - LAN/WAN

The text in the gray boxes discusses the application of principles discussed above the boxes to the diagram on page 10.

1. Draw a network diagram showing every device on your network that could affect the traffic path between the RLC and the Remote Office units.

The "Network planning diagram" on page 10 shows a sample network containing an RLC and a Remote Office 9150 unit. There are three Ethernet segments, one radio link, and one token ring in the figure. The RLC is installed in the host PBX connected to Link 1, and the Remote Office 9150 unit is connected to the Ethernet segment labeled Link 6.

- Label each segment on the network with the link speed and media capability, such as half- or full-duplex.

In the diagram on page 10, assume all Ethernet segments are half-duplex (typical). The speed is indicated beside the link name.

- Label each device with the throughput rate in bytes and packets per second. Some software-based routers perform at significantly below the Ethernet line-speed (approximately 14K 64-byte packets per second for 10Mbps Ethernet).
- Label major traffic sources on the network with estimates of how much traffic they typically generate and to whom.

An analysis of the network on page 10 indicates that all token ring traffic is local to the token ring, so the only traffic sources are the computer labeled as Source 1 in Link 1, and one computer labeled as Source 2 in Link 5.

2. Determine the path (source and destination) between the major traffic sources on your network.

In our example network, Source 1 and Source 2 communicate along the path of Link5:Link4:Link2:Link1. The RLC and Remote Office 9150 unit communicate along the path of Link6:Link4:Link2:Link1.

3. Identify network bottlenecks and isolate them to minimize collisions. Most networks have one or two bottlenecks. The bottleneck may be a link whose throughput is slower (fewer packets per second transmitted) than the rest of the network, or a convergence point where several links funnel down to a single path.

In our example network, the devices along the common path of Dev3:Link4:Link2:Link1 are the sources of collision/backup. The link speed indicates that the bottleneck is the radio link at 8 Mbytes. The pps (packets per second) estimates indicate that Dev 2 is the bottleneck at 5K pps. Using the average of 14K pps (64-byte packets) for 10Mbytes Ethernet (10BaseT), Dev 2 limits transmission to around 3Mbytes/s. Source 1 can generate 10Mbytes of data that can overload both Link 2 and Dev 2.

4. Prioritize the bottleneck, if needed. If your network generates significantly more data than the bottlenecks can handle, consider putting in place a mechanism to prioritize voice traffic ahead of data traffic.

In our example network, adding priority queues to Dev 3 accomplishes little since its output rates are high compared to the bottleneck. To correct the problem, we determine that we need to do the following:

- add priority queues toward the radio link from Dev 2
- add priority queues and traffic metering toward the radio link from Dev 1.

Adding the priority queues is obvious, but great care must be taken so that our voice traffic doesn't prevent any Source 1 data traffic from reaching Source 2. The reason for the traffic metering is less obvious, but the problem is that Dev 1 and Link 2 can generate traffic faster than Dev 2 can accept it. Therefore, configure Dev 1 to limit its output to around 2 Mbits per second so that it doesn't overrun Dev 2, causing discards

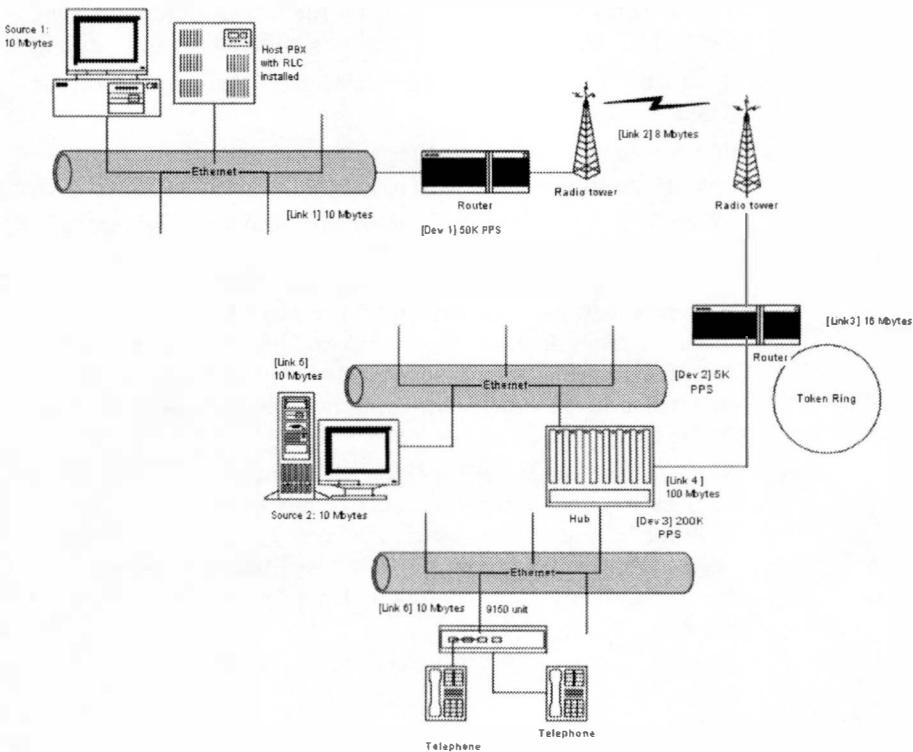
Before you begin to prioritize traffic on your network, you must understand your broadcast domains. Ensure that neither the Remote Office 9150 unit nor the RLC service unnecessary broadcasts.

There are a variety of options that provide prioritization within routers and other WAN access devices. The simplest option is a priority-queuing mechanism based on the traffic source and destination IP addresses. Other options include, but are not limited to, the following:

- Use the port numbers as the basis for prioritization.
The Remote Office 911x series units, Remote Office 9150 unit, and RLC use UDP port numbers of 20480 (0x5000) and 20482 (0x5002). Firewall configuration requires you to use these port numbers.
- Enable the DiffServ codepoint and 802.1p header.
Routers can use the DiffServ codepoint to prioritize voice packets ahead of data packets. Ethernet switches can use the 802.1p header for the same purpose. Refer to the *Reach Line Card Installation and Administration Guide* (NTP 555-8421-210) for additional information on DiffServ and 802.1p.
- Install an external traffic shaper to prioritize voice traffic ahead of data traffic on those portions of the network that allow prioritizing
Certain WANs recognize the concept of guaranteed bandwidth. These WANs dedicate bandwidth for certain IP addresses or DiffServ codepoint values. Guaranteed bandwidth in Frame Relay, for example, is known as Committed Information Rate (CIR). The guaranteed bandwidth must be sufficient to accommodate all of the voice traffic on the network.

- Ensure that you use the correct signaling connection
The Remote Office units use TCP port 12800 (0x3200) for signaling. Firewall configuration requires you to use this port.
- Ensure that your WAN access device marks all non-critical traffic as Discard Eligible (DE).
- If it is available for your WAN, have the user subscribe to the appropriate level of guaranteed bandwidth, as identified above.
When the link speed is significantly higher than the guaranteed bandwidth, all of the guaranteed bandwidth can be used very early in the sampling interval. With a link speed of two Mbytes per second, a congested network can use all of the guaranteed bandwidth in the first 32 milliseconds. In this situation, the next 968 milliseconds is lost. Some devices (for example, routers) implement delay queues to accommodate this issue. Some documentation refers to this concept as traffic metering.
The RLC and Remote Office 9150 unit, like all other devices, process all broadcast traffic, independent of destination, using a half-duplex 10BaseT Ethernet port. In general, the average load on the Ethernet segments should not exceed 30% of network traffic. Minimize broadcast traffic on your network so that it does not exceed 5% of all network traffic.

Network planning diagram



Testing your network

If you are going to deploy your Remote Office unit on an existing network, perform the following tests to determine if the network can support Voice over IP (VoIP) traffic.

1. For Remote Office 9150 units, use the bandwidth utilization table on page 12 to estimate WAN and LAN bandwidth.

Total BW = max number of simultaneous calls * peak bandwidth from table

2. Perform a PING test (100 pings). Perform this test at multiple times of the day to sample varying network conditions.
 - Divide the minimum delay of any ping by two to get one-way minimum delay.
 - Divide the maximum delay of any ping by two to get one-way maximum delay.

Note: Quality of Service transitioning technology is based upon three factors:

- jitter
- delay
- packet loss

The close correlation of these three factors makes the measurement extremely subjective in nature. Refer to page 14 for a detailed discussion of jitter, delay, and packet loss.

Bandwidth usage table

Packet Size	G.711 ¹	G.726 ¹	G.729 ¹	G.729 \ FAX ^{1,2}
Voice Payload (bytes/30 ms)	240	120	30	38
Voice header (bytes)	12	12	12	12
UDP header (bytes)	8	8	8	8
IP header (bytes)	20	20	20	20
IP Packet Size (bytes)	280	160	70	78

LAN Overhead

Ethernet header Size (bytes)	14	14	14	14
IP Packet Size (bytes)	280	160	70	78
LAN Packet Size (bytes)	294	174	84	92
Peak Data Rate (Kbps)	78	46	22	24
Avg Data Rate-w/silence (Kbps) ³	47	28	13	24 ⁴

IP Over Frame Relay Overhead

Frame Relay Overhead (bytes)	4	4	4	4
RFC 1490 IP Overhead (bytes)	2	2	2	2
IP Packet Size (bytes)	280	160	70	78
Frame size (bytes)	286	166	76	84
Peak Data Rate (Kbps)	76	44	20	22
Avg Data Rate-w/silence (Kbps) ³	46	27	12	22 ⁴

1. compression algorithm
2. 9600 bps (14400 bps not supported)
3. Average data rate with silence suppression is approximately 60% of Peak. Change this number to reflect the site's actual values.
4. Silence suppression, or voice activity detection (VAD) is disabled.

Quality of service issues

The following section discusses ways that the Remote Office product works to resolve Quality of Service (QoS) issues involved in transmitting Voice over IP.

QoS Transitioning Technology

When voice quality degrades on your Remote Office network, the RLC provides improved QoS. Nortel Networks' patented QoS Transitioning Technology enables the RLC to move Remote Office calls from the IP network to the Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN). The more stable PSTN provides improved QoS until IP network QoS improves.

Once the IP network QoS improves, the RLC automatically recovers Remote Office calls to the IP network. For detailed information on how to configure QoS Transitioning Technology thresholds, refer to the *Reach Line Card Guide* (NTP 555-8421-210).

Note: Because Meridian Digital Telephone IP Adapter units do not have PSTN connectivity, they do not support Quality of Service Transitioning Technology.

How QoS Transitioning Technology works

QoS Transitioning Technology bases transition and recovery functions on the IP network's QoS level. The QoS level is a user-oriented metric that takes one of ten settings. You identify the limits of acceptable voice QoS for each remote site in your Remote Office network by choosing from among those settings using Configuration Manager. The Meridian digital telephone at the remote location and the RLC in the host PBX communicate with one another over the IP network. These communications begin with a 10BaseT Ethernet interface to the corporate intranet.

The RLC and the remote units constantly monitor the QoS level on the data paths between the host PBX and the individual remote sites. Each node calculates the prevailing QoS level based upon the following factors:

- jitter

Jitter is maximum delay minus minimum delay. When jitter on your network exceeds the configured jitter threshold (default 30 milliseconds), processing can drop voice packets, diminishing voice quality. Most customers can accept a small percentage of dropped packets (as much as 5%). However, this is subjective. The jitter buffer can grow up to 180 milliseconds without negatively effecting voice quality, but only for very brief intervals.

- delay

Excessive delay, even with very little jitter, can cause problems. For most users, acceptable one-way minimum delay falls below 100 milliseconds. Only situations with very little jitter can tolerate larger numbers.

- packet loss

Any packet loss can effect voice quality. For most users, up to 5% is acceptable.

Note: Ensure that the devices on your network support wire-speed forwarding of 64-byte packets. Almost all Ethernet switches, hubs, and routers advertise this capability (beware of those that don't). These devices generally add very little to network delay (less than three milliseconds), therefore, they are not the normal suspects for delay. Lower-speed WAN links and software-based routing can add 10s or 100s of milliseconds. This kind of WAN link and routing can significantly effect bandwidth.

- compression algorithm

The G.729 algorithm handles lost packets better than either G.726 or G.711. Because it is specialized for voice, the G.729 algorithm does not allow sharp changes in frequency or amplitude due to lost packets. The G.726 and G.711 algorithms attempt to recreate a non-speech wave-form. Packet loss causes abrupt changes in the recreated wave-form that can create audible cracks or pops.

The RLC calculates the QoS level based upon ANSI TR56 and the E-model found in ITU-T Reg. G.114. When the QoS level falls below the specified transition threshold for the specified period of time, or duration, the receiving Remote Office node rejects the call. The RLC then reroutes the call over the PSTN. When the QoS rises to a point above the specified recovery threshold for the specified period, the RLC restores calls to the IP network. You configure thresholds and durations for each remote site.

When transitioning or recovering multiple calls, the RLC moves calls between the IP network connection and the PSTN connection 64 Kbps at a time. The system waits several seconds between units of 64 Kbps to determine if the IP connection has become more stable.

Note: If using 56 Kbps connections, the RLC transfers calls in units of 56 Kbps.

The RLC moves as many calls as possible (to a maximum of 64 Kbps per B-channel) from the IP connection to the PSTN trunk connection. High priority users always move first. For information on configuring priority, refer to the *Reach Line Card Installation and Administration Guide* (NTP 555-8421-210).

- transparent transition and recovery

Transitions can take place during a live call and are transparent to users who only notice improved voice quality. In the case of a complete IP network failure, however, a noticeable break in the call of approximately four seconds occurs. This allows the RLC to transition the call to the PSTN.

Note: When IP degradation causes the RLC to transition calls to the PSTN, a momentary degradation in voice quality can occur as the transition takes place.

- network testing

Both the RLC and the remote unit (9110, 9115, or 9150) run an IP test to determine if the QoS on the IP network meets configured standards. (For more details, refer to “Measuring QoS while offline” on page 18.) To configure QoS Transitioning Technology thresholds, use the Remote Office Configuration Manager graphical user interface (GUI). For further information, refer to the *Reach Line Card Installation and Administration Guide* (NTP 555-8421-210).

The chart on page 17 illustrates how QoS Transitioning Technology works on the RLC and Remote Office 9110, 9115, and 9150 units. The same chart depicts Z and Q as equal periods of time. However, the duration of poor voice quality required for transition to the PSTN, Z, is a period of seconds. The duration of good voice quality required for recovery to the IP network, Q, is a period of minutes. The units of time used to identify acceptable points of transition and recovery differ in an attempt to minimize *transition thrashing*. Transition thrashing is the rapid transition and recovery between the PSTN and the IP network. This can occur when QoS hovers around configured degrade and recover thresholds producing higher than normal PSTN charges.

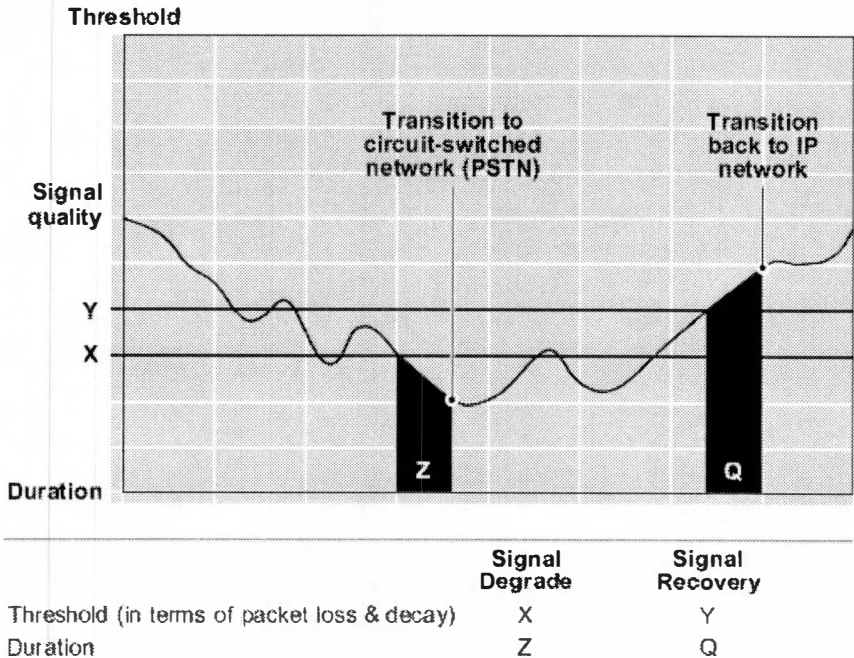
In the telephone call represented by the chart on page 17, signal quality begins in the acceptable range; that is, signal quality is above the X threshold. While signal quality remains in the acceptable range, the RLC routes calls through the IP network.

- transition

When IP QoS degrades below the X threshold, the RLC waits for duration Z to increase the likelihood of continued unacceptable voice QoS. If the voice QoS remains below the X threshold for duration Z, the RLC establishes a communication path for that call on the PSTN. The RLC then transitions the call to the newly established PSTN channel.

- recovery

After the RLC transitions a call to the PSTN, when IP QoS exceeds the Y threshold, the system waits for duration Q. Again, this increases the likelihood of continued acceptable voice QoS on the IP network. After duration Q passes, the RLC moves all current calls back to the IP network and places all new calls over the IP network.

QoS Transition and Recovery

G101427

The setting represents

X	signal quality on the IP network is unacceptable below this point.
Y	signal quality on the IP network is acceptable above this point.
Z	the amount of time that signal quality must be lower than the X threshold before the RLC transitions calls to the PSTN.
Q	the amount of time that signal quality must be higher than the Y threshold before the RLC recovers calls to the IP network.

QoS traffic measurements

As voice packets travel across the IP network, the RLC monitors the following QoS parameters:

- average packet delay

The RLC calculates this delay using the following statistics gathered from its voice jitter attenuation buffer:

- minimum packet holding time in the jitter buffer
- maximum packet holding time in the jitter buffer
- peak holding time in the jitter buffer
- time-stamp values in the packet header

By accumulating these statistics over time, the RLC can calculate an average packet delay value through the IP network. As the system detects an increase in the average packet delay, it references the signal degrade threshold to determine when to make the transition to the PSTN connection.

For a further description of statistics, refer to the *Reach Line Card Installation and Administration Guide (NTP 555-8421-210)*.

- lost packets

The RLC calculates lost packet statistics by accumulating the following packet header and voice decoder statistics:

- voice decoder underrun
- voice decoder overrun
- out-of-sequence packet reception

Measuring QoS while offline

Once the RLC reverts to using its PSTN connections, it must continually monitor the IP network. The RLC determines an appropriate time to restore voice traffic to the IP network as follows:

1. Both the RLC and the Remote Office unit (Remote Office 9110, 9115, or 9150) place pseudo-voice traffic on the IP network.

Both the RLC and the Remote Office unit send traffic with a maximum bandwidth of no more than 16 Kbps in short bursts at a higher bit rate to approximate live voice traffic.

2. Both the RLC and the Remote Office unit gather statistics based on the pseudo voice traffic to determine the congestion levels on the network. They use packet time stamps and sequence numbers to monitor the following parameters:
 - average end-to-end delay
 - average round-trip delay
 - average packet-to-packet jitter
 - average packet loss
3. When the parameters listed in step 2 fall below the predetermined threshold for the predetermined period of time, the RLC restores voice traffic to the IP network.

When restoring the connection to the IP network, the system adds hysteresis, or delay, to reduce the noise level during the transition.

Note: Hysteresis, or delay, prevents thrashing between the PSTN and the IP network (for a discussion of *transition thrashing*, refer to page 16), and ensures that acceptable voice QoS exists on the IP network for a predefined period of time.

Log reports and statistics

The Configuration Manager provides a statistics log that identifies the number of QoS transitions. For a detailed description of log and statistic reports, refer to the *Reach Line Card Installation and Configuration Guide* (NTP 555-8421-210).

Telephone display messages

Meridian digital telephones with display capability can display the following Resource Limit messages:

- Bandwidth Limit indicates that there is insufficient BRI bandwidth available to complete the requested action.
- DSP Limit indicates that there are insufficient DSP resources available to complete the requested action.

Relationship between users and services

In the context of a host PBX and Remote Office 9150 unit unit, there are two interfaces that you must consider in the relationship between users and services:

- The Remote Office node (that is, the RLC on the host PBX or the Remote Office unit at the remote site) provides an interface to the Remote Office system for end users. Voice services offered by the Remote Office node must meet user-oriented QoS objectives. Refer to “Quality of service issues” on page 13 for details.
- The Remote Office nodes also provide an interface with the intranet (or Internet in the case of a Remote Office 911x series unit). The intranet provides the “best-effort delivery of IP packets,” as opposed to “guaranteed QoS for real-time voice transport.” The Remote Office node translates the QoS objectives set by the end-users into IP-oriented QoS objectives. This document refers to these objectives as *intranet QoS objectives*.

DiffServ and 802.1p Mapping

Differentiated Services (DiffServ) - a layer 3 standard and 802.1p - a layer 2 standard allow the assignment of priorities to packets over other traffic on the data network. Enabling these two settings can help to provide increased QoS for voice traffic. In order to utilize DiffServ and/or 802.1p, the intermediate devices - hubs, switches, and routers (DiffServ only) must be DiffServ and/or 802.1p compliant. The DiffServ field has a six bit Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) and two currently unused bits. By enabling DiffServ, the DSCP in packets from the RLC and the Remote Office unit are given a value of hex 2E - Expedited Forwarding. For further information on DiffServ refer to RFC 2474. The 802.1p packet is tagged and the field is given a value of hex C000. For further information on 802.1p, refer to IEEE 802.1D.

Ordering ISDN Lines

The following section provides you with information regarding the ordering of ISDN lines.

What you need to tell your ISDN service provider

Inform your ISDN service provider that you need the following:

- two B-channels providing both voice and data capability (56 or 64 Kbps clear, depending on your system)
Note: Both B-channels must be PSTN Voice and Data.
- Caller Line Identification (known in the United Kingdom as Calling Line Identity Presentation–CLIP)
- Multiple Subscriber Numbering (MSN)
- two directory numbers (DNs)
- two Service Profile Identifiers (SPIDs)

Note: Multiple Subscriber Numbering (MSN) is required in situations where no SPIDs are provided.

Tell your service provider how the line should be provisioned for data, voice, and other optional services. Different service providers require this information in different ways; increasingly they are using ISDN Order Codes for simplicity, but some still require specific switch type details.

What you need from your ISDN service provider

Your service provider needs to tell you:

- the ISDN service and switch type
- the ISDN directory numbers
- associated SPIDs
- bearer capability (56 or 64 Kbps)

Supported ISDN switches and services for North America

The Remote Office 9150 unit supports the most common switch types. The following table shows the ISDN services available for each of the switch types.

Switch Type	ISDN Service
Nortel Networks DMS-100	National ISDN 1 (NI-1)
	National ISDN 2 (NI-2)
AT &T 5ESS	Custom Point-to-Point
	Custom Multipoint
	National ISDN 1 (NI-1)
	National ISDN 2 (NI-2)
Siemens	National ISDN 1 (NI-1)
	National ISDN 2 (NI-2)

Supported European ISDN services

For European installations, the Remote Office 9150 unit supports country-specific EuroISDN installations, but does not support pre-EuroISDN installations.

Using supplementary services

The following supplementary data services are not recommended for use with Remote Office 9150 and 911x units:

- call waiting
- bearer-channel bonding
- call-waiting ID
- hunt

If you need to order Hunt services, order Multiline hunting rather than Overflow (EKTS) forward. The following must be true when you order these services on the BRI circuits:

- The B-channel requested during call set-up must be the B-channel that the call presents to

— The CALLED DN must be the DN of the B-channel the call presents to Any other services, such as Forward on Busy must follow the guidelines above.

Example A

1 BRI circuit

B1: 416-555-1212, the published number

B2: 416-555-1213

A PSTN set calls B1.

The published number is currently busy.

Hunt must provide a call setup message for B2 with a CALLED number of 416-555-1213.

Example B

1 BRI circuit

B1: 416-555-1212

B2: 416-555-1213

The published number is different - 416-555-5000.

No calls are up.

When a PSTN set calls 416-555-5000, the call presents to B1 with a CALLED CLID of 416-555-1212.



1957-01-10

1957-01-10

Remote Office Network Engineering Guidelines

Copyright © Copyright © 2000–2001 Nortel Networks, All Rights Reserved.

Printed in Canada.

All information contained in this document is subject to change without notice. Nortel Networks reserves the right to make changes to equipment design or program components, as progress in engineering, manufacturing methods, or other circumstances may warrant.

*Nortel Networks, the Nortel Networks logo, the Globemark, Meridian 1, MSL-100, and Succession Communication Server for Enterprise 1000 are trademarks of Nortel Networks.

PacketShaper is a trademark of Packeteer Inc.

iSurf is a trademark of amplify.net Inc.

MICROSOFT, MS-DOS, WINDOWS, WINDOWS 95, WINDOWS 98, WINDOWS 2000, and WINDOWS NT are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Publication number:	555-8421-103
Document release:	Standard 1.2
Date:	September 2001

